

Installation Manual for SMX series

SMX Modular and SMX Modular, 2nd Generation (SMXGen2)



Installation manual for base devices of SMX100 series

- SMX100-1(/4x, /5x)
- SMX100-2(/4x, /5x)
- SMX100-4(/4x, /5x)

and the expansion modules

- SMX131
- SMX131R

- SMX111
- SMX111-2
- SMX112
- SMX112A
- SMX112-2
- SMX112-2A

- SMX121
- SMX121-2
- SMX122
- SMX122A
- SMX122-2
- SMX122-2A

Installation manual for base devices of SMX100/2 SMXGen2 Version (/2) series

- SMX100-1/2(/x⁽¹⁾)
- SMX100-2/2(/x⁽¹⁾)
- SMX100-4/2(/x⁽¹⁾)

and the expansion modules SMXGen2 Version (/2)

- SMX131/2
- SMX131R/2
- SMX131R-4/2
- SMX132-0/2/D
- SMX132-0R/2/D
- SMX132-1/2/D
- SMX132-1R/2/D

- SMX111/2/D
- SMX111-2/2/D
- SMX112/2/D
- SMX112A/2/D
- SMX112-2/2/D
- SMX112-2A/2/D

(see section 3.)

Options:

- /5x - Standard field bus
- /4x - Standard field bus and safety protocol
- /x - Universal communication interface
- /D - Decentral expansion module
- A - Secure, analog inputs
- R - Relay

(1) Specification see "Optional universal communication interface"

Note:

The German version if the original version of the installation manual

Status: 05/2017

Valid from FW release Master 02-01-00-06
 Slave 02-01-00-02

Subject to change without prior notification

The contents of this documentation has been collated with greatest care and corresponds with our present status of information.

However, we would like to point out, that this document cannot always be updated at the same time as the technical further development of the products.

Information and specifications can be changed at any time. Please keep yourself informed about the current version under www.bbh-products.de.

Devices of the

BBH Products GmbH
Böttgerstraße 40
92637 Weiden

Inhalt

1	IMPORTANT NOTES	8
1.1	Definitions	8
1.2	Co-valid documents	9
1.3	Abbreviations used	11
2	SAFETY REGULATIONS	13
2.1	Intended use	13
2.2	Use in regions with UL/CSA requirements	13
2.3	General safety regulations	14
2.4	Operation and service	15
2.5	Transport/storage	15
3	DEVICE TYPES	16
3.1	Module overview	18
3.2	Characteristic data of device	20
3.2.1	Basic modules	20
3.2.1.1	System module SMX100-1(/2, /4x, /5x, /x ⁽¹⁾)	20
3.2.1.2	System module SMX100-2(/2, /4x, /5x, /x ⁽¹⁾)	24
3.2.1.3	System module SMX100-4(/2, /4x, /5x, /x ⁽¹⁾)	28
3.2.2	Central expansion modules	32
3.2.2.1	Expansion module SMX121(/2)	32
3.2.2.2	Expansion module SMX121-2(/2)	34
3.2.2.3	Expansion module SMX122/122A(/2)	36
3.2.2.4	Expansion module SMX122-2/122-2A(/2)	38
3.2.2.5	Expansion module SMX131(/2), 131R(/2) and 131R-4/2	40
3.2.3	Decentralised expansion modules	43
3.2.3.1	Decentralised expansion module SMX111(/2/D)	43
3.2.3.2	Decentralised expansion module SMX111-2(/2/D)	47
3.2.3.3	Decentralised expansion module SMX112/112A(/2/D)	51
3.2.3.4	Decentralised expansion module SMX112-2/112-2A(/2/D)	55
3.2.3.5	Decentralised expansion module SMX132-0(R)/2/D / 132-1(R)/2/D	59
3.2.4	Communication interface	62
3.2.4.1	SMX5x	62
3.2.4.2	SMX4x	64
3.2.4.3	Optional universal communication interface	66
3.2.4.4	Encoder specifications	68
3.3	Derating outputs	69
3.4	Identification	69
3.4.1	Type plate	69
3.4.2	Type plate SMXGen2 (/2)	70
3.4.3	Scope of delivery	71
4	SAFETY RELATED CHARACTERISTICS	72
4.1	General design, safety related architecture and characteristic data	72
4.2	Safety related characteristic data and wiring for the connected sensors	76
4.2.1	Digital sensors:	76
4.2.1.1	Characteristics of sensors / input elements	76
4.2.1.2	DC digital sensors/inputs	77
4.2.1.3	Classification of digital inputs	80
4.2.1.4	Exemplary connections of digital sensors	82
4.2.1.5	Overview of achievable PI for digital safety inputs	87
4.2.2	Sensors for speed and/or position detection	89
4.2.2.1	General safety related structure of the sensor interface for position and/or speed	89
4.2.2.2	General diagnostic measures for encoder interface	90
4.2.2.3	Encoder types and their combination, diagnostic data	91
4.2.2.4	Specific diagnostic measures with regard to the encoder type used	93
4.2.2.5	Safety relevant cut-off thresholds encoder systems for position and speed detection	94
4.2.2.6	Safety related assessment of encoder types or there combination	97
4.2.3	Analog sensors	99
4.2.3.1	Exemplary connection of analog sensors	100

4.3	Safety related characteristic data and wiring of the outputs	101
4.3.1	Characteristic of the output elements	101
4.3.2	Diagnoses in the cut-off circuit	102
4.3.2.1	Diagnostic Functions	102
4.3.2.2	Overview DC with respect to the chosen diagnostics functions	103
4.3.3	Permissible capacitive and inductive load at safe outputs	104
4.3.4	Digital Outputs	105
4.3.4.1	Characteristic data of the basic outputs	105
4.3.4.2	Wiring examples basic outputs	107
4.3.5	Digital outputs I/O's (IQQx)	114
4.3.5.1	Classification of the I/O's (IQQx) when used as output	114
4.3.5.2	Wiring examples for safe digital outputs I/O's (IQQx)	115
4.3.5.3	Overview of achievable PI for digital safety outputs	120
5	CONNECTION AND INSTALLATION	122
5.1	General notes on installation	122
5.2	Installation and assembly of the SMX100 module	124
5.3	Installation of backplane bus system	124
5.3.1	Arrangement examples	125
5.3.1.1	SMX100-1 + SMX122 + SMX5x	125
5.3.1.2	SMX100-2 + SMX121-2 + SMX5x	125
5.4	Assembling the modules	126
5.4.1	Assembly on C-rail	126
5.4.2	Assembly on backplane bus	127
5.5	Installation und Konfiguration von Master <-> Master (SMMC) und Master <-> Slave (SDDC)	128
5.5.1	Network topology	129
5.5.2	Installation I/O-extension	130
5.5.2.1	Physical address configuration of the slave modules (central/decentral)	130
5.6	Terminal assignment	131
5.6.1	Terminal assignment SMX100-1(/2)	131
5.6.2	Terminal assignment SMX100-2(/2)	133
5.6.3	Terminal assignment SMX100-4(/2)	137
5.6.4	Terminal assignment SMX121(/2)	142
5.6.5	Terminal assignment SMX121-2(/2)	143
5.6.6	Terminal assignment SMX122(/2)	145
5.6.7	Terminal assignment SMX122A(/2)	147
5.6.8	Terminal assignment SMX122-2(/2)	149
5.6.9	Terminal assignment SMX122-2A(/2)	152
5.6.10	Terminal assignment SMX111(/2/D)	155
5.6.11	Terminal assignment SMX111-2(/2/D)	157
5.6.12	Terminal assignment SMX112(/2/D)	159
5.6.13	Terminal assignment SMX112A(/2/D)	161
5.6.14	Terminal assignment SMX112-2(/2/D)	163
5.6.15	Terminal assignment SMX112-2A(/2/D)	166
5.6.16	Terminal assignment SMX131(/2)	169
5.6.17	Terminal assignment SMX131R(/2)	171
5.6.18	Terminal assignment SMX131R-4/2	174
5.6.19	Terminal assignment SMX132-0/2/D	176
5.6.20	Terminal assignment SMX132-0R/2/D	178
5.6.21	Terminal assignment SMX132-1/2/D	180
5.6.22	Terminal assignment SMX132-1R/2/D	182
5.7	External 24 VDC – voltage supply	185
5.8	Connection of the external encoder supply	187
5.8.1	Incremental, HTL, SIN/COS, SSI	187
5.8.2	Resolver	188
5.9	Connection of digital inputs	189
5.10	Connection of analog inputs	190
5.11	Connection of position and speed sensors	191
5.11.1	General notes	191
5.11.2	Assignment of encoder interface	193

5.11.3	Connection variants	194
5.11.3.1	Connection of absolute encoders as master	194
5.11.3.2	Connection of an absolute encoder as slave.....	195
5.11.3.3	Connecting an incremental encoder with TTL-signal level.....	196
5.11.3.4	Connection of a SIN/COS encoder	197
5.11.3.5	Connection of a resolver as master	198
5.11.3.6	Connection of a resolver as slave	199
5.11.3.7	Connection of proximity switch SMX111x SMX112x	200
5.11.3.8	Connection of HTL/proximity switch SMX11-2/SMX12-2	200
5.12	Configuration of measuring distances.....	203
5.12.1	General description of encoder configuration.....	203
5.12.2	Sensor type	203
5.12.2.1	Absolute encoder:	203
5.12.2.2	Incremental encoder:.....	206
5.12.2.4	SinusCosinus encoder – high resolution mode:	206
5.12.2.5	Proxi switch.....	207
5.12.2.6	Extended monitoring proximity switch / proximity switch.....	208
5.12.2.7	HTL – Sensor.....	209
5.12.2.8	Resolver.....	209
6	RESPONSE TIMES OF THE SMX	210
6.1	Response times in standard operation	210
6.2	Response time for FAST_CHANNEL	212
6.3	Response times for fault distance monitoring	212
6.4	Reaction times for using inputs and outputs at the expansion modules	214
7	START-UP	216
7.1	Procedure	216
7.2	Making sequences	216
7.3	LED display	218
7.4	Parameterization	219
7.5	Function test.....	219
7.6	Validation	219
8	SAFETY RELATED EXAMINATION	220
9	MAINTENANCE.....	221
9.1	Modification / handling changes to the device	221
9.2	Exchanging a module	221
9.3	Maintenance intervals.....	221
10	TECHNICAL DATA	222
10.1	Environmental conditions.....	222
10.2	Safety related characteristic data	222
11	SWITCH TYPES.....	223
12	NOTES ON DESIGNING, PROGRAMMING, VALIDATING AND TESTING	
SAFETY RELATED APPLICATIONS		228
12.1	Risk assessment.....	228
12.2	Required technical documents	230
12.3	Necessary steps for draft, realization and testing	231
12.3.1	Specification of safety requirements (structural schematic).....	233
12.3.2	Specification of the functional safety system.....	238
12.3.2.1	Definition of safety functions.....	238
12.3.2.2	Required performance level (PLr) (additional emergency stop)	238
12.3.2.3	Example – Specification of safety functions in form of a table	239
12.3.3	Software specification	240
12.3.4	Hardware specification.....	242
12.3.4.1	Selection of SRP/CS and operating means.....	242
12.3.4.2	Example for hardware specification	243
12.3.4.3	Consideration of systematic failures	244
12.3.5	Hard and Software design.....	245
12.3.6	Testing of the hardware design	245
12.3.6.1	Iterative testing of the achieved safety level.....	245

12.3.7	Verification software(program) and parameters	249
12.3.7.1	Checking FUP	249
12.3.7.2	Validation of FUP against AWL and parameters by means of validation report.....	251
12.3.8	Performance of the system test / FIT (fault injection test).....	253
APPENDIX	254
Appendix A – Classification of switch types	254
Appendix B – CE-Declaration	257

1 Important notes

Definition of individual target groups

Project engineers for safe drive systems:
Engineers and technicians

Assembly, electric installation, maintenance and replacement of devices:
Maintenance electricians and service technicians

Commissioning, operation and configuration:
Technicians and engineers

1.1 Definitions

The designation SMX100 is used as generic term for all derivatives from the SMX100 product range. Wherever this description refers to a certain derivative, the complete designation is used.

The term "safe" used in the following text in any case refers to the classification as a safe function for application up to PL e acc. to EN ISO 13849-1 or SIL3 acc. to EN 61508.

The system software "SafePLC", "Safe PLC2" serves the purpose of configuring and programming SMX100 modules.

The modules of the SMX100 series are internally built up of two independent processing units. In the following these are referred to as system A and system B.

1.2 Co-valid documents

<i>Description</i>	<i>Referenz</i>
Configuration of the SMX100 module for stand-alone applications without field-bus interfacing with the program "SafePLC"	SafePLC programming manual (System CD)
Validation report for implemented parameterization and PLC-program	Safety inspection with acceptance protocol
Acceptance test for general safety related applications	<p>Certificate for type approval test as safety control acc. to machine guideline 2006/42/EPG for the product groups</p> <p>SMX100-1(/4x, /5x) SMX100-2(/4x, /5x) SMX100-4(/4x, /5x)</p> <p>SMX131 SMX131R</p> <p>SMX111 SMX111-2 SMX112 SMX112A SMX112-2 SMX112-2A</p> <p>SMX121 SMX121-2 SMX122 SMX122A SMX122-2 SMX122-2A</p> <p>SMXGen2 SMX100-1/2(/x⁽¹⁾) SMX100-2/2(/x⁽¹⁾) SMX100-4/2(/x⁽¹⁾)</p> <p>SMX131/2 SMX131R/2 SMX131R-4/2 SMX132-0/2/D SMX132-0R/2/D SMX132-1/2/D SMX132-1R/2/D</p> <p>SMX111/2/D SMX111-2/2/D SMX112/2/D SMX112A/2/D SMX112-2/2/D SMX112-2A/2/D</p>

Options:

- /5x - Standard field bus
- /4x - Standard field bus and safety protocol
- /x - Universal communication interface
- /D - Decentral expansion module
- A - Secure, analog inputs
- R - Relays

(1) Specification see "Optional universal communication interface"

Note:

- Thoroughly read the manuals before you start the installation and the commissioning of the SMX module.
- Paying attention to the documentation is a prerequisite for trouble-free operation and fulfilment of possible warranty claims.

1.3 Abbreviations used

Abbreviation	Meaning
AC	Alternating voltage
IL	Instruction list
ELIA	Employer's liability insurance association
CLK	Clock (cycle)
CPU	Central Processing Unit
DC	Direct voltage
Ix.y ⁽¹⁾	Digital Input (Digitaler Eingang)
DIN	Deutsches Institut für Normung (German Institute for Standardization)
Qx.y ⁽¹⁾	Digital Output (Digitaler Ausgang)
EMU EDM	Emergency Monitoring Unit oder External Monitoring Unit External Device Monitoring
EMC	Electromagnetic compatibility
ELC	Emergency Limit Control
EN	European Standard
Encoder	Position measurement system (position, angle)
Encoder interfaces	Electrical connection for an individual encoder
HISIDE	Output with 24VDC nominal level switching to plus
IP20	Degree of protection for housing
ISO	International Organization for Standardization
LED	Light Emitting Diode
LOSIDE	Output switching to reference potential
OLC	Operational Limit Control
PIA	Process image of outputs
PII	Process image of inputs
PELV	Protective Extra Low Voltage
PLC	Programmable Logic Controller
POR	Power on Reset
PSC	Position Supervision Control
SDDC	Safe Device To Device Communication
SELV	Safety Extra Low Voltage

Abbreviation	Meaning
SMMC	Safe Master-Master Communication
SSI	Synchronous Serial Interface
T1, T2	Test pulse Output (test pulse output)
VDE	Verband der Elektrotechnik, Elektronik und Informationstechnik e. V. (association for electrical engineering, electronics and information technology)
Yx.y ⁽¹⁾	Auxiliary Output
G.P.	General purpose (General use)

- ⁽¹⁾ Module address x = 0 8
 Channel address y = 1 40

2 Safety regulations

2.1 Intended use

Devices of the SMX100 series are programmable fail-safe control system intended for the establishment of emergency shut-down features and functions. The devices are intended for use in

- EMERGENCY STOP facilities,
- as safety component as defined by the EC machine directive 2006/42/EG,
- as PES for risk reduction as defined by IEC 61508,
- in safety circuits acc. to IEC 60204-1 u. IEC 60204-32,
- as PES for functional safety as defined by IEC 62061,
- as SRP/CS as defined by EN ISO 13849-1,
- as device for establishing the safety functions acc. to IEC 61800-5-2,
- as logic unit for converting and processing signals in two-hand control acc. to EN 574.



The devices of SMX100 series including associated expansion modules are safety components as specified in appendix IV of the EC machine directive 2006/42/EC. They were developed, designed and manufactured in compliance with the above mentioned directive as well as the EC-directive EC-EMC directive 2014/30/EU

See appendix "EC Declaration of Conformity"

2.2 Use in regions with UL/CSA requirements

In case of modules of SMX series, which do not have UL/CSA approval, these modules can be used in USA and Canada under the following conditions:

- the switching voltage of the output relays must be limited to max. 24 V.
- a power supply unit meeting the requirement SELV/PELV must be used for supplying electric power to the SMX modules and their inputs and outputs

Under these prerequisites no UL/CSA approval is required and the SMX-series can be used in switchgear in accordance with IEC 61010.

The **SMXGen2** series has **cULus approval** with the following standards:

Base Standard(s): UL 61010-1, 3rd Edition, May 11, 2012, Revised July 15 2015,
CAN/CSAC22.2 No. 61010-1-12, 3rd Edition, Revision dated July 2015
Additional Standards: UL/CSA 61010-2-201: 2014 (First Edition)

2.3 General safety regulations

Safety note:

- In order to avoid damage to persons and property only qualified personnel is entitled to work on the device. The term qualified personnel refers to persons who have successfully completed electrotechnical training and are fully familiar with the applicable rules and standards of electrical engineering.
The qualified person must become familiar with the operating instructions (see IEC 364, DIN VDE 0100).
- The qualified must have profound knowledge of the national accident prevention regulations
- The use of the device must be strictly limited to the intended use as specified in the following list. The values of data listed under section "3.2 Characteristic device data" must also be observed.
- The contents of this installation manual is restricted to the basic function of the device or its installation. The "Programming instructions SMX100 contains a more detailed description of the programming and re-parameterization of the devices. Exact knowledge and understanding of these instructions is mandatory for a new installation or modification of device functions or device parameters.

Commissioning (i.e. starting up the intended operation) is only permitted in strict compliance with the EMC-directive. The EMC-testing regulations EN 55011:2009 + A2:2010 and EN 61000-6-2:2005 are used as basis.

- Compliance with the conditions acc. to IEC 60068-2-6 related to the values specified under "Technical characteristics" is mandatory for storage and transport
- The wiring and connecting instructions in chapter "Installation" must be strictly followed.
- The applicable VDE-regulations and other special safety regulations of relevance for the application must be strictly followed.
- Evidence of the configured monitoring functions as well as their parameters and links must be issued by means of a validation report.
- The implementation of the module must be coordinated with the demands of the responsible acceptance testing authority (e.g. TÜV or ELIA).
- Do not install or operate damaged products. Report damages immediately to the responsible forwarding agent.
- Never open the housing and/or make unauthorized conversions.
- Inputs and outputs for standard functions or digital and analog data transmitted via communication interface must not be used for safety relevant applications.

WARNING:

Using our devices contrary to the rules and conditions specified hereunder can lead to injuries or fatalities as well as damage to connected devices and machines!

This will also cause the loss of all warranty and compensation claims against BBH.

2.4 Operation and service

The module must always be de-energized before installation and removal, or before disconnecting signal lines. For this purpose all live supply lines to the device must be checked for safe isolation from supply.

When installing or removing the module appropriate measures must be applied to prevent electrostatic discharge to the externally arranged terminal and plug connections. Contact with such terminals should be reduced to a minimum and earthing should by means of e.g. an earthing strap should take place before and during these procedures.

2.5 Transport/storage

Information concerning transport, storage and proper handling must be strictly followed. The climate related specifications in chapter "Technical data" must be complied with.

3 Device types

The series SMX100 consists of

base devices SMX100-x(/2) optionally with

- integrated communication modules
 - Standard field bus SMX100-x(/5x, /2/x⁽¹⁾) or
 - Safe field bus SMX100-x(/4x, /2/x⁽¹⁾)
- central I/O expansion modules SMX131(/2), 131R(/2) and 131R-4/2
- decentralised I/O expansion modules SMX132-x/2/D and 132-xR/2/D
- central axis expansion modules SMX121(/2), 121-2(/2), 122(/2) or 122A(/2) and 122-2(/2) or 122-2A(/2)
- decentralised axis expansion modules SMX111(/2/D), 111-2(/2/D), 112(/2/D) or 112A(/2/D) and 112-2(/2/D) or 112-2A(/2/D)

Basic devices

SMX100-x series is a modular safety controller. The device is freely programmable for safe processing of EMERGENCY OFF buttons, two-handed controls, light barriers, operating mode selection switches etc. as well as drive-related safety functions.

Pre-configured modules for safety relevant signal pre-processing are available for a vast number of input devices. The same applies for safety functions serving the purpose of drive monitoring. Detailed information can be found in the programming manual.

The basic version of the device (SMX100-1(/2)) has 14 safe inputs and up to 5 safe cut-off channels.

Single encoder solutions as well as two encoder solutions are supported for reliable speed and/or position detection. See: „Encoder specifications“.

Extension modules

Central or decentralised I/O - or axis expansion modules for SMX100 (/2) series.

A maximum of 8 expansion modules can be connected to a system, of which 6 axis expansion modules can be used.

Integrated communication modules

The communication interface integrated in the base device for bidirectional data transfer

- with a higher level control by means of (safe) standard field bus
- and/or with other base devices (safe cross communication)
- and/or with decentralised expansion modules (safe remote I/O communication)

Release version of the aforementioned device types

The distinguishing of the device types takes place through the SMXGen2 characterization e.g.: SMX100-1/2)

The following characteristics distinguish the two versions:

- Switchable outputs on the base devices; See technical data.
- Higher nominal loads of the outputs on the base devices. See technical data.
- Higher nominal loads of the outputs on the I/O expansion modules See technical data.
- Optional expansion possibility via „Universal communication module“; See “Optional universal communication interface“

The following device types are available as SMXGen2 (/2):

Base devices	Expansion modules
SMX100-1/2(/x ⁽¹⁾)	SMX131/2
SMX100-2/2(/x ⁽¹⁾)	SMX131R/2
SMX100-4/2(/x ⁽¹⁾)	SMX131R-4/2
	SMX132-0/2/D
	SMX132-0R/2/D
	SMX132-1/2/D
	SMX132-1R/2/D
	SMX111/2/D
	SMX111-2/2/D
	SMX112/2/D
	SMX112A/2/D
	SMX112-2/2/D
	SMX112-2A/2/D

Options:




- /5x - Standard field bus
- /4x - Standard field bus and Safety-Protokoll
- /x - Universal communication interface
- /D - Decentral expansion module
- A - Safe analogue inputs
- R - Relay

(1) Specification see: „Optional universal communication interface“

Installation manual



3.1 Module overview


Basic units		Extension units central			Extension units decentralised		
Designation	SMX 100-1/100-2/100- (/4x, /x ⁽¹⁾)	SMX131/131R/31R-4(/2)	SMX 121/121-2(/4x, /x ⁽¹⁾)	SMX122/122A/ 122-2/122-2A(/4x, /x ⁽¹⁾)	SMX132-0/2/D, SMX132-1/2/D, SMX132-0R/2/D, SMX132-1R/2/D	SMX 111/111-2(/x ⁽¹⁾ , /D)	SMX112/112A/112- 2/112-2A(/x⁽¹⁾, /D)
							
General data							
Max. no. of expansion modules	8 *	-	2	2	-	2	2
Safe digital inputs	14	12	12	12	12	14	14
Safe digital I/Os	-/20/40	10/2	-	-	0/10	-	-
Safe digital outputs pn-switching / pp-switching	2/4	-/-	-	-	2/4	2/4	2/4
Safe analogue inputs	-	-	-	-/2/-/2-	-	-	-/2/-/2-
Relay outputs	2	-/8	-	-	2, 2, 6, 6	2	2
Auxiliary outputs	2/6/10	-/2	-	-	2/4	2	2
Pulse outputs	2	-/2	-	-	2/2	2	2
Integrated communication interface	Optional: (/4x, /x ⁽¹⁾) Profibus-PROFIsafe/ Profinet-PROFIsafe FSoE-	-	-	-	-	-	-
Extended communication interface	Optional(5x) CAN 2.0, Profibus, Profinet, CANopen, EtherCAT, Devicenet	-	-	-	-	-	-
Axis monitoring	-	-	1	2	-	1	2
Encoder technology	-	-	SSI SIN/COS Inkr. TTL Proxi/+Resolver Inkr. HTL	SSI SIN/COS Inkr. TTL Proxi/+Resolver Inkr. HTL	-	SSI SIN/COS Inkr. TTL Proxi/+Resolver Inkr. HTL	SSI SIN/COS Inkr. TTL Proxi/+Resolver Inkr. HTL
Technical data							
See technical characteristic data of the respective module							

-
- *¹⁾ Of which maximum of 6 axis modules
Specification; see: "Optional universal communication interface"

3.2 Characteristic data of device

3.2.1 Basic modules

3.2.1.1 System module SMX100-1(/2, /4x, /5x, /x⁽¹⁾)

Type designation	Device design
	<p>Design of module with the following periphery:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> 14 Digital inputs 2 Pulse outputs 2 Relay outputs 2/4 pn- or pp- switching outputs 2 Auxiliary outputs 1 diagnostic- and configuration interface 1 function button 1 7-segment display 1 status LED 14 status LEDs for inputs 2 status LEDs for pulse outputs 2 status LEDs for relay outputs 4 status LEDs for outputs 1 Optional: Communication interface (/4x, /5x, /x⁽¹⁾)

Characteristics of the module:

- Extendable to:
 - max. 126 safe digital inputs,
 - max. 36 safe digital outputs,
 - max. 80 sichere digitale I/O's,
 - max. 50 safe relay outputs,
 - max. 34 axiliary outputs
 - and/or 12 safe axes
- Logic processing up to PI e acc. to EN ISO 13849-1 or SIL 3 acc. to EN 61508
- Freely programmable Modular controller for up to 3000 IL instructions
- Logic diagram oriented programming
- Pulse outputs for cross-shorting detection of digital input signals
- External contact monitoring of connected switchgear (EMU)
- Monitored relay outputs for safety relevant functions
- Switchable safe semi-conductor outputs pn-, pp- switching for safety-relevant functions
- Complete speed and position-based safety functions for drive monitoring in accordance with IEC 61800-5-2 are integrated in firmware
 - Spatial functions for safe speed and are monitoring are possible
- Parameter management for expansion modules in base device
- Comprehensive diagnostics functions integrated

-
- Coded status display via front-side 7 segment display and status LEDs
 - Multifunction buttons (quit, start, reset) can be operated from the front side
 - Optional: Communication interface (/4x, /5x, /x⁽¹⁾)
 - Standard and safe field bus protocols for communication with a higher level controller
 - Safe cross communication for data exchange between multiple base devices
 - Safe remote I/O communication for data exchange with distributed I/O systemsSee: Chapter 3.2.4.3 Communication interface
 - Assembly on top hat rail


Technical characteristic data SMX100-1(/2, /4x, /5x, /x⁽¹⁾)

Safety related characteristic data			
	PI acc. to EN ISO 13849-1		PL e
	PFH / architecture		8,0 FIT /Cat 4
	SIL acc. to IEC 61508		SIL 3
	Proof test interval		20 years = max. operating period
General data			
	Max. no. of expansion modules		8 *
	Interface for expansion modules		T-bus connector, pluggable in top-hat rail
	Number of safe digital inputs		14 (OSSD capable)
	Number of safe digital outputs		
	pn-switching		2
	Number of safe digital I/O		-
	Number of relay outputs		2
	Number of safe analogue inputs		-
	Number of auxiliary outputs		2
	Number of pulse outputs (clock outputs)		2
	Type of connection		Plug-in terminals with spring or screw connection
	Axis monitoring		-
	Encoder interfaces (D-Sub / screw terminal)		-
	Encoder technology (See table encoder specifications)		-
	SMXGen2 (/2)		
	Number of safe digital outputs		
	pn-switching **		2
	pp-switching **		4
Electrical data			
	Supply voltage (tolerance)		24 VDC; 2A (-15%, +20%)
	Fuse	X41.1, X61.1	min. 30 VDC; max. 3,15A
	Max. power consumption (logic)		
		SMX100-1	2,4W
		SMX100-1(/4x, 5x)	3W
	Rated data digital inputs		24 VDC; 20mA, Typ1 acc. to EN 61131-2
	Rated data digital outputs		
	pn-switching		24 VDC; 250mA
	Auxiliary outputs		24 VDC; 250mA
	Pulse outputs (clock outputs)		24 VDC; 250mA
	Rated data relays	Normally open DC13 AC15	24 VDC; 2A 230 VAC; 2A
	Rated data analogue inputs		-
	SMXGen2 (/2)		
	Supply voltage (tolerance)		24 VDC; 2A (-15%, +20%)
	Fuse	X41.1 / A1.1 X41.2 / A1.2	min. 30 VDC; max. 3,15A min. 30 VDC; max. 10A
	Max. power consumption (logic)		
		SMX100-1/2	2,8W
		SMX100-1/2/x	5,2W
	Rated data digital outputs		
	pn-switching		24 VDC; 2A ***
	pp-switching		24 VDC; 2A ***
Electrical data (For UL only) SMXGen2 (/2)			
	Rated data digital outputs		
	pn-switching	Temperature rating 30°C	24 VDC; 2A (G.P.)
		Temperature rating 50°C	24 VDC; 1,8A (G.P.)
	pp-switching	Temperature rating 30°C	24 VDC; 2A (G.P.)
		Temperature rating 50°C	24 VDC; 1,8A (G.P.)
	Max. total current (pn or pp)		8A
	Auxiliary outputs		24 VDC; 250mA (G.P.)
	Rated data relays	Normally open	24 VDC; 2A (Pilot Duty) 120 VAC; 2A (Pilot Duty)
Environmental data			
	Temperature		0°C ... +50°C operation

		-25C° ... +70C° storage and transport	
	Class of protection	IP 20	
	Climatic category	3k3 acc. to DIN 60 721-3	
	Min-, Maximum relative humidity (no condensation)	5% - 85%	
	EMC	EN 61000-6-2, EN 61000-6-4, EN 61000-6-7, EN 61800-3, EN 61326-3, EN 62061	
	Operating altitude	2000m	
	Overvoltage category	III	
	Degree of pollution	2	
Mechanical data			
	Dimensions (HxTxB [mm])	SMX100-1 = 100x115x67,5	
		SMX100-1(/4x, /5x) = 100x115x90	
		SMXGen2 (/2)	
	Weight (g)	SMX100-1/2 = 100x115x45	
		SMX100-1/2(/x ⁽¹⁾) = 100x115x67,5	
		SMX100-1 = 460	
	Mounting	SMX100-1(/4x, /5x) = 560	
		SMXGen2 (/2)	
		SMX100-1/2 = 300	
	Number of T-bus connectors		SMX100-1/2(/x ⁽¹⁾) = 400
		Number of T-bus connectors	To snap on top-hat rail
			SMX100-1 = 3
			SMX100-1(/4x, /5x) = 4
			SMXGen2 (/2)
SMX100-1/2 = 2			
Min. terminal cross-section / AWG	Max. terminal cross-section / AWG	SMX100-1/2(/x ⁽¹⁾) = 3	
		0,2 mm ² / 24	
		2,5 mm ² / 12	

- (*) Of which maximum of 6 axis modules
- (**) pn/pp are configurable via SafePLC2
- (***) Derating, see Chapter "Derating outputs"
- (1) Specification see: „Optional universal communication interface“

3.2.1.2 System module SMX100–2(/2, /4x, /5x, /x⁽¹⁾)

<i>Type designation</i>	<i>Device design</i>
	<p>Design of module with the following periphery:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> 14 Digital inputs 2 Pulse outputs 20 Digital I/O's 2 Relay outputs 2/4 pn- or pp- switching outputs 6 Auxiliary outputs 1 Diagnostic and configuration interface 1 Function button 1 7-segment display 1 status LED 14 status LEDs for inputs 2 status LEDs for pulse outputs 2 status LEDs for relay outputs 4 status LEDs for outputs 20 status LEDs for I/O's 1 Optional: Communication interface (/4x, /5x, /x⁽¹⁾)

Characteristics of the module:

- Extendable to:
 - max. 126 safe digital inputs,
 - max. 36 safe digital outputs,
 - max. 100 safe digital I/O's,
 - max. 50 safe relay outputs,
 - max. 38 Auxiliary outputs
 - and/or 12 safe axes
- Logic processing up to PL e acc. to EN ISO 13849-1 or SIL 3 acc. to IEC 61508
- Freely programmable modular controller for up to 3000 AWL instructions
- Logic diagram oriented programming
- Pulse outputs for cross-shortening detection of digital input signals
- External contact monitoring of connected switchgear (EMU)
- Monitored relay outputs for safety relevant functions
- Switchable safe semi-conductor outputs pn-, pp- switching for safety-relevant functions
- Complete speed and position-based safety functions for drive monitoring in accordance with IEC 61800-5-2 are integrated in firmware
 - Spatial functions for safe speed and are monitoring are possible
- Parameter management for expansion modules in base device
- Comprehensive diagnostics functions integrated
- Coded status display via front-side 7 segment display and status LEDs
- Multifunction buttons (quit, start, reset) can be operated from the front side
- Optional: Communication interface (/4x, /5x, /x⁽¹⁾)

-
- Standard and safe field bus protocols for communication with a higher level controller
 - Safe cross communication for data exchange between multiple base devices
 - Safe remote I/O communication for data exchange with distributed I/O systems
- See: Chapter 3.2.4.3 Communication interface
- Assembly on top hat rail

Technical characteristic data SMX100-2(/2, /4x, /5x, /x⁽¹⁾)

Safety related characteristic data			
	PI acc. to EN ISO 13849-1		PL e
	PFH / architecture		12,2 FIT /Cat 4
	SIL acc. to IEC 61508		SIL 3
	Proof test interval		20 years = max. operating period
General data			
	Max. no. of expansion modules		8 *
	Interface for expansion modules		T-bus connector, pluggable in top-hat rail
	Number of safe digital inputs		14 (OSSD capable)
	Number of safe digital outputs		
	pn-switching		2
	Number of safe digital I/O		20
	Number of relay outputs		2
	Number of safe analogue inputs		-
	Number of auxiliary outputs		6
	Number of pulse outputs (clock outputs)		2
	Type of connection		Plug-in terminals with spring or screw connection
	Axis monitoring		-
	Encoder interfaces (D-Sub / screw terminal)		-
	Encoder technology (See table encoder specifications)		-
	SMXGen2 (/2)		
	Number of safe digital outputs		
	pn-switching **		2
	pp-switching **		4
Electrical data			
	Supply voltage (tolerance)		24 VDC; 2A (-15%, +20%)
	Fuse	X41.1, X45.1, X49.1, X61.1	min. 30 VDC; max. 3,15A
	Max. power consumption (logic)		
		SMX100-2	2,9W
		SMX100-2(/4x, 5x)	3,5W
	Rated data digital inputs		24 VDC; 20mA, Typ1 acc. to EN 61131-2
	Rated data digital outputs		
	pn-switching		24 VDC; 250mA
	Auxiliary outputs		24 VDC; 250mA
	Pulse outputs (clock outputs)		24 VDC; 250mA
	Digitale I/O		24 VDC; 250mA
	Rated data relays	Normally open DC13 AC15	24 VDC; 2A 230 VAC; 2A
	Rated data analogue inputs		-
	SMXGen2 (/2)		
	Supply voltage (tolerance)		24 VDC; 2A (-15%, +20%)
	Fuse	X41.1 / A1.1 X41.2 / A1.2, X45.1 / A3.1, X49.1 / A5.1	min. 30 VDC; max. 3,15A min. 30 VDC; max. 10A
	Max. power consumption (logic)		
		SMX100-2/2	3,5W
		SMX100-2/2/x	6,9W
	Rated data digital outputs		
	pn-switching		24 VDC; 2A ***
	pp-switching		24 VDC; 2A ***
	Digitale I/O	01 – 05 11 – 15 06 – 10 16 - 20	24 VDC; 0,5A 24 VDC; 2A ***
Electrical data (For UL only) SMXGen2 (/2)			
	Rated data digital outputs		
	pn-switching	Temperature rating 30°C	24 VDC; 2A (G.P.)
		Temperature rating 50°C	24 VDC; 1,8A (G.P.)
	pp-switching	Temperature rating 30°C	24 VDC; 2A (G.P.)
		Temperature rating 50°C	24 VDC; 1,8A (G.P.)
	Max. total current (pn or pp)		8A

	Auxiliary outputs		24 VDC; 250mA (G.P.)		
	Digital I/O	01 – 05 10 – 15	24 VDC; 0,5A (G.P.)		
		06 – 10 16 – 20	Temperature rating 30°C	24 VDC; 2A (G.P.)	
			Temperature rating 50°C	24 VDC; 1,8A (G.P.)	
	Max. total current I/O		10A		
Rated data relays	Normally open		24 VDC; 2A (Pilot Duty) 120 VAC; 2A (Pilot Duty)		
Environmental data					
	Temperature		0°C ... +50°C operation -25°C ... +70°C storage and transport		
	Class of protection		IP 20		
	Climatic category		3k3 acc. to DIN 60 721-3		
	Min-, Maximum relative humidity (no condensation)		5% - 85%		
	EMC		EN 61000-6-2, EN 61000-6-4, EN 61000-6-7, EN 61800-3, EN 61326-3, EN 62061		
	Operating altitude		2000m		
	Overvoltage category		III		
	Degree of pollution		2		
Mechanical data					
	Dimensions (HxDxW [mm])		SMX100-2	= 100x115x112,5	
			SMX100-2(/4x, /5x)	= 100x115x135	
			SMXGen2 (/2)		
			SMX100-2/2	= 100x115x90	
			SMX100-2/2(/x ⁽¹⁾)	= 100x115x112,5	
	Weight (g)		SMX100-2	= 690	
			SMX100-2(/4x, /5x)	= 790	
			SMXGen2 (/2)		
			SMX100-2/2	= 530	
			SMX100-2/2(/x ⁽¹⁾)	= 630	
	Mounting		To snap on top-hat rail		
	Number of T-connectors				
			SMX100-2	5	
			SMX100-2(/4x, /5x)	6	
			SMXGen2 (/2)		
SMX100-2/2			4		
		SMX100-2/2(/x ⁽¹⁾)	5		
Min. terminal cross-section / AWG		0,2 mm ² / 24			
Max. terminal cross-section / AWG		2,5 mm ² / 12			

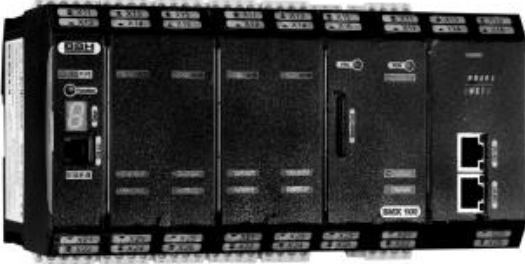
(*) Of which maximum of 6 axis modules

(**) pn/pp are configurable via SafePLC2

(***) Derating, see Chapter "Derating outputs"

(1) Specification see: „Optional universal communication interface“

3.2.1.3 System module SMX100–4(/2, /4x, /5x, /x⁽¹⁾)

<i>Type designation</i>	<i>Device design</i>
	<p>Design of module with the following periphery:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> 14 Digital inputs 2 Pulse outputs 40 Digital I/O's 2 Relay outputs 2/4 pn- or pp- switching outputs 10 Auxiliary outputs 1 Diagnostic and configuration interface 1 Function button 1 7-segment display 1 status LED 14 status LEDs for inputs 2 status LEDs for pulse outputs 2 status LEDs for relay outputs 4 status LEDs for outputs 40 status LEDs for I/O's 1 Optional: Communication interface (/4x, /5x, /x⁽¹⁾)

Characteristics of the module:

- Extendable to:
 - max. 126 safe digital inputs,
 - max. 36 safe digital outputs,
 - max. 120 sichere digitale I/O's,
 - max. 50 safe relay outputs,
 - max. 42 Auxiliary outputs
 - and/or 12 safe axes
- Logic processing up to PL e acc. to EN ISO 13849-1 or SIL 3 acc. to IEC 61508
- Freely programmable modular controller for up to 3000 AWL instructions
- Logic diagram oriented programming
- Pulse outputs for cross-shortening detection of digital input signals
- External contact monitoring of connected switchgear (EMU)
- Monitored relay outputs for safety relevant functions
- Switchable safe semi-conductor outputs pn-, pp- switching for safety-relevant functions
- Complete speed and position-based safety functions for drive monitoring in accordance with IEC 61800-5-2 are integrated in firmware
 - Spatial functions for safe speed and are monitoring are possible
- Parameter management for expansion modules in base device
- Comprehensive diagnostics functions integrated
- Coded status display via front-side 7 segment display and status LEDs
- Multifunction buttons (quit, start, reset) can be operated from the front side
- Optional: Communication interface (/4x, /5x, /x⁽¹⁾)

-
- Standard and safe field bus protocols for communication with a higher level controller
 - Safe cross communication for data exchange between multiple base devices
 - Safe remote I/O communication for data exchange with distributed I/O systems
- See: Chapter 3.2.4.3 Communication interface
- Assembly on top hat rail

Technical characteristic data SMX100-4(/2, /4x, /5x, /x⁽¹⁾)

Safety related characteristic data			
	PI acc. to EN ISO 13849-1		PL e
	PFH / architecture		16,6 FIT /Cat 4
	SIL acc. to IEC 61508		SIL 3
	Proof test interval		20 years = max. operation period
General data			
	Max. no. of expansion modules		8 *
	Interface for expansion modules		T-bus connector, pluggable in top-hat rail
	Number of safe digital inputs		14 (OSSD capable)
	Number of safe digital outputs		
	pn-switching		2
	Number of safe digital I/O		40
	Number of relay outputs		2
	Number of safe analogue inputs		-
	Number of auxiliary outputs		10
	Number of pulse outputs (clock outputs)		2
	Type of connection		Plug-in terminals with spring or screw connection
	Axis monitoring		-
	Encoder interfaces (D-Sub / screw terminal)		-
	Encoder technology (See table encoder specifications)		-
	SMXGen2 (/2)		
	Number of safe digital outputs		
	pn-switching **		2
	pp-switching **		4
Electrical data			
	Supply voltage (tolerance)		24 VDC; 3,15A (-15%, +20%)
	Fuse	X41.1, X45.1, X49.1, X53.1, X57.1, X61.1	min. 30 VDC; max. 3,15A
	Max. power consumption (logic)		
		SMX100-4	3,4W
		SMX100-4(/4x, 5x)	3,9W
	Rated data digital inputs		24 VDC; 20mA, Typ1 acc. to EN 61131-2
	Rated data digital outputs		
	pn-switching		24 VDC; 250mA
	Auxiliary outputs		24 VDC; 250mA
	Pulse outputs (clock outputs)		24 VDC; 250mA
	Digital I/O		24 VDC; 250mA
	Rated data relays	Normally open DC13 AC15	24 VDC; 2A 230 VAC; 2A
	Rated data analogue inputs		-
	SMXGen2 (/2)		
	Supply voltage (tolerance)		24 VDC; 2A (-15%, +20%)
	Fuse	X41.1 / A1.1 X41.2 / A1.2, X45.1 / A1.3, X49.1 / A1.5, X53.1 / A1.7, X57.1 / A1.9	min. 30 VDC; max. 3,15A min. 30 VDC; max. 10A
	Max. power consumption (logic)		
		SMX100-4/2	4,0W
		SMX100-4/2/x	5,4W
	Rated data digital outputs		
	pn-switching		24 VDC; 2A ***
	pp-switching		24 VDC; 2A ***
	Digital I/O	01 – 05 11 – 15 21 – 25 31 – 35	24 VDC; 0,5A
		06 – 10 16 – 20 26 – 30 36 – 40	24 VDC; 2A ***
Electrical data (For UL only) SMXGen2 (/2)			
	Rated data digital outputs		
	pn-switching		Temperature rating 30°C
			24 VDC; 2A (G.P.)

			Temperature rating 50°C	24 VDC; 1,8A (G.P.)	
		pp-switching	Temperature rating 30°C	24 VDC; 2A (G.P.)	
			Temperature rating 50°C	24 VDC; 1,8A (G.P.)	
		Max. total current (pn or pp)		8A	
		Auxiliary outputs		24 VDC; 250mA (G.P.)	
		Digital I/O	01 – 05 11 – 15 21 – 25 31 – 35	24 VDC; 0,5A (G.P.)	
			06 – 10 16 – 20 26 – 30 36 – 40	Temperature rating 30°C	24 VDC; 2A (G.P.)
				Temperature rating 50°C	24 VDC; 1,8A (G.P.)
			Max. total current I/O		10A
		Rated data relays	Normally open	24 VDC; 2A (Pilot Duty) 120 VAC; 2A (Pilot Duty)	
Environmental data					
	Temperature	0°C ... +50°C operation -25°C° ... +70°C° storage and transport			
	Class of protection	IP 20			
	Climatic category	3k3 acc. to DIN 60 721-3			
	Min-, Maximum relative humidity (no condensation)	5% - 85%			
	EMC	EN 61000-6-2, EN 61000-6-4, EN 61000-6-7, EN 61800-3, EN 61326-3, EN 62061			
	Operating altitude	2000m			
	Overvoltage category	III			
	Degree of pollution	2			
Mechanical data					
	Dimensions (HxDxW [mm])	SMX100-4	= 100x115x157,5		
		SMX100-4(/4x, /5x)	= 100x115x180		
		SMXGen2 (/2)			
		SMX100-4/2	= 100x115x135		
	Weight (g)	SMX100-4/2(/x ¹)	= 100x115x157,5		
		SMX100-4	= 920		
		SMX100-4(/4x, /5x)	= 1020		
		SMXGen2 (/2)			
	Mounting	SMX100-4/2	= 760		
		SMX100-4/2(/x ¹)	= 860		
	Mounting		To snap on top-hat rail		
	Number of T-bus connectors				
		SMX100-4	7		
		SMX100-4(/4x, /5x)	8		
SMXGen2 (/2)					
SMX100-4/2		6			
Min. terminal cross-section / AWG	SMX100-4/2(/x ¹)	7			
		0,2 mm ² / 24			
Max. terminal cross-section / AWG		2,5 mm ² / 12			

(*) Of which maximum of 6 axis modules


(**) pn/pp are configurable via SafePLC2

(***) Derating, see Chapter "Derating outputs"

(1) Specification see: „Optional universal communication interface“

3.2.2 Central expansion modules

3.2.2.1 Expansion module SMX121(/2)

<i>Type designation</i>	<i>Device design</i>
	<p>Design of module with the following periphery:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none">1 Axis3 Encoder interfaces (*)12 Digital inputs1 status LED12 status LEDs for inputs

Characteristics of the module:

- Movement monitoring of one or two axes up to PI e EN ISO 13849-1 or SIL 3 acc. to IEC 61508
- Speed monitoring
- RPM-monitoring
- Standstill monitoring
- Sense of rotation monitoring
- Safe incremental dimension
- Emergency Stop monitoring
- Position monitoring
- Position range monitoring
- Trend range monitoring
- Target position monitoring
- Parameter management for expansion modules in base device
- Comprehensive diagnostics functions integrated
- Assembly on top hat rail

Technical characteristic data SMX121(/2)

Safety related characteristic data		
	PI acc. to EN ISO 13849-1	PL e
	PFH ¹⁾ / architecture	3,0 FIT / Cat 4
	SIL acc. to IEC 61508	SIL 3
	Proof test interval	20 years = max. operation period
General data		
	Max. no. of expansion modules	-
	Interface for expansion modules	T-bus connector, pluggable in top-hat rail
	Number of safe digital inputs	12 (OSSD capable)
	Number of safe digital outputs	-
	Number of safe digital I/O	-
	Number of relay outputs	-
	Number of safe analogue inputs	-
	Number of auxiliary outputs	-
	Number of pulse outputs (clock outputs)	-
	Type of connection	Plug-in terminals with spring or screw connection
	Axis monitoring	1
	Encoder interfaces (D-Sub / screw terminal)	1 / 2 *
	Encoder technology (See table encoder specifications)	SSI, SinCos, TTL, Proxi
Electrical data		
	Supply voltage (tolerance)	-
	Fuse	-
	Max. power consumption (logic)	-
	Rated data digital inputs	24 VDC; 20mA, Typ1 acc. to EN 61131-2
	Rated data digital outputs	-
	Rated data analogue inputs	-
Environmental data		
	Temperature	0°C ... +50°C operation -25°C ... +70°C storage and transport
	Class of protection	IP 20
	Climatic category	3k3 acc. to DIN 60 721-3
	Min-, Maximum relative humidity (no condensation)	5% - 85%
	EMC	EN 61000-6-2, EN 61000-6-4, EN 61000-6-7, EN 61800-3, EN 61326-3, EN 62061
	Operating altitude	2000m
	Overvoltage category	III
	Degree of pollution	2
Mechanical data		
	Dimensions (HxDxW (mm))	SMX121(/2) = 100x115x22,5
	Weight (g)	SMX121(/2) = 210
	Mounting	To snap on top-hat rail
	Number of T-bus connectors	1
	Min. terminal cross-section / AWG	0,2 mm ² / 24
	Max. terminal cross-section / AWG	2,5 mm ² / 12

(*)


Maximum 2 encoder / axis

1)

Value applies only for extension module. For a total assessment in accordance with EN ISO 13849-1 one must use a series connection with the corresponding basic device

=> $PFH_{Logic} = PFH_{Basic} + PFH_{Extension}$

3.2.2.2 Expansion module SMX121-2(/2)

<i>Type designation</i>	<i>Device design</i>
	<p>Design of module with the following periphery:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> 1 Expanded axis 5 Encoder interfaces (*) 12 Digital inputs 1 status LED 12 status LEDs for inputs

Characteristics of the module:

- Movement monitoring of one or two axes up to PI e EN ISO 13849-1 or SIL 3 acc. to IEC 61508
- Speed monitoring
- RPM-monitoring
- Standstill monitoring
- Sense of rotation monitoring
- Safe incremental dimension
- Emergency Stop monitoring
- Position monitoring
- Position range monitoring
- Trend range monitoring
- Target position monitoring
- Parameter management for expansion modules in base device
- Comprehensive diagnostics functions integrated
- Assembly on top hat rail
- Extended functionality:
 - allows the connection of 2 rotary encoders per axis (SSI, Sin/Cos, TTL, Proxi)
 - 2nd encoder interface also supports HTL (200 kHz), Sin/Cos High-Resolution and Resolver

Technical characteristic data SMX121-2(/2)


Safety related characteristic data		
	PI acc. to EN ISO 13849-1	PL e
	PFH ¹⁾ / architecture	3,0 FIT / Cat 4
	SIL acc. to IEC 61508	SIL 3
	Proof test interval	20 years = max. utilization period
General data		
	Max. no. of expansion modules	-
	Interface for expansion modules	T-bus connector, pluggable in top-hat rail
	Number of safe digital inputs	12 (OSSD capable)
	Number of safe digital outputs	-
	Number of safe digital I/O	-
	Number of relay outputs	-
	Number of safe analogue inputs	-
	Number of auxiliary outputs	-
	Number of pulse outputs (clock outputs)	-
	Type of connection	Plug-in terminals with spring or screw connection
	Axis monitoring	1
	Encoder interfaces (D-Sub / screw terminal)	2 / 3 *
	Encoder technology (See table encoder specifications)	1. Encoder: SSI, SinCos, TTL, Proxi (10 kHz), 2. Encoder: HTL (200 kHz), SinCos (HiRes), Resolver
Electrical data		
	Supply voltage (tolerance)	-
	Fuse	-
	Max. power consumption (logic)	-
	Rated data digital inputs	24 VDC; 20mA, Typ1 acc. to EN 61131-2
	Rated data digital outputs	-
	Rated data analogue inputs	-
Environmental data		
	Temperature	0°C ... +50°C operation -25°C ... +70°C storage and transport
	Class of protection	IP 20
	Climatic category	3k3 acc. to DIN 60 721-3
	Min-, Maximum relative humidity (no condensation)	5% - 85%
	EMC	EN 61000-6-2, EN 61000-6-4, EN 61000-6-7, EN 61800-3, EN 61326-3, EN 62061
	Operating altitude	2000m
	Overvoltage category	III
	Degree of pollution	2
Mechanical data		
	Dimensions (HxDxW [mm])	SMX121-2(/2) = 100x115x45
	Weight (g)	SMX121-2(/2) = 390
	Mounting	To snap on top-hat rail
	Number of T-bus connectors	2
	Min. terminal cross-section / AWG	0,2 mm ² / 24
	Max. terminal cross-section / AWG	2,5 mm ² / 12

(*) Maximum 2 encoder / axis

¹⁾ Value applies only for extension module. For a total assessment in accordance with EN ISO 13849-1 one must use a series connection with the corresponding basic device

=> $PFH_{Logic} = PFH_{Basic} + PFH_{Extension}$

3.2.2.3 Expansion module SMX122/122A(/2)

<i>Type designation</i>	<i>Device design</i>
	<p>Design of module with the following periphery:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> 2 Axes 4 Encoder interfaces (*) 12 Digital inputs 2 Analogue inputs (Variant A) 1 status LED 12 status LEDs for inputs

Characteristics of the module:

- Movement monitoring of one or two axes up to PI e EN ISO 13849-1 or SIL 3 acc. to IEC 61508
- Speed monitoring
- RPM-monitoring
- Standstill monitoring
- Sense of rotation monitoring
- Safe incremental dimension
- Emergency Stop monitoring
- Position monitoring
- Position range monitoring
- Trend range monitoring
- Target position monitoring
- Parameter management for expansion modules in base device
- Comprehensive diagnostics functions integrated
- Assembly on top hat rail
- SMX122A(/2) – Variant A (analogue)– with 2 analogue inputs

Technical characteristic data SMX122/122A(/2)

Safety related characteristic data		
	PI acc. to EN ISO 13849-1	PL e
	PFH ³⁾ / architecture	3,0 FIT ¹⁾ / Cat 4 6,5 FIT ²⁾ / Cat 4
	SIL acc. to IEC 61508	SIL 3
	Proof test interval	20 years = max. operation period
General data		
	Max. no. of expansion modules	-
	Interface for expansion modules	T-bus connector, pluggable in top-hat rail
	Number of safe digital inputs	12 (OSSD capable)
	Number of safe digital outputs	-
	Number of safe digital I/O	-
	Number of relay outputs	-
	Number of safe analogue inputs	-
	SMX122A	2 ****
	Number of auxiliary outputs	-
	Number of pulse outputs (clock outputs)	-
	Type of connection	Plug-in terminals with spring or screw connection
	Axis monitoring	2
	Encoder interfaces (D-Sub / screw terminal)	2 / 2 *
	Encoder technology (See table encoder specifications)	SSI, SinCos, TTL, Proxi
Electrical data		
	Supply voltage (tolerance)	-
	Fuse	-
	Max. power consumption (logic)	-
	Rated data digital inputs	24 VDC; 20mA, Typ1 acc. to EN 61131-2
	Rated data digital outputs	-
	Rated data analogue inputs	-
	SMX122A(/2)	-7 ... +10V 4 ... 20mA
Environmental data		
	Temperature	0°C ... +50°C operation -25°C ... +70°C storage and transport
	Class of protection	IP 20
	Climatic category	3k3 acc. to DIN 60 721-3
	Min-, Maximum relative humidity (no condensation)	5% - 85%
	EMC	EN 61000-6-2, EN 61000-6-4, EN 61000-6-7, EN 61800-3, EN 61326-3, EN 62061
	Operating altitude	2000m
	Overvoltage category	III
	Degree of pollution	2
Mechanical data		
	Dimensions (HxDxW [mm])	SMX122/122A(/2) = 100x115x45
	Weight (g)	SMX122/122A(/2) = 390
	Mounting	To snap on top-hat rail
	Number of T-bus connectors	2
	Min. terminal cross-section / AWG	0,2 mm ² / 24
	Max. terminal cross-section / AWG	2,5 mm ² / 12

(*) Maximum 2 encoder / axis

(****) Analogue electricity, voltage inputs are available as options

z.B.: SMX122A-U(/2) Voltage inputs
SMX122A-I(/2) Electricity inputs
SMX122A(/2) Voltage and electricity inputs

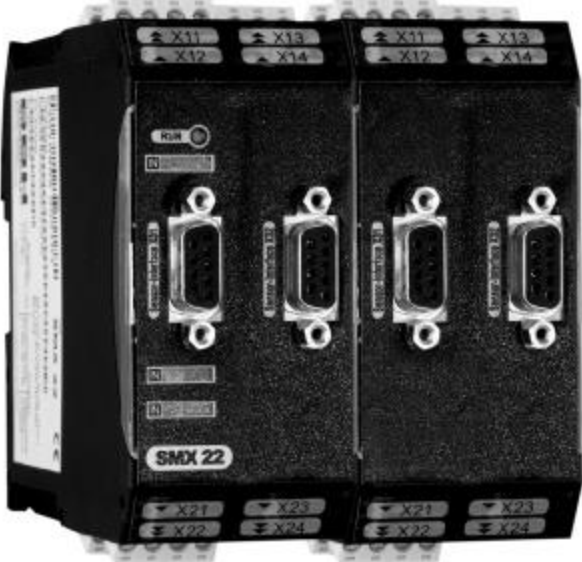
1) 1-Axis

2) 2-Axes

3) Value applies only for extension module. For a total assessment in accordance with EN ISO 13849-1 one must use a series connection with the corresponding basic device

=> PFH_{Logic} = PFH_{Basic} + PFH_{Extension}

3.2.2.4 Expansion module SMX122-2/122-2A(/2)

<i>Type designation</i>	<i>Device design</i>
	<p>Design of module with the following periphery:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> 2 expanded axes 8 Encoder interfaces (*) 12 Digital inputs 2 Analogue inputs (Variant A) 1 status-LED 12 status LEDs for inputs

Characteristics of the module

- Movement monitoring of one or two axes up to PI e EN ISO 13849-1 or SIL 3 acc. to IEC 61508
- Speed monitoring
- RPM-monitoring
- Standstill monitoring
- Sense of rotation monitoring
- Safe incremental dimension
- Emergency Stop monitoring
- Position monitoring
- Position range monitoring
- Trend range monitoring
- Target position monitoring
- Parameter management for expansion modules in base device
- Comprehensive diagnostics functions integrated
- Assembly on top hat rail
- Extended functionality:
 - allows the connection of 2 rotary encoders per axis (SSI, Sin/Cos, TTL, Proxi)
 - encoder interface also supports HTL (200 kHz), Sin/Cos High-Resolution and Resolver
- SMX122-2A(/2) – Variant A (analogue)– with 2 analogue inputs

Technical characteristic data SMX122-2/122-2A(/2)

Safety related characteristic data		
	PI acc. to EN ISO 13849-1	PL e
	PFH ¹⁾ / architecture	6,5 FIT / Cat 4
	SIL acc. to IEC 61508	SIL 3
	Proof test interval	20 years = max. operation period
General data		
	Max. no. of expansion modules	-
	Interface for expansion modules	T-bus connector, pluggable in top-hat rail
	Number of safe digital inputs	12 (OSSD capable)
	Number of safe digital outputs	-
	Number of safe digital I/O	-
	Number of relay outputs	-
	Number of safe analogue inputs	-
	SMX122-2A	2 ****
	Number of auxiliary outputs	-
	Number of pulse outputs (clock outputs)	-
	Type of connection	Plug-in terminals with spring or screw connection
	Axis monitoring	2
	Encoder interfaces (D-Sub / screw terminal)	4 / 4 *
	Encoder technology (See table encoder specifications)	1. Encoder: SSI, SinCos, TTL, Proxi, 2. Encoder: HTL (200 kHz), SinCos (HiRes), Resolver
Electrical data		
	Supply voltage (tolerance)	-
	Fuse	-
	Max. power consumption (logic)	-
	Rated data digital inputs	24 VDC; 20mA, Typ1 acc. to EN 61131-2
	Rated data digital outputs	-
	Rated data analogue inputs	-
	SMX122-2A(/2)	-7 ... +10V 4 ... 20mA
Environmental data		
	Temperature	0°C ... +50°C operation -25°C ... +70°C storage and transport
	Class of protection	IP 20
	Climatic category	3k3 acc. to DIN 60 721-3
	Min-, Maximum relative humidity (no condensation)	5% - 85%
	EMC	EN 61000-6-2, EN 61000-6-4, EN 61000-6-7, EN 61800-3, EN 61326-3, EN 62061
	Operating altitude	2000m
	Overvoltage category	III
	Degree of pollution	2
Mechanical data		
	Dimensions (HxDxW [mm])	SMX122-2/122-2A(/2) = 100x115x90
	Weight (g)	SMX122-2/122-2A(/2) = 520
	Mounting	To snap on top-hat rail
	Number of T-bus connectors	4
	Min. terminal cross-section / AWG	0,2 mm ² / 24
	Max. terminal cross-section / AWG	2,5 mm ² / 12

(*) Maximum 2 encoder / axis

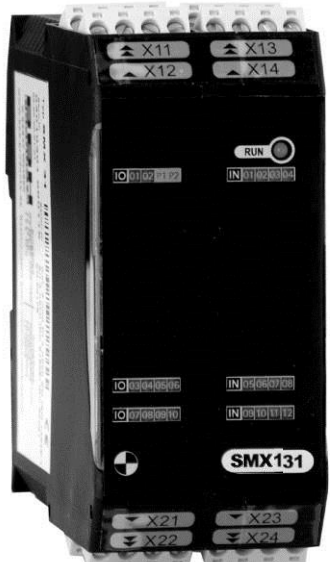
(****) Analogue electricity, voltage inputs are available as options

z.B.: SMX122-2A-U(/2) Voltage inputs
SMX122-2A-I(/2) Electricity inputs
SMX122-2A(/2) Voltage and electricity inputs

1) Value applies only for extension module. For a total assessment in accordance with EN ISO 13849-1 one must use a series connection with the corresponding basic device

=> PFH_{Logic} = PFH_{Basic} + PFH_{Extension}

3.2.2.5 Expansion module SMX131(/2), 131R(/2) and 131R-4/2

<i>Type designation</i>	<i>Device design</i>																		
 <p>The image shows a black SMX131 expansion module mounted on a rail. It features a 'RUN' indicator light, several status LEDs, and terminal blocks labeled X11, X12, X13, X14, X21, X22, X23, and X24. The model name 'SMX131' is printed on the front panel.</p>	<p>Design of module with the following periphery:</p> <table border="0"> <tr> <td style="padding-right: 20px;">12</td> <td>Digital inputs</td> </tr> <tr> <td>10/2/6</td> <td>Digitale I/O's</td> </tr> <tr> <td>2</td> <td>Pulse outputs</td> </tr> <tr> <td>2</td> <td>Auxiliary outputs</td> </tr> <tr> <td>0/8/4</td> <td>Relay outputs (Variante R)</td> </tr> <tr> <td>1</td> <td>status-LED</td> </tr> <tr> <td>12</td> <td>status LEDs for inputs</td> </tr> <tr> <td>2</td> <td>status-LEDs for pulse outputs</td> </tr> <tr> <td>10</td> <td>status-LEDs for I/O's</td> </tr> </table>	12	Digital inputs	10/2/6	Digitale I/O's	2	Pulse outputs	2	Auxiliary outputs	0/8/4	Relay outputs (Variante R)	1	status-LED	12	status LEDs for inputs	2	status-LEDs for pulse outputs	10	status-LEDs for I/O's
12	Digital inputs																		
10/2/6	Digitale I/O's																		
2	Pulse outputs																		
2	Auxiliary outputs																		
0/8/4	Relay outputs (Variante R)																		
1	status-LED																		
12	status LEDs for inputs																		
2	status-LEDs for pulse outputs																		
10	status-LEDs for I/O's																		

Characteristics of the module:

- Logic diagram oriented programming
- External contact monitoring of connected switchgear (EMU)
- Comprehensive diagnostics functions integrated
- Assembly on top hat rail
- SMX 131(/2) – with a total of 10 I/O's
- SMX 131R/131R-4(/2) – with a total of 8/4 relay outputs and only 2/6 I/Os.
- The mechanical structure of SMX131R/131R-4(/2) differs from the figure. (See mechanical data)

Technical characteristic data SMX131(/2), 131R(/2) und 131R-4/2


Safety related characteristic data				
	PI acc. to EN ISO 13849-1		PL e	
	PFH / architecture		9,2 FIT /Cat 4 ¹⁾ plus in SMX31R/31R-4 1-channel per Rel 20 FIT (max. 8) 2-channel per Rel 1,0 FIT (max. 4)	
	SIL acc. to IEC 61508		SIL 3	
	Proof test interval		20 years = max. operating period	
General data				
	Max. no. of expansion modules		-	
	Interface for expansion modules		T-bus connector, pluggable in top-hat rail	
	Number of safe digital inputs		12 (OSSD capable)	
	Number of safe digital outputs		-	
	Number of safe digital I/O			
		SMX131(/2)	10	
		SMX131R(/2)	2	
		SMX131R-4/2	6	
	Number of relay outputs			
		SMX131R(/2)	8	
		SMX131R-4/2	4	
	Number of safe analogue inputs		-	
	Number of auxiliary outputs		2	
	Number of pulse outputs (clock outputs)		2	
	Type of connection		Plug-in terminals with spring or screw connection	
	Axis monitoring		-	
	Encoder interfaces (D-Sub / screw terminal)		-	
Encoder technology (See table encoder specifications)		-		
SMXGen2 (/2)				
Number of safe digital outputs				
	pn-switching **	2		
	pp-switching **	4		
Electrical data				
	Fuse	X11.1	min. 30 VDC; max. 3,15A	
	Max. power consumption (logic)		2,4W	
	Rated data digital inputs		24 VDC; 20 mA, Typ1 acc. to EN 61131-2	
	Rated data digital outputs			
		Auxiliary outputs	24 VDC; 250mA	
		Pulse outputs (clock outputs)	24 VDC; 250mA	
		Digital I/O	24 VDC; 250mA	
	Rated data relays	Normally open	DC13	24 VDC; 2A
			AC15	230 VAC; 2A
		Normally closed (Read back contact)	DC13	24 VDC; 2A
	Rated data analogue inputs		-	
	SMXGen2 (/2)			
	Fuse	X11.1	min. 30 VDC; max. 10A	
	Max. power consumption (logic)		3W	
	Rated data digital outputs			
		Digital I/O	01 – 05	24 VDC; 0,5A
			06 – 10	24 VDC; 2A ***
Electrical data (For UL only) SMXGen2 (/2)				
	Rated data digital outputs			
		Auxiliary outputs	24 VDC; 250mA (G.P.)	
		Digital I/O	01 – 05	24 VDC; 0,5A (G.P.)
			06 – 10	Temperature rating 30°C
				24 VDC; 2A (G.P.)
				Temperature rating 50°C
				24 VDC; 1,8A (G.P.)
	Max. total current I/O		10A	
Rated data relays	Normally open		24 VDC; 2A (Pilot Duty) 120 VAC; 2A (Pilot Duty)	
	Normally closed (Read back contact)		24 VDC; 2A (Pilot Duty)	
Environmental data				
	Temperature		0°C ... +50°C operation	

		-25C° ... +70C° storage and transport
	Class of protection	IP 20
	Climatic category	3k3 acc. to DIN 60 721-3
	Min-, Maximum relative humidity (no condensation)	5% - 85%
	EMC	EN 61000-6-2, EN 61000-6-4, EN 61000-6-7, EN 61800-3, EN 61326-3, EN 62061
	Operating altitude	2000m
	Overvoltage category	III
	Degree of pollution	2
Mechanical data		
	Dimensions (HxDxW [mm])	SMX131(/2) = 100x115x45 SMX131R(/2) = 100x115x90 SMX131R-4/2 = 100x115x67,5
	Weight (g)	SMX131(/2) = 300 SMX131R(/2) = 680 SMX131R-4/2 = 545
	Mounting	To snap on top-hat rail
		SMX131(/2) 2
		SMX131R(/2) 4
		SMX131R-4(/2) 3
	Min. terminal cross-section / AWG	0,2 mm ² / 24
	Max. terminal cross-section / AWG	2,5 mm ² / 12

(***) Derating, see Chapter "Derating outputs"
 1) Value applies only for extension module. For a total assessment in accordance with EN ISO 13849-1 one must use a series connection with the corresponding basic device
 => $PFH_{Logic} = PFH_{Basic} + PFH_{Extension}$

3.2.3 Decentralised expansion modules

3.2.3.1 Decentralised expansion module SMX111(/2/D)

<i>Type designation</i>	<i>Device design</i>
	<p>Design of module with the following periphery:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> 1 Axis 3 Encoder interfaces (*) 14 Digital inputs 2 Pulse outputs 2 Relay outputs 2/4 pn- or pp- switching outputs 2 Auxiliary outputs 1 Diagnostic and configuration interface 1 Function button 1 7-segment display 1 status LED 14 status LEDs for inputs 2 status LEDs for pulse outputs 2 status LEDs for relay outputs 4 status LEDs for outputs 1 Optional: Communication interface (/D)

Characteristics of the module:

- Can be used decentralised and central axis expansion
 - Decentralised: Communication with base module SMX100-x via communication interface (/D)
 - Central: Communication with base module SMX100-x via backplane bus
- Movement monitoring of one or two axes up to PI e EN ISO 13849-1 or SIL 3 acc. to IEC 61508
- Speed monitoring
- RPM-monitoring
- Standstill monitoring
- Sense of rotation monitoring
- Safe incremental dimension
- Emergency Stop monitoring
- Position monitoring
- Position range monitoring
- Trend range monitoring
- Target position monitoring
- Logic diagram oriented programming
- External contact monitoring of connected switchgear (EMU)
- Monitored relay outputs for safety relevant functions
- Switchable safe outputs pn-, pp-switching for safety-relevant functions
- Parameter management for expansion modules in base device
- Comprehensive diagnostics functions integrated
- Coded status display via front-side 7 segment display and status LEDs

-
- Assembly on top hat rail
 - The mechanical structure of SMX111/2/D differs from the figure.
(See mechanical data)

Technical characteristic data SMX111(/2/D)

Safety related characteristic data			
	PI acc. to EN ISO 13849-1	PL e	
	PFH ¹⁾ / Architecture	12,6 FIT /Cat 4	
	SIL acc. to IEC 61508	SIL 3	
	Proof test interval	20 years = max. operation period	
General data			
	Max. no. of expansion modules	-	
	Interface for expansion modules	Communication interface (/D) or T-bus connector, pluggable in top-hat rail	
	Number of safe digital inputs	14 (OSSD capable)	
	Number of safe digital outputs		
	pn-switching	2	
	Number of safe digital I/O	-	
	Number of relay outputs	2	
	Number of safe analogue inputs	-	
	Number of auxiliary outputs	2	
	Number of pulse outputs (clock outputs)	2	
	Type of connection	Plug-in terminals with spring or screw connection	
	Axis monitoring	1	
	Encoder interfaces (D-Sub / screw terminal)	1 / 2 *	
	Encoder technology (See table encoder specifications)	SSI, SinCos, TTL, Proxi	
	SMXGen2 (/2)		
	Number of safe digital outputs		
	pn-switching **	2	
	pp-switching **	4	
Electrical data			
	Supply voltage (tolerance)	24 VDC; 2A (-15%, +20%)	
	Fuse X11.1	min. 30 VDC; max. 3,15A	
	Max. power consumption (logic)	2,4W	
	Rated data digital inputs	24 VDC; 20mA, Typ1 acc. to EN 61131-2	
	Rated data digital outputs		
	pn-switching	24 VDC; 250mA	
	Auxiliary outputs	24 VDC; 250mA	
	Pulse outputs (clock outputs)	24 VDC; 250mA	
	Rated data relays	Normally open DC13 AC15	24 VDC; 2A 230 VAC; 2A
	Rated data analogue inputs	-	
	SMXGen2 (/2)		
	Supply voltage (tolerance)	24 VDC; 2A (-15%, +20%)	
	Fuse X11.1	min. 30 VDC; max. 3,15A	
	X11.2	min. 30 VDC; max. 10A	
	Max. power consumption (logic)	5,2W	
	Rated data digital outputs		
	pn-switching	24 VDC; 2A ***	
	pp-switching	24 VDC; 2A ***	
Electrical data (For UL only) SMXGen2 (/2)			
	Rated data digital outputs		
	pn-switching	Temperature rating 30°C	24 VDC; 2A (G.P.)
		Temperature rating 50°C	24 VDC; 1,8A (G.P.)
	pp-switching	Temperature rating 30°C	24 VDC; 2A (G.P.)
		Temperature rating 50°C	24 VDC; 1,8A (G.P.)
	Max. total current (pn- or pp)	8A	
	Auxiliary outputs	24VDC; 250mA (G.P.)	
	Rated data relays	Normally open	24 VDC; 2A (Pilot Duty) 120 VAC; 2A (Pilot Duty)
Environmental data			
	Temperature	0°C ... +50°C operation -25°C ... +70°C storage and transport	
	Class of protection	IP 20	
	Climatic category	3k3 acc. to DIN 60 721-3	
	Min-, Maximum relative humidity (no condensation)	5% - 85%	

	EMC		EN 61000-6-2, EN 61000-6-4, EN 61000-6-7, EN 61800-3, EN 61326-3, EN 62061
	Operating altitude		2000m
	Overvoltage category		III
	Degree of pollution		2
Mechanical data			
	Dimensions (HxDxW [mm])		SMX111 = 100x115x45 SMX111/2/D = 100x115x67,5
	Weight (g)		SMX111 = 310 SMX111/2/D = 410
	Mounting		To snap on top-hat rail
	Number of T-bus connectors		
		SMX111	2
		SMX111/2/D	3
	Min. terminal cross-section / AWG		0,2 mm ² / 24
	Max. terminal cross-section / AWG		2,5 mm ² / 12

(*) Maximal 2 Encoder / Axis


(**) pn/pp are configurable via SafePLC2

(***) Derating, see Chapter "Derating outputs"

1) Value applies only for extension module. For a total assessment in accordance with EN ISO 13849-1 one must use a series connection with the corresponding basic device

$$\Rightarrow PFH_{Logic} = PFH_{Basic} + PFH_{Extension}$$

3.2.3.2 Decentralised expansion module SMX111-2(/2/D)

<i>Type designation</i>	<i>Device design</i>
	<p>Design of module with the following periphery:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> 1 Expanded axis 5 Encoder interfaces (*) 14 Digital inputs 2 Pulse outputs 2 Relay outputs 2/4 pn- or pp- switching outputs 2 Auxiliary outputs 1 Diagnostic and configuration interface 1 Function button 1 7-segment display 1 status LED 14 status LEDs for inputs 2 status LEDs for pulse outputs 2 status LEDs for relay outputs 4 status LEDs for outputs 1 Optional: Communication interface (/D)

Characteristics of the module

- Can be used decentralised and central axis expansion
 - Decentralised: Communication with base module SMX100-x via communication interface (/D)
 - Central: Communication with base module SMX100-x via backplane bus
- Movement monitoring of one or two axes up to PI e EN ISO 13849-1 or SIL 3 acc. to IEC 61508
- Speed monitoring
- RPM-monitoring
- Standstill monitoring
- Sense of rotation monitoring
- Safe incremental dimension
- Emergency Stop monitoring
- Position monitoring
- Position range monitoring
- Trend range monitoring
- Target position monitoring
- Logic diagram oriented programming
- External contact monitoring of connected switchgear (EMU)
- Monitored relay outputs for safety relevant functions
- Switchable safe outputs pn-, pp-switching for safety-relevant functions
- Parameter management for expansion modules in base device
- Comprehensive diagnostics functions integrated
- Coded status display via front-side 7 segment display and status LEDs
- Assembly on top hat rail
- Extended functionality:

-
- allows the connection of 2 rotary encoders per axis (SSI, Sin/Cos, TTL, Proxi)
 - 2nd encoder interface also supports HTL (200 kHz), Sin/Cos High-Resolution and Resolver
 - The mechanical structure of SMX111-2(/2/D) differs from the figure.
(see: mechanical data)

Technical characteristic data SMX111-2(/2/D)

Safety related characteristic data				
	PI acc. to EN ISO 13849-1		PL e	
	PFH ¹⁾ / architecture		12,6 FIT /Cat 4	
	SIL acc. to IEC 61508		SIL 3	
	Proof test interval		20 years = max. operation period	
General data				
	Max. no. of expansion modules		-	
	Interface for expansion modules		Communication interface (/D) or T-bus connector, pluggable in top-hat rail	
	Number of safe digital inputs		14 (OSSD capable)	
	Number of safe digital outputs			
	pn-switching		2	
	Number of safe digital I/O		-	
	Number of relay outputs		2	
	Number of safe analogue inputs		-	
	Number of auxiliary outputs		2	
	Number of pulse outputs (clock outputs)		2	
	Type of connection		Plug-in terminals with spring or screw connection	
	Axis monitoring		1	
	Encoder interfaces (D-Sub / screw terminal)		2 / 3 *	
	Encoder technology (See table encoder specifications)		1. Encoder: SSI, SinCos, TTL, Proxi (10 kHz), 2. Encoder: HTL (200 kHz), SinCos (HiRes), Resolver	
	SMXGen2 (/2)			
	Number of safe digital outputs			
	pn-switching **		2	
	pp-switching **		4	
Electrical data				
	Supply voltage (tolerance)		24 VDC; 3,15A (-15%, +20%)	
	Fuse X11.1		min. 30 VDC; max. 3,15A	
	Max. power consumption (logic)		2,4W	
	Rated data digital inputs		24 VDC; 20mA, Typ1 acc. to EN 61131-2	
	Rated data digital outputs			
	pn-switching		24 VDC; 250mA	
	Auxiliary outputs		24 VDC; 250mA	
	Pulse outputs (clock outputs)		24 VDC; 250mA	
	Rated data relays	Normally open DC13 AC15	24 VDC; 2A 230 VAC; 2A	
	Rated data analogue inputs			
	SMXGen2 (/2)			
	Supply voltage (tolerance)		24 VDC; 2A (-15%, +20%)	
	Fuse X11.1		min. 30 VDC; max. 3,15A	
	Fuse X11.2		min. 30 VDC; max. 10A	
	Max. power consumption (logic)		5,2W	
	Rated data digital outputs			
	pn-switching		24 VDC; 2A ***	
	pp-switching		24 VDC; 2A ***	
Electrical data (For UL only) SMXGen2 (/2)				
	Rated data digital outputs			
	pn-switching	Temperature rating 30°C	24 VDC; 2A (G.P.)	
		Temperature rating 50°C	24 VDC; 1,8A (G.P.)	
		pp-switching	Temperature rating 30°C	24 VDC; 2A (G.P.)
			Temperature rating 50°C	24 VDC; 1,8A (G.P.)
	Max. total current (pn or pp)		8A	
	Auxiliary outputs		24VDC; 250mA (G.P.)	
	Rated data relays	Normally open	24 VDC; 2A (Pilot Duty) 120 VAC; 2A (Pilot Duty)	
Environmental data				
	Temperature		0°C ... +50°C operation -25°C ... +70°C storage and transport	
	Class of protection		IP 20	

	Climatic category	3k3 acc. to DIN 60 721-3		
	Min-, Maximum relative humidity (no condensation)	5% - 85%		
	EMC	EN 61000-6-2, EN 61000-6-4, EN 61000-6-7, EN 61800-3, EN 61326-3, EN 62061		
	Operating altitude	2000m		
	Overvoltage category	III		
	Degree of pollution	2		
Mechanical data				
	Dimensions (HxDxW [mm])	SMX111-2	= 100x115x67,5	
		SMX111-2/2/D	= 100x115x90	
	Weight (g)	SMX111-2	= 390	
		SMX111-2/2/D	= 490	
	Mounting	To snap on top-hat rail		
	Number of T-bus connectors			
		SMX111-2	3	
	SMX111-2/2/D	4		
	Min. terminal cross-section / AWG	0,2 mm ² / 24		
	Max. terminal cross-section / AWG	2,5 mm ² / 12		

(*) maximal 2 Encoder / Axis


(**) pn/pp are configurable via SafePLC2

(***) Derating, see Chapter "Derating outputs"

¹⁾ Value applies only for extension module. For a total assessment in accordance with EN ISO 13849-1 one must use a series connection with the corresponding basic device

$$\Rightarrow PFH_{Logic} = PFH_{Basic} + PFH_{Extension}$$

3.2.3.3 Decentralised expansion module SMX112/112A(/2/D)

<i>Type designation</i>	<i>Device design</i>
	<p>Design of module with the following periphery:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> 2 Axes 4 Encoder interfaces (*) 14 Digital inputs 2 Analogue inputs (Variant A) 2 Pulse outputs 2 Relay outputs 2/4 pn- or pp- switching outputs 2 Auxiliary outputs 1 Diagnostic and configuration interface 1 Function button 1 7-segment display 1 status LED 14 status LEDs for inputs 2 status LEDs for pulse outputs 2 status LEDs for relay outputs 4 status LEDs for outputs 1 Optional: Communication interface (/D)

Characteristics of the module:

- Can be used decentralised and central axis expansion
 - Decentralised: Communication with base module SMX100-x via communication interface (/D)
 - Central: Communication with base module SMX100-x via backplane bus
- Movement monitoring of one or two axes up to PI e EN ISO 13849-1 or SIL 3 acc. to IEC 61508
- Speed monitoring
- RPM-monitoring
- Standstill monitoring
- Sense of rotation monitoring
- Safe incremental dimension
- Emergency Stop monitoring
- Position monitoring
- Position range monitoring
- Trend range monitoring
- Target position monitoring
- Logic diagram oriented programming
- External contact monitoring of connected switchgear (EMU)
- Monitored relay outputs for safety relevant functions
- Switchable safe outputs pn-, pp-switching for safety-relevant functions
- Parameter management for expansion modules in base device
- Comprehensive diagnostics functions integrated
- Coded status display via front-side 7 segment display and status LEDs
- Assembly on top hat rail
- SMX112A(/2/D) – Variant A (analogue)– with 2 analogue inputs

-
- The mechanical structure of SMX112/112A(/2/D) differs from the figure.
(See mechanical data)

Technical characteristic data SMX112/112A(/2/D)

Safety related characteristic data			
	PI acc. to EN ISO 13849-1	PL e	
	PFH ¹⁾ / Architecture	12,6 FIT /Cat 4	
	SIL acc. to IEC 61508	SIL 3	
	Proof test interval	20 years = max. operation period	
General data			
	Max. no. of expansion modules	-	
	Interface for expansion modules	Communication interface (/D) or T-bus connector, pluggable in top-hat rail	
	Number of safe digital inputs	14 (OSSD capable)	
	Number of safe digital outputs		
	pn-switching	2	
	Number of safe digital I/O	-	
	Number of relay outputs	2	
	Number of safe analogue inputs	-	
	SMX112A/x	2 ****	
	Number of auxiliary outputs	2	
	Number of pulse outputs (clock outputs)	2	
	Type of connection	Plug-in terminals with spring or screw connection	
	Axis monitoring	2	
	Encoder interfaces (D-Sub / screw terminal)	2 / 2 *	
	Encoder technology (See table encoder specifications)	1. Encoder: SSI, SinCos, TTL, Proxi 2. Encoder: HTL (200 kHz), SinCos (HiRes), Resolver	
	SMXGen2 (/2)		
	Number of safe digital outputs		
	pn-switching **	2	
	pp-switching **	4	
Electrical data			
	Supply voltage (tolerance)	24 VDC; 3,15A (-15%, +20%)	
	Fuse X11.1	min. 30 VDC; max. 3,15A	
	Max. power consumption (logic)	2,4W	
	Rated data digital inputs	24 VDC; 20mA, Typ1 acc. to EN 61131-2	
	Rated data digital outputs		
	pn-switching	24 VDC; 250mA	
	Auxiliary outputs	24 VDC; 250mA	
	Pulse outputs (clock outputs)	24 VDC; 250mA	
	Rated data relays	Normally open DC13 AC15	24 VDC; 2A 230 VAC; 2A
	Rated data analogue inputs	-	
	SMX112A/x ****	-7 ... +10V 4 ... 20mA	
	SMXGen2 (/2)		
	Supply voltage (tolerance)	24 VDC; 2A (-15%, +20%)	
	Fuse X11.1 X11.2	min. 30 VDC; max. 3,15A min. 30 VDC; max. 10A	
	Max. power consumption (logic)	4,7W	
	Rated data digital outputs		
	pn-switching	24 VDC; 2A ***	
	pp-switching	24 VDC; 2A ***	
Electrical data (For UL only) SMXGen2 (/2)			
	Rated data digital outputs		
	pn-switching	Temperature rating 30°C	24 VDC; 2A (G.P.)
		Temperature rating 50°C	24 VDC; 1,8A (G.P.)
	pp-switching	Temperature rating 30°C	24 VDC; 2A (G.P.)
		Temperature rating 50°C	24 VDC; 1,8A (G.P.)
	Max. total current (pn or pp)	8A	
	Auxiliary outputs	24VDC; 250mA (G.P.)	
	Rated data relays	Normally open	24 VDC; 2A (Pilot Duty) 120 VAC; 2A (Pilot Duty)

Environmental data			
	Temperature	0°C ... +50°C operation -25°C ... +70°C storage and transport	
	Class of protection	IP 20	
	Climatic category	3k3 acc. to DIN 60 721-3	
	Min-, Maximum relative humidity (no condensation)	5% - 85%	
	EMC	EN 61000-6-2, EN 61000-6-4, EN 61000-6-7, EN 61800-3, EN 61326-3, EN 62061	
	Operating altitude	2000m	
	Overvoltage category	III	
Mechanical data			
	Dimensions (HxDxW [mm])	SMX112/112A	= 100x115x67,5
		SMX112/112A(/2/D)	= 100x115x90
	Weight (g)	SMX112/112A	= 390
		SMX112/112A(/2/D)	= 490
	Mounting	To snap on top-hat rail	
	Number of T-bus connectors		
		SMX112/112A	3
		SMX112/112A(/2/D)	4
	Min. terminal cross-section / AWG		0,2 mm ² / 24
	Max. terminal cross-section / AWG		2,5 mm ² / 12

(*) maximal 2 Encoder / Axis

(**) pn/pp are configurable via SafePLC2


(***) Derating, see Chapter "Derating outputs"

(****) with analogue current or voltage inputs

¹⁾ Value applies only for extension module. For a total assessment in accordance with EN ISO 13849-1 one must use a series connection with the corresponding basic device

$$\Rightarrow PFH_{Logic} = PFH_{Basic} + PFH_{Extension}$$

3.2.3.4 Decentralised expansion module SMX112–2/112-2A(/2/D)

<i>Type designation</i>	<i>Device design</i>
	<p>Design of module with the following periphery:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> 2 expanded axes 8 Encoder interfaces (*) 14 Digital inputs 2 Analogue inputs (Variant A) 2 Pulse outputs 2 Relay outputs 2/4 pn- or pp- switching outputs 2 Auxiliary outputs 1 diagnostic and configuration interface 1 Function button 1 7-segment display 1 status LED 14 status LEDs for inputs 2 status LEDs for pulse outputs 2 status LEDs for relay outputs 4 status LEDs for outputs 1 Optional: Communication interface (/D)

Characteristics of the module:

- Can be used decentralised and central axis expansion
 - Decentralised: Communication with base module SMX100-x via communication interface (/D)
 - Central: Communication with base module SMX100-x via backplane bus
- Movement monitoring of one or two axes up to PI e EN ISO 13849-1 or SIL 3 acc. to IEC 61508
- Speed monitoring
- RPM-monitoring
- Standstill monitoring
- Sense of rotation monitoring
- Safe incremental dimension
- Emergency Stop monitoring
- Position monitoring
- Position range monitoring
- Trend range monitoring
- Target position monitoring
- Logic diagram oriented programming
- External contact monitoring of connected switchgear (EMU)
- Monitored relay outputs for safety relevant functions
- Switchable safe outputs pn-, pp-switching for safety-relevant functions
- Parameter management for expansion modules in base device
- Comprehensive diagnostics functions integrated
- Coded status display via front-side 7 segment display and status LEDs

-
- Assembly on top hat rail
 - Extended functionality:
 - allows the connection of 2 rotary encoders per axis (SSI, Sin/Cos, TTL, Proxi)
 - 2nd encoder interface also supports HTL (200 kHz), Sin/Cos High-Resolution and Resolver
 - SMX112-2A(/2, /D) – Variant A (analogue) – 2 analogue inputs
 - The mechanical structure of SMX112-2/112-2A(/2, /D) differs from the figure.

Technical characteristic data SMX112-2/112-2A(/2/D)

Safety related characteristic data			
	PI acc. to EN ISO 13849-1		PL e
	PFH ¹⁾ / architecture		12,6 FIT /Cat 4
	SIL acc. to IEC 61508		SIL 3
	Proof test interval		20 years = max. operation period
General data			
	Max. no. of expansion modules		-
	Interface for expansion modules		Communication interface (/D) or T-bus connector, pluggable in top-hat rail
	Number of safe digital inputs		14 (OSSD capable)
	Number of safe digital outputs		
	pn-switching		2
	Number of safe digital I/O		-
	Number of relay outputs		2
	Number of safe analogue inputs		-
	SMX112-2A/x		2 ****
	Number of auxiliary outputs		2
	Number of pulse outputs (clock outputs)		2
	Type of connection		Plug-in terminals with spring or screw connection
	Axis monitoring		2
	Encoder interfaces (D-Sub / screw terminal)		4 / 4 *
	Encoder technology (See table encoder specifications)		1. Encoder: SSI, SinCos, TTL, Proxi (10 kHz), 2. Encoder: HTL (200 kHz), SinCos (HiRes), Resolver
	SMXGen2 (/2)		
	Number of safe digital outputs		
	pn-switching **		2
	pp-switching **		4
Electrical data			
	Supply voltage (tolerance)		24 VDC; 3,15A (-15%, +20%)
	Fuse	X11.1	min. 30 VDC; max. 3,15A
	Max. power consumption (logic)		2,4W
	Rated data digital inputs		24 VDC; 20mA, Typ1 acc. to EN 61131-2
	Rated data digital outputs		
	pn-switching		24 VDC; 250mA
	Auxiliary outputs		24 VDC; 250mA
	Pulse outputs (clock outputs)		24 VDC; 250mA
	Rated data relays	Normally open DC13 AC15	24 VDC; 2A 230 VAC; 2A
	Rated data analogue inputs		-
	SMX112-2A/x ****		-7 ... +10V 4 ... 20mA
	SMXGen2 (/2)		
	Supply voltage (tolerance)		24 VDC; 2A (-15%, +20%)
	Fuse	X11.1 X11.2	min. 30 VDC; max. 3,15A min. 30 VDC; max. 10A
	Max. power consumption (logic)		5,4W
	Rated data digital outputs		
	pn-switching		24 VDC; 2A ***
	pp-switching		24 VDC; 2A ***
Electrical data (For UL only) SMXGen2 (/2)			
	Rated data digital outputs		
	pn-switching	Temperature rating 30°C	24 VDC; 2A (G.P.)
		Temperature rating 50°C	24 VDC; 1,8A (G.P.)
	pp-switching	Temperature rating 30°C	24 VDC; 2A (G.P.)
		Temperature rating 50°C	24 VDC; 1,8A (G.P.)
	Max. total current (pn or pp)		8A
	Auxiliary outputs		24 VDC; 250mA (G.P.)
	Rated data relays	Normally open	24 VDC; 2A (Pilot Duty) 120 VAC; 2A (Pilot Duty)
Environmental data			
	Temperature		0°C ... +50°C operation

		-25C° ... +70C° storage and transport
	Class of protection	IP 20
	Climatic category	3k3 acc. to DIN 60 721-3
	Min-, Maximum relative humidity (no condensation)	5% - 85%
	EMC	EN 61000-6-2, EN 61000-6-4, EN 61000-6-7, EN 61800-3, EN 61326-3, EN 62061
	Operating altitude	2000m
	Overvoltage category	III
	Degree of pollution	2
Mechanical data		
	Dimensions (HxDxW [mm])	SMX112-2/112-2A = 100x115x112,5 SMX112-2/112-2A(/2/D) = 100x115x135
	Weight (g)	SMX112-2/112-2A = 520 SMX112-2/112-2A(/2/D) = 620
	Mounting	To snap on top-hat rail
	Number of T-bus connectors	
		SMX112-2/112-2A = 5
		SMX112-2/112-2A(/2/D) = 6
	Min. terminal cross-section / AWG	0,2 mm ² / 24
	Max. terminal cross-section / AWG	2,5 mm ² / 12

(*) maximal 2 Encoder / Axis

(**) pn/pp are configurable via SafePLC2

(***) Derating, see Chapter "Derating outputs"

(****) Analogue electricity, voltage inputs are available as options

z.B.: SMX12-2A-U (/2) Voltage inputs

SMX12-2A-I (/2) Electricity inputs

SMX12-2A Voltage and electricity inputs

1) Value applies only for extension module. For a total assessment in accordance with EN ISO 13849-1 one must use a series connection with the corresponding basic device

=> $PFH_{Logic} = PFH_{Basic} + PFH_{Extension}$

3.2.3.5 Decentralised expansion module SMX132-0(R)/2/D / 132-1(R)/2/D

<i>Type designation</i>	<i>Device design</i>
	<p>Design of module with the following periphery:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> 14 Digital inputs 0/10 Digital I/Os 2 Pulse outputs 2/6 Relay outputs 2/4 pn- or pp- switching outputs 2/4 Auxiliary outputs 1 7-segment display 1 status-LED 14 status LEDs for inputs 2 status-LEDs for relay outputs 10 status-LEDs für I/O's 4 status-LEDs for outputs 1 Optional: Communication interface (/D)

Characteristics of the module:

- Can be used decentralised and central axis expansion
 - Decentralised: Communication with base module SMX100-x via communication interface (/D)
 - Central: Communication with base module SMX100-x via backplane bus
- Logic diagram oriented programming
- External contact monitoring of connected switchgear (EMU)
- Comprehensive diagnostics functions integrated
- Assembly on top hat rail
- SMX132-1/2/D: 10 safe I/O - can be configured as inputs or outputs
- The mechanical structure of SMX132-1/D differs from the figure.
(See mechanical data)

Technical characteristic data SMX132-0(R)/2/D / 132-1(R)/2/D

Safety related characteristic data			
PI acc. to EN ISO 13849-1		PL e	
PFH ¹⁾ / Architecture		9,2 FIT/Cat 4 Plus in SMX132-xR/2/D 1-kanalig pro Rel 20 FIT (max. 8) 2-kanalig pro Rel 1,0 FIT (max. 4)	
SIL acc. to IEC 61508		SIL 3	
Proof test interval		20 years = max. operation period	
General data			
Max. no. of expansion modules		-	
Interface for expansion modules		Communication interface (/D) or T-bus connector, pluggable in top-hat rail	
Number of safe digital inputs		12 (OSSD capable)	
Number of safe digital outputs			
pn-, pp-switching	SMX132-x/2/D	2/4	
	SMX132-xR/2/D	-	
Number of safe digital I/O			
	SMX132-0x/2/D	-	
	SMX132-1x/2/D	10	
Number of relay outputs			
	SMX132-x/2/D	2	
	SMX132-xR/2/D	6	
Number of safe analogue inputs		-	
Number of auxiliary outputs			
	SMX132-0x/2/D	2	
	SMX132-1x/2/D	4	
Number of pulse outputs (clock outputs)		2	
Type of connection		Plug-in terminals with spring or screw connection	
Axis monitoring		-	
Encoder interfaces (D-Sub / screw terminal)		-	
Encoder technology (See table encoder specifications)		-	
SMXGen2 (/2)			
Number of safe digital outputs			
	pn-switching **	2	
	pp-switching **	4	
Electrical data			
Supply voltage (tolerance)		24 VDC; 2A (-15%, +20%)	
Fuse	X11.1	min. 30 VDC; max. 3,15A	
	X11.2	min. 30 VDC; max. 10A	
Max. power consumption (logic)			
	SMX132-0x/2/D	4,2W	
	SMX132-1x/2/D	5,2W	
Rated data digital inputs		24 VDC; 20mA, Typ1 acc. to EN 61131-2	
Rated data digital outputs			
	pn-switching	24 VDC; 2A	
	pp-switching	24 VDC; 2A	
	Digital I/O	01 – 05	24 VDC; 0,5A
		06 – 10	24 VDC; 2A ***
	Auxiliary outputs	24 VDC; 250mA	
Rated data relays	Pulse outputs (clock outputs)	24 VDC; 250mA	
	Normally open	DC13	24 VDC; 2A
		AC15	230 VAC; 2A
Normally closed (Read back contact)	DC13	24 VDC; 2A	
Rated data analogue inputs		-	
Electrical data (For UL only) SMXGen2 (/2)			
Rated data digital outputs			
	pn-switching	Temperature rating 30°C	24 VDC; 2A (G.P.)
		Temperature rating 50°C	24 VDC; 1,8A (G.P.)
	pp-switching	Temperature rating 30°C	24 VDC; 2A (G.P.)
		Temperature rating 50°C	24 VDC; 1,8A (G.P.)

		Max. total current (pn or pp)	8A		
		Auxiliary outputs	24 VDC; 250mA (G.P.)		
		Digital I/O	01 – 05	24 VDC; 0,5A (G.P.)	
			06 – 10	Temperature rating 30°C	24 VDC; 2A (G.P.)
				Temperature rating 50°C	24 VDC; 1,8A (G.P.)
			Max. total current (I/O)	10A	
Rated data relays	Normally open	24 VDC; 2A (Pilot Duty) 120 VAC; 2A (Pilot Duty)			
	Normally closed (Read back contact)	24 VDC; 2A (Pilot Duty)			
Environmental data					
	Temperature	0°C ... +50°C operation -25°C ... +70°C storage and transport			
	Class of protection	IP 20			
	Climatic category	3k3 acc. to DIN 60 721-3			
	Min-, Maximum relative humidity (no condensation)	5% - 85%			
	EMC	EN 61000-6-2, EN 61000-6-4, EN 61000-6-7, EN 61800-3, EN 61326-3, EN 62061			
	Operating altitude	2000m			
	Overvoltage category	III			
	Degree of pollution	2			
Mechanical data					
	Dimensions (HxDxW [mm])	SMX132-0/2/D	= 100x115x67,5		
		SMX132-1/2/D	= 100x115x90		
		SMX132-0/R/2/D	= 100x115x90		
		SMX132-1/R/2/D	= 100x115x112,5		
	Weight (g)	SMX132-0/2/D	= 400		
		SMX132-1/2/D	= 520		
		SMX132-0/R/2/D	= 500		
		SMX132-1/R/2/D	= 600		
	Mounting	To snap on top-hat rail			
	Number of T-bus connectors				
	SMX132-0/2/D	3			
	SMX132-1/2/D	4			
	SMX132-0/R/2/D	4			
	SMX132-1/R/2/D	5			
	Min. terminal cross-section / AWG	0,2 mm ² / 24			
	Max. terminal cross-section / AWG	2,5 mm ² / 12			

(**) pn/pp are configurable via SafePLC2


(***) Derating, see Chapter „Derating outputs“

1) Value applies only for extension module. For a total assessment in accordance with EN ISO 13849-1 one must use a series connection with the corresponding basic device

=> $PFH_{Logic} = PFH_{Basic} + PFH_{Extension}$

3.2.4 Communication interface

3.2.4.1 SMX5x

<i>Type designation</i>	<i>Device design</i>
	<p>Designs of the module with following peripherals:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> 1 SMX51 CAN 2.0 or SMX52 PROFIBUS or SMX53 PROFINET or SMX54 CANopen or SMX55 EtherCAT or SMX57 DeviceNet 1 backplane bus interface 1 status LED for operating status 1 status LED CAN-communication

Characteristics of the module:

- Communication modules CAN or PROFIBUS or PROFINET or CANopen or EtherCAT or DeviceNet
- 2 x 8 Byte process output image PAA with free allocation
- 32 Bit process output image PAE
- You can take detailed information from the installation manuals of the respective field bus modules.

This must be specified when ordering a base module!!

Technical characteristic data: SMX5x

Safety related characteristic data	
PI acc. to EN ISO 13849-1	n.a.
PFH / architecture	n.a.
SIL acc. to IEC 61508	n.a.
Proof test interval	n.a.
General data	
Fieldbus interface	1
Type of connection	Standard acc. to field bus type
Max. size PAA	2x64 Bit
Max. size PAE	32 Bit
Type Update time for data	16 ms
Electrical data	
Power consumption	Max. 0,5W
Field bus ratings	Standard acc. to field bus type
Environmental data	
Temperature	0°C ... +50°C operation -25°C ... +70°C storage and transport
Class of protection	IP 20
Climatic category	3k3 acc. to DIN 60 721-3
Min-, Maximum relative humidity (no condensation)	5% - 85%
EMC	EN 61000-6-2, EN 61000-6-4, EN 61000-6-7, EN 61800-3, EN 61326-3, EN 62061
Operating materials	2000m
Overvoltage category	III
Degree of contamination	2
Mechanical data	
Dimensions (HxDxW [mm])	100x115x22,5
Weight (g)	110
Fastening	To snap on top-hat rail

3.2.4.2 SMX4x

<i>Type designation</i>	<i>Device design</i>
SMX43 SMX45	Designs of the module with following peripherals: 1 SMX43 PROFIsafe over PROFINET or SMX45 FSoE Fail Safe over EtherCAT 1 status LED for operating status 1 status LED internal SPI communication 1 status LED field bus

Characteristics of the module:

- Communication modules PROFIsafe over PROFINET or Fail Safe over EtherCAT
- You can take detailed information from the installation manuals of the respective field bus modules.

This must be specified when ordering a base module!!

Technical characteristic data: SMX4x

Safety related characteristic data	
PI acc. to EN ISO 13849-1	n.a.
PFH / architecture	n.a.
SIL acc. to IEC 61508	n.a.
Proof test interval	n.a.
General data	
Fieldbus interface	1
Type of connection	Standard acc. to field bus type
Max. size PAA (standard)	2x64 Bit
Max. size PAE (standard)	32 Bit
Max. size PAA PAE (safe)	12 Byte
Type Update time for data	16 ms
Electrical data	
Power consumption	Max. 0,5W
Field bus ratings	standard acc. to field bus type
Environmental data	
Temperature	0°C ... +50°C operation -25°C ... +70°C storage and transport
Class of protection	IP 20
Climatic category	3k3 acc. to DIN 60 721-3
Min-, Maximum relative humidity (no condensation)	5% - 85%
EMC	EN 61000-6-2, EN 61000-6-4, EN 61000-6-7, EN 61800-3, EN 61326-3, EN 62061
Operating altitude	2000m
Overvoltage category	III
Degree of pollution	2
Mechanical data	
Dimensions (HxDxW [mm])	100x115x22,5
Weight (g)	110
Mounting	To snap on top-hat rail

3.2.4.3 Optional universal communication interface

Specification	Device design
/D	Decentralised SDDC and SMMC interface (2x RJ 45) Communication interface for decentralized slave and master modules
/xN	Field bus interface (2x RJ 45) Standard and safe fieldbus
/xB	Field bus interface (Sub-D) Standard and safe fieldbus
/xxM	MemoryCard (Mini SD) Storage medium for safety program

Properties of the universal communication interface:

- Optional specification of the SMX series communication interface
- Subsequent expansion capability of standard to safe field bus via additional Mini SD card on the back side of the module is possible. (/xNx and /xBx)
- Different specifications can be combined. See „combination options“.
- You can take detailed information from the installation manuals of the respective field bus modules.

3.2.4.3.1 Combination options

		Specifications						
		/D	/DxM	/DNM	/xNM	/xxM	/DBM	/xBM
Module type	SMX100-1/2	x	x	x	x	x	x	x
	SMX100-2/2	x	x	x	x	x	x	x
	SMX100-4/2	x	x	x	x	x	x	x
	SMX111/2	x						
	SMX111-2/2	x						
	SMX112/2	x						
	SMX112A/2	x						
	SMX112-2/2	x						
	SMX112-2A/2	x						
	SMX131/2							
	SMX131R/2							
	SMX131R-4/2							
	SMX132-0/2	x						
	SMX132-1/2	x						
	SMX132-0R/2	x						
SMX132-1R/2	x							

Technical characteristic data: Optional universal communication interface

Safety related characteristic data		
	PI acc. to EN ISO 13849-1	n.a.
	PFH / architecture	n.a.
	SIL acc. to IEC 61508	n.a.
	Proof test interval	n.a.
General data		
	Decentralised communication interfaces	
	/D	2x RJ 45*
	Field bus interfaces	
	/xN	2x RJ 45**
	/xB	1x Sub-D***
	MemoryCard (safety program)	
	/xxM	1x Mini SD (front side)
	MemoryCard (License for safe field bus)	
	/xNx /xBx	1x Mini SD (rear side)
	SD bus	Phoenix plug
	status LED's	4
	Field bus address rotary switch	
	/xBx	2
Electrical data		
	Max. power consumption (Logic)	3,5W
Environmental data		
	Temperature	0°C ... +50°C operation -25°C ... +70°C storage and transport
	Class of protection	IP 20
	Climatic category	3k3 acc. to DIN 60 721-3
	Min-, Maximum relative humidity (no condensation)	5% - 85%
	EMC	EN 61000-6-2, EN 61000-6-4, EN 61000-6-7, EN 61800-3, EN 61326-3, EN 62061
	Operating altitude	2000m
	Overvoltage category	III
	Degree of pollution	2
Mechanical data		
	Dimensions (HxDxW [mm])	100x115x22,5
	Weight (g)	110
	Mounting	To snap on top-hat rail
	Number of T-bus	1
	Min. terminal cross-section / AWG	0,2 mm ² / 24
	Max. terminat cross-section / AWG	2,5 mm ² / 12

(*) Optional for SDDC or SMMC

(**) Available field buses PROFINET (PROFISAFE), EtherCAT (FSoE), EtherNet/IP and Modbus/TCP

(***) Available field buses PROFIBUS (PROFISAFE)

For available fieldbuses see „HB-37450-810-01-xxF-DE COM Installation manual“

3.2.4.4 Encoder specifications

TTL		
	Physical Layer	RS-422 compatible
	Measuring signal A/B	Track with 90 degree phase difference
	Max. frequency of input cycles (X31, X32 / X33, X34)	250 kHz / 500 kHz
	Type of connection	D-SUB 9pol
Sin / Cos		
	Physical Layer	RS-422 compatible
	Measuring signal A/B	Track with 90 degree phase difference
	Standard mode	
	Max. frequency of input cycles (X31, X32 / X33, X34)	250 kHz / 500 kHz
	High Resolution Mode	
	Max. frequency of input cycles (X33, X34)	15 kHz
	Type of connection	D-SUB 9pol
SSI-Absolut		
	Data interface	Serial Synchronous Interface (SSI) (SSI) with variable data length of 12 – 28 Bit
	Data format	Binary, grey code
	Physical Layer	RS-422 compatible
	SSI-Master operation:	
	Clock rate	150 kHz
	SSI-Listener- operation (slave mode)	
	Clock rate (X31, X32 / X33, X34)	250 kHz / 350 kHz
	Min. clock pause time	150 µsec
	Max. clock pause time	1 msec
	Type of connection	D-SUB 9pole
Resolver		
	Measuring signal	Sin/Cos – track with 90° phase difference
	Signal frequency	max. 600 Hz (900Hz Deep pass)
	Input voltage	max. 8 Vss (an 16 kΩ)
	Resolution:	9 Bit / pole
	Supported pole number	2 - 16
	Reference frequency (Listener)	4 kHz – 16 kHz
	Reference frequency (Master)	8 kHz
	Reference amplitude	8 Vss – 28 Vss
	Reference signal form	Sinusoidal, triangle
	Transformation ratio	2:1; 3:1; 4:1
	Phase fault	max. 8°
	Type of connection (X33, X34)	D-SUB 9pole
HTL		
	Signal level	24V / 0V
	Physical Layer	PUSH / PULL
	Type of connection (X27, X28, X29, X30)	Plug-in terminals with spring or screw connection
Proxi		
	Signal level	24V / 0V
	Max. counting pulse frequency (switching logic debounced)	10 kHz
	Type of connection (X23)	Plug-in terminals with spring or screw connection
Proxi – Extended monitoring		
	Signal level	24V / 0V
	Max. counting pulse frequency (switching logic debounced)	10 kHz
	Physical Layer	PUSH / PULL
	Measuring signal A/B	Track with 90 degree phase difference
	Type of connection (X23)	Plug-in terminals with spring or screw connection

3.3 Derating outputs

Maximum current load based on temperature.

This derating should be considered for all 2A outputs (IO-Board and REL-Board)!

2A outputs can be fully loaded at an ambient temperature of **up to 30°C**.

From a ambient temperature from **30°C** to maximum **50°C**, the 2A outputs can be loaded to a maximum of **1.8A**. The maximum total current is **10A**.

3.4 Identification

The type plate is located on the left side wall of the module and contains the following information:

3.4.1 Type plate

- Type designation
- Part number
- Serial number
- Identification of hardware release
- Identification of software release
- Safety category
- Input characteristics
- Output characteristics
- Date of manufacture (week/year)

		Typ SMX 100.4		
03101003 000111				
HW-Release 		02/12		
07-06-06-06-06-02-07-00-00-00				
SW-Release 		Cat. 4 und Pl e nach EN ISO 13849-1 SIL3 nach IEC 61508/IEC 62061 EN 50178		
02-01-00-08				
		Supply U = 24 V DC +20%-15% I = 3A DC T = 0...50°C	Input Digital Input Type1/ EN61131-2 U = 24V DC I _{max} = 20mA	Output Safety Relay U = 24V DC I = 2A U = 230V AC I = 2A
D-92637 Weiden www.bbh-products.de		Digital Output I = 250mA Auxiliary Output I = 100mA		
Reaktionszeit siehe Installationshandbuch				

Type plate SMX100 (image enlarged)

3.4.2 Type plate SMXGen2 (/2)

The type plate is located on the left side wall of the module and contains the following information:

- Type designation
- Part number
- Serial number
- Identification of hardware release
- Identification of software release
- Safety category
- Input characteristics
- Output characteristics
- Date of manufacture (week/year)

	Date: 14/2017
Product No.: XXXX	Serial No.: 123456
	MAC: XX-XX-XX-XX-XX-XX
HW-Release: 11-10-10-10-10-11-07	FW-Rel.COM1: 01-05-01
FW-Release: 04-00-00-05	FW-Rel.COM2: 01-03-00
Type: SMX100-4/2/DNM	
NORM:	SIL 3: IEC 61508 / IEC 62061
	Cat. 4 / PL e: EN ISO 13849-1
Power:	A1.1 - A1.11: 24 VDC / -15%...+20% / 0...50°C
	A1.1 / 2 / 3+4 ... 9+10 / 11: 2 A / 9 A / 10 A / 0,25 A
INPUT:	I01...I14 (Digital): 24 VDC
OUTPUT:	Q1...Q4 (Digital): 24 VDC / 2 A
	IQx1...IQx5 (DIGITAL): 24 VDC / 0,5 A
	IQx6...IQx0 (DIGITAL): 24 VDC / 2 A
	Q5...Q6 (Relay): 240 VAC / 24 VDC / 2 A
	Y1...Y10 (Auxiliary): 24 VDC / 0,25 A
	Main supply: 24 V=, SELV/PELV;
LISTED XXXX IND. CONT. EQ.	Power consumption: 24 V= / 2 A; OUTPUTs (general use):
	- Digital: Q1-Q4 24 V= / 2 A, max. total current: 8 A;
	- Digital: IQx1-IQx5 24 V= / 0,5 A; x1-x0: max. total current 10A
	- Digital: IQx6-IQx0 24V= / 2 A;
	- Auxiliary: 24 V= / 250 mA;
	- Relay NO (pilot duty): 24 V= / 2 A; 120 V~ / 2 A
BBH Products GmbH, DE-92637 Weiden MADE IN GERMANY	
Böttgerstraße 40 www.bbh-products.de Read manual before installation!	

3.4.3 Scope of delivery

The scope of delivery contains:

SMX module:

- Plug for all signal terminals without encoder connection

Not included in the scope of delivery:

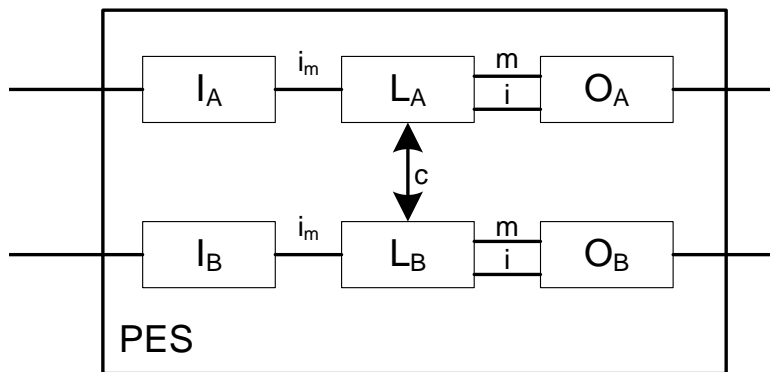
- SafePLC configuration software CD with
 - Installation manual
 - Programming manual
 - Driver for programming adapter
- Programming adapter SMX91
- License key (USB-Dongle) for SafePLC/SafePLC2
- System CD with manuals
- Backplane bus plug SX0000-9 (SMX12x; 11x; 13x)

4 Safety related characteristics

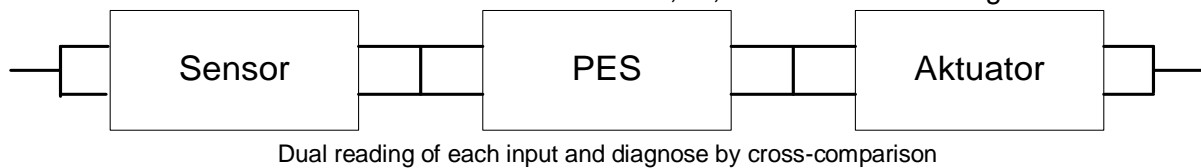
4.1 General design, safety related architecture and characteristic data

The inner structure of all modules of SMX100 series with the exception of communication interfaces consist of two separate channels with reciprocal comparison of results. High quality diagnoses for fault detection are made in each of the two channels.

With respect to architecture and function the internal structure corresponds with category 4 of EN 13849-1.



The overall architecture of base modules SMX100-1, -2, -4 show the following structure:

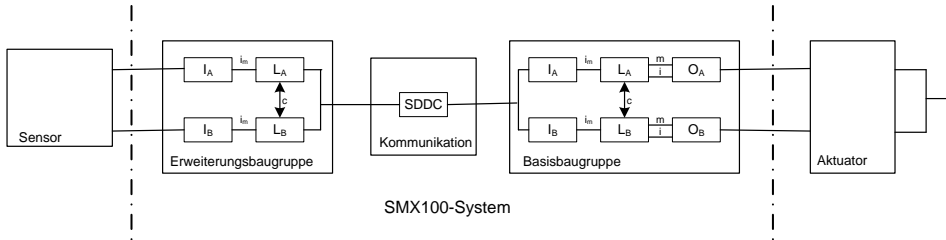


The specific safety related characteristic data of the corresponding module can be taken from the technical characteristic data in chapter 3.

There is a complex structure in conjunction with expansion modules. Even bus communication should be taken into consideration in addition to structures of expansion modules. Safety-relevant equivalent circuit diagram / architecture should be calculated with reference to application structure.

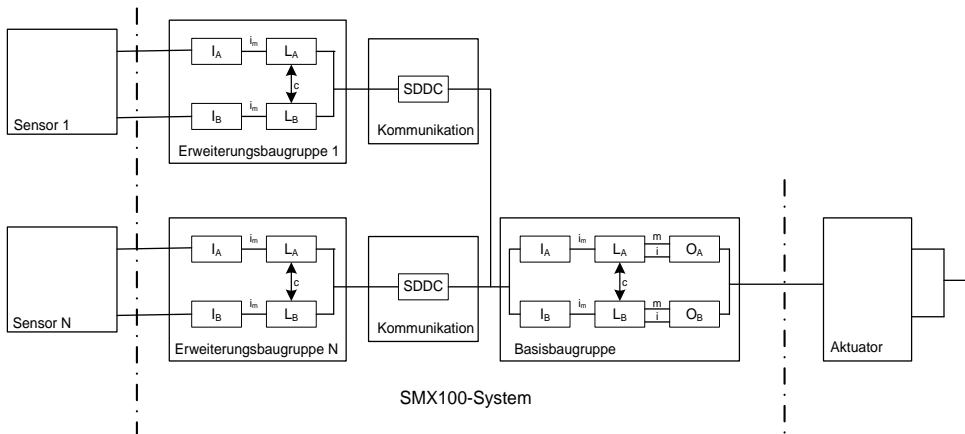
The following cases should be differentiated:

- a) Axis module with safety functions related to an axis or use of safe inputs at an expansion module and shut-off channel via outputs of the base module



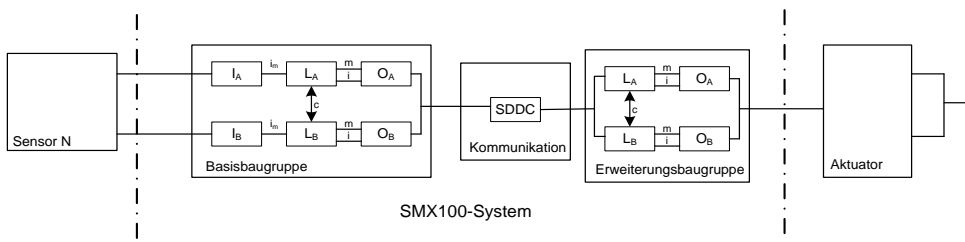
$$PFH_{SMX100} = PFH_{SMX100-X} + PFH_{SMX1XX_IN} + PFH_{SDDC}$$

- b) 1..N axis modules with safety function for cross-axis functionality (e.g. X-/Y zone protection) or use of safe inputs at multiple expansion modules with effect on an individual safety function and shut-off channel via outputs of the base module.



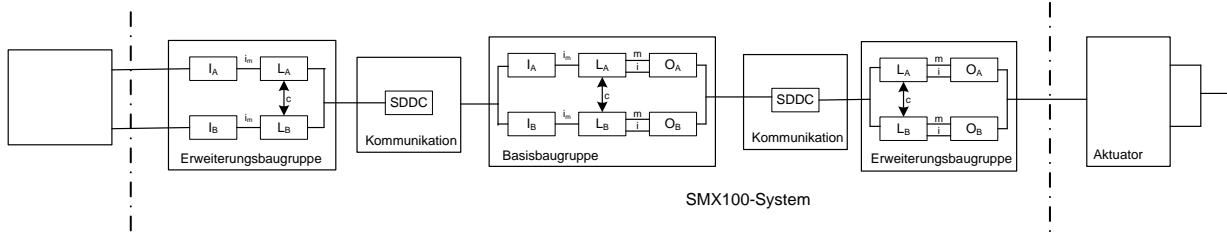
$$PFH_{SMX100} = PFH_{SMX100-X} + N * PFH_{SMX1XX_IN} + N * PFH_{SDDC}$$

- c) Inputs at the base module and shut-off channel via outputs of an expansion module



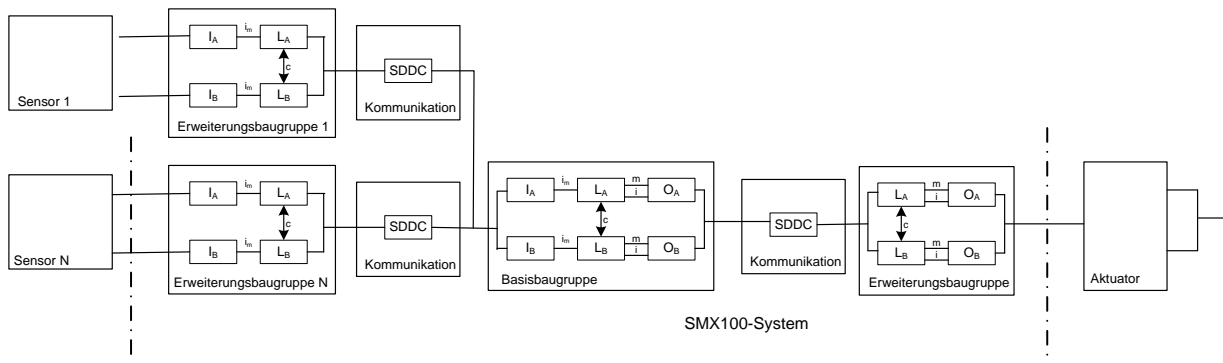
$$PFH_{SMX100} = PFH_{SMX100-X} + PFH_{SMX1XX_OUT} + PFH_{SDDC}$$

- d) Axis module with safety functions related to an axis or use of safe inputs at an expansion module and shut-off channel via outputs of an expansion module



$$PFH_{SMX100} = PFH_{SMX100-X} + PFH_{SMX1XX_IN} + PFH_{SMX1XX_OUT} + 2 * PFH_{SDDC}$$

- e) 1..N axis modules with safety function for cross-axis functionality (e.g. X-/Y zone protection) or use of safe inputs at multiple expansion modules with effect on an individual safety function and shut-off channel via outputs of an expansion module.



$$PFH_{SMX100} = PFH_{SMX100-X} + N * PFH_{SMX1XX_IN} + PFH_{SMX1XX_OUT} + (N+1) * PFH_{SDDC}$$

For the calculation of PFH_{SMX100} for SMX100-System, the parameter data specified in Chapter 3 should be used for the part systems $PFH_{SMX100-X}$, PFH_{SMX1XX_IN} , PFH_{SMX1XX_OUT} and PFH_{SDDC} .

Characteristic data:

Max. obtainable safety class	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • SIL 3 acc. to IEC 61508 • Category 4 acc. to EN ISO 13849-1 • Performance-Level e acc. to EN ISO 13849-1
System structure	System structure 2-channel with diagnose /1002) acc. to EN 61508 Architecture category 4 acc. to EN ISO 13849-1
Rating of operating mode	"high demand" acc. to EN 61508 (high demand rate)
Probability of an endangering failure per hour (PFH-value)	Application calculation for SMX100 system, specific values in accordance with table "technical parameters"
Proof test interval (IEC 61508)	20 years, after this time the module must be replaced

 **Safety note:**

- The specific safety related characteristic data of the corresponding module can be taken from the technical characteristic data in chapter 3.
- When using several sensors with different functions (e.g. position indicator access door + speed detection) for a safety function (e.g. safe reduced speed when access door is open), these must be assumed as being connected in series for the safety related assessment of the overall system. See also exemplary calculation in appendix.
- The safety regulations and EMC-directives must be strictly followed.
- Concerning the applicable fault exclusions please refer to the tables under D in the appendix of EN 13849-2.
- The characteristic data specified in chapter 3 for the partial system PES (e.g. PI e and PFH-value acc. to table as evidence acc. to EN ISO 13849-1) can be used for the safety related assessment of the overall system.

The following examples and their characteristic architecture are mainly responsible for the assignment to a category acc. to EN ISO 13849-1.

The maximum possible Performance Levels acc. to EN ISO 13849-1 resulting from this still depend on the following factors of the external components:

- Structure (simple or redundant)
- Detection of common cause faults (CCF)
- Degree of diagnostic coverage on request (DC_{avg})
- Mean time to dangerous failure of a channel ($MTTF_d$)

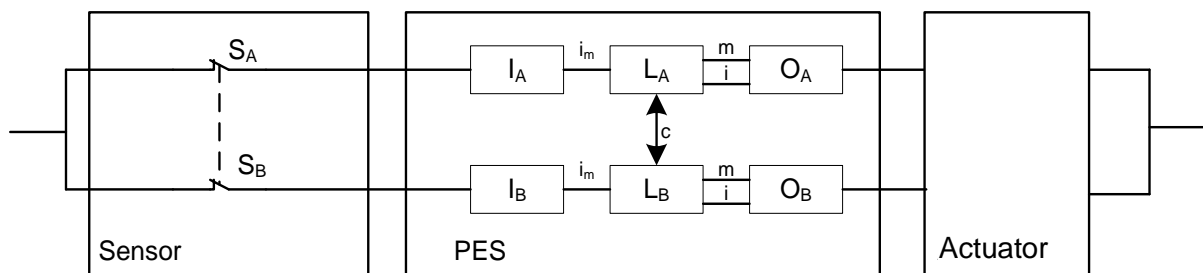
4.2 Safety related characteristic data and wiring for the connected sensors

The SMX modules have completely separated signal processing paths for each safety input. This applies for both the digital and the analog inputs. Furthermore, measures for achieving the highest possible DC-values have been implemented.

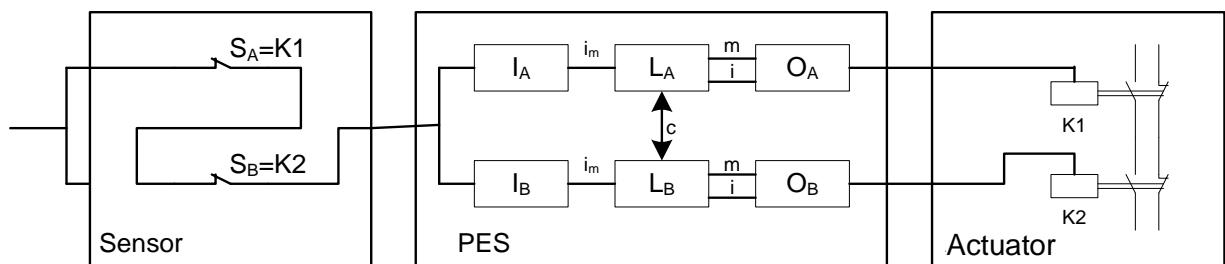
4.2.1 Digital sensors:

Digital inputs and outputs are generally of a completely redundant design, except the electro-magnetic input terminal. The following list contains details for classification, the DC and the achievable PI or SIL.

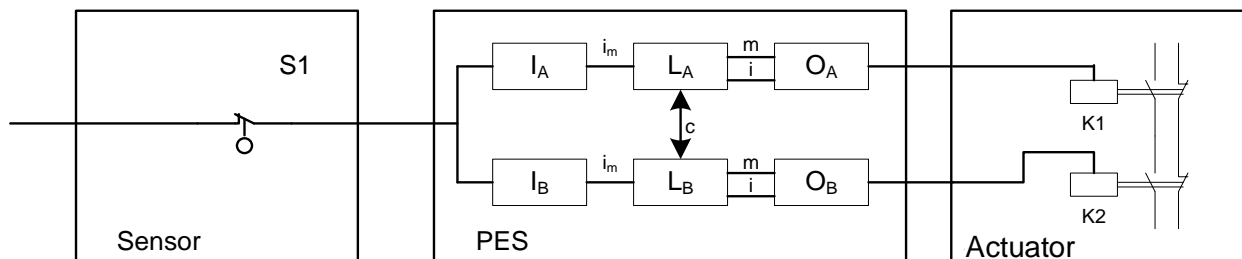
4.2.1.1 Characteristics of sensors / input elements



Two-channel input element in parallel connection (Cat. fault tolerance 1) with high DC caused by signal in two channels and diagnose by means of cross-comparison in the PES



Two-channel input element in series connection (Cat. 4, fault tolerance 1) with low to medium DC caused by signal processing in two channels and diagnose by means of cyclic testing



Single channel input element and dual channel processing with low to medium DC by signal processing in two channels and diagnose by means of cyclic testing, PI / SIL depending on permissible fault exclusions and test rate for input element.

4.2.1.2 DC digital sensors/inputs

The SMX100 modules ensure far reaching diagnostics functions for the input element. These are carried out permanently, or optionally (cross-shorting monitoring by means of pulse identifier, cross-comparison, 2- or multi-channel sensor with/without time-out, start-up test).

Permanently active diagnostics functions:

Cross-comparison:

SMX module inputs are in general internally designed with two channels. The status of input signals is permanently compared crosswise. Only with High signals in both partial input systems the input is considered a High input, should the signal level deviate between both channels, the input is set to Low state.

Dynamic test of the partial input system switching threshold:

The switching thresholds for detecting the High level are tested cyclically with a high cycle rate. Falling below the defined threshold value a module triggers a module alarm.

Dynamic test of the input system's switchability:

The switchability of the input system to Low level is tested for all inputs with a high rate, except I05 – I08. Falling below the defined threshold value a module triggers a module alarm.

Diagnostics functions to be activated by parameterization:

Cross-shorting test:

The SMX modules have pulse signal outputs, identified by an unambiguous signature. When performing the cross-shorting test the switching elements of the digital sensors / input elements are supplied with auxiliary voltage by the SMX-module via the pulse signal outputs. The signature is thus stamped on the High signal level of the sensors / input elements and checked by the SMX module. With the signature test short-circuits and cross-shorting to High signals can be recognized. With alternating use of the pulse signals of multi-contacts, parallel signal lines or adjacent terminal assignment, cross-shorting between the respective input elements is detected.

Sensors / input elements with 2- or multi-pole contacts without time-out.

Several contacts can be assigned to the sensors / input elements. These are therefore compatible with at least 2-channel elements. A High level of the sensor/input element requires a logic series connection of both contacts.

Example 1:

Input element with 2 normally closed contacts: High level when both contacts are closed.

Example 2:

Input element with 1 normally closed and 1 normally open contact: High level when normally open contact is actuated and normally closed contact is not actuated.

Sensors / input elements with 2- or multi-pole contacts with time-out.

Same test as before, but additional monitoring of the input signals for compliance with the defined level connections within a time window of 0.5 seconds. Defining the levels over a time period of > 0.5 seconds triggers a module alarm.

Start test:

Each time the safety module (=SMX module) is switched on, the input element must be tested in direction of the Low signal status (defined Safe State), e.g. by actuating the Emergency Stop button or a door lock after the system has been started.

Operational / organizational tests:

Apart from the previously mentioned diagnostic measures for the SMX modules, cyclic testing can be performed within the application. These tests can also be used when assessing the DC.

Note:

Operational/organizational tests can also be used for a combination of hardware inputs and functional inputs (input information transferred via standard field bus). However, an exclusive use of functional inputs is ruled out in this context (combination of two or more functional inputs).

The SMX modules therefore ensure far reaching diagnostics functions for the partial input system. These are performed permanently or optionally (cross-shortening monitoring by means of pulse identifier).

The following diagnoses for input sensors can generally be used for the safety related assessment of the entire system:

Input element characteristic	Parameterized / operational tests				DC	Definition of measure	Note
	Cross-shorting test	With time-out	Start test	Cyclic test during operation			
Single-channel			O	O	>60	Cyclic test pulse by dynamic change of input signals	A sufficiently high test rate must be ensured.
	X				90	Cyclic test pulse by dynamic change of input signals	Only effective if pulse assignment is active
	X		O	O	90-99	Cyclic test pulse by dynamic change of input signals	DC depending on frequency of start / cyclic test DC = 90 test only in > 4 week intervals DC = 99 test at least 1 x day / or 100-time request rate
Dual channel					90	Cross-comparison of input signals with dynamic test, if short-circuits cannot be detected (for multiple inputs/outputs)	For fault exclusion short-circuit up to DC=99 possible
			O	O	90-99	Cyclic test pulse by dynamic change of input signals	DC depending on frequency of start / cyclic test
	X				99	Cross-comparison of input signals with immediate and intermediate results in the logic (L) and temporal as well as logic program sequence monitoring and detection of static failures and short circuits (for multiple inputs/outputs).	Only effective if pulse assignment is active
		X			99	Plausibility test, e.g. use of normally open and normally closed contacts = non-equivalent signal comparison of input elements.	Only effective in connection with activated time-out function for input element

X: Diagnostic measure activated

O: min. 1 diagnostic measure activated

⚠ Safety note:

- The manufacturer's data (MTTFD, FIT-numbers, etc.) must be used for a safety related assessment of the partial system "Sensors".
- The DC-values listed in the table must be used conservatively and compliance with the boundary conditions (see table under „Remarks“) must be ensured.
- According to the applicable standards, fault exclusions are permitted. The boundary conditions mentioned in this context must permanently be met.
- If several sensor systems are required for the correct function of a single safety function, their partial values must be correctly merged by following the chosen method.

4.2.1.3 Classification of digital inputs

4.2.1.3.1 Digital inputs I01 ... I14

Digital inputs	Achievable performance level	Comment
I01 ... I04 I09 ... I14	PL e	Suitable for any kind of input elements, with / without pulse, achievable PI depending on the MTTFd of the input element, as well as fault exclusions in the external wiring.
I05 ... I08	PL e	Single-channel with pulse: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> - Mainly High level required ($T_{High} > 100 * T_{Low}$) - At least one request/day required by application - Fault detection upon request
	PL d	Single-channel without pulse: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> - Fault exclusion short-circuit between signals and to VCC - Fault detection upon request
	PL e	Dual channel: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> - At least one request/day required by application - Fault detection upon request

4.2.1.3.2 Digital inputs I/O's (IQIx)

Digital inputs	Achievable performance level	Comment
IQIx		Without pulse, single channel static signal -> auxiliary input
	PL e	Without pulse, dual channel static signal - At least one request/day required by application - Fault detection only upon request
	PL d	Without pulse, dual channel static signal - Less than one request/day required by application
	PL e	Single-channel with pulse - Mainly High level required ($T_{High} > 100 * T_{Low}$) - At least one request/day required by application - Fault detection only upon request
	PL d	Single-channel with pulse - Less than one request/day
	PL e	Dual channel with pulse1 and pulse2

Note:

The achievable PI for a combination of HW-inputs and functional inputs depends on the chosen operational/organizational tests as well as on the independence of both channels in the system structure. The determination of the PI requires an application related analysis.

4.2.1.4 Exemplary connections of digital sensors

4.2.1.4.1 Single-channel sensor, without cross-shorting test

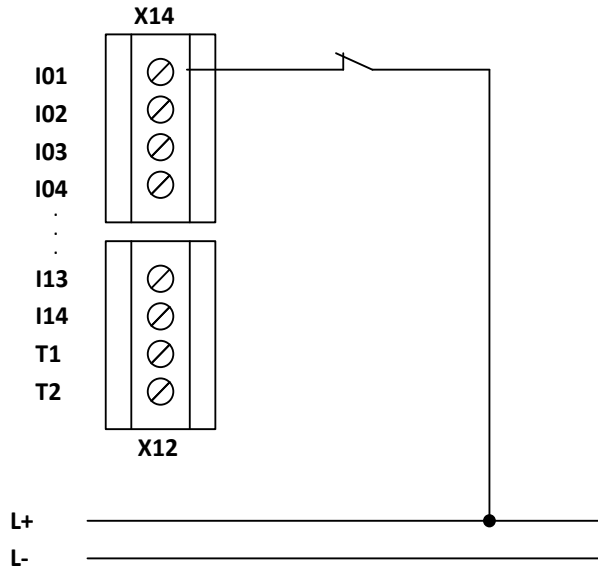


Fig.: Single-channel sensor, without cross-shorting test

The single-channel sensor is connected to the SMX100 without clocking or without cross-shorting test. This design is not recommended for safety applications. PI b acc. to EN ISO 13849-1 can maximally be reached.

4.2.1.4.2 Single-channel sensor with cross-shorting test

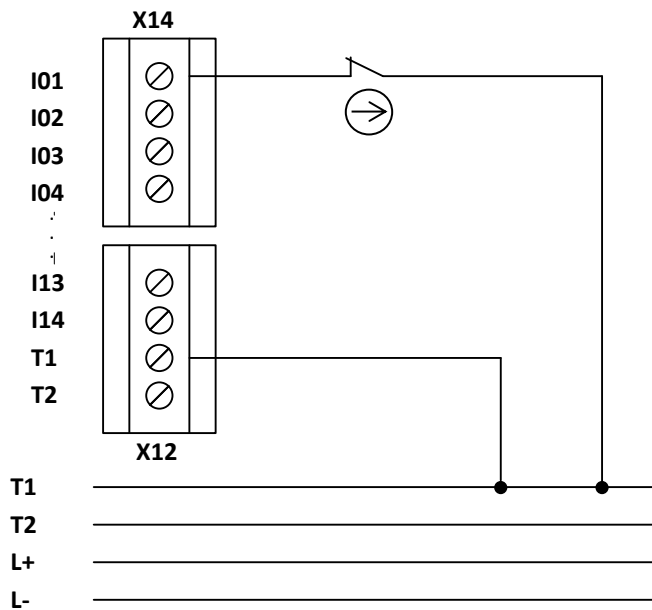


Fig.: Single-channel sensor with cycling

When using a single-channel sensor with clocking, the power supply of the switching element is attached to the clock exit T1 or T2. The clock must subsequently be assigned to the SMX100.

The use of a single-channel sensor with clock detects:

short-circuit to supply voltage DC 24 V
short-circuit to DC 0 V
cable interruption (current interruption is safe state!)

However, be cautious in case of a cable short between the two sensor connections, because this is not detected! A short-circuit between T1 and I01.

Due to the single-channel character of the switching element / sensor its failure requires an fault exclusion. This is permissible when using positively disconnecting switches with correct constrained actuation.

A series connection of 2 switching elements with corresponding fault exclusion of a double fault is on equal footing with the application (Occurrence of two errors at the same time). These may be e.g. the safety outputs of an electronic monitoring device (light curtain, switching mat) with internal dual-channel switch-off.

PL d acc. to EN ISO 13849-1 can be achieved by using a suitable switching element and with cautious wiring of the sensor. In special cases, i.e. in connection with suitable switching elements and permissible fault exclusions one may also achieve PL e as per EN ISO 13849-1.

 **Safety note:**

- PL e or higher acc. to EN ISO 13849-1 is achieved if the short-circuit between input and associated pulse output as well as the short-circuit between the sensor connections can be excluded. Here one must take care that in a fault scenario the switch must be positively opening in accordance with EN 60947-5-1. The sensor must additionally be triggered in regular intervals and the safety function requested. Fault exclusions can be achieved in accordance with EN ISO 13849-2 table D8. In case of single-channel use of the inputs, the achievable safety level must be limited to SIL 2 or PL d, if the safety function is demanded at regular intervals.
- A series connection of 2 switching elements with fault exclusion for double fault requires testing of the suitability in accordance with the intended safety level of this element. We would like to draw your attention to the applicable regulations in the EC machine directive 2006/42/EC.
- For single-channel sensors a safety related use of the inputs is only intended in connection with the pulse outputs.

4.2.1.4.3 Dual-channel sensor without timeout with cross-shorting test

Faults are at least detected when requested. The DC is medium and by using cyclic tests (start test, operational/organizational tests) can be changed up to high level. depending on the test frequency.

Only normally closed contacts should be used for safety related applications.

PI d acc. to EN ISO 13849-1 can be achieved when using sensors / switching elements with fault exclusion for not opening the switch contacts. This is permissible when using positively disconnecting switches with correct constrained actuation. The use of sensors with self-monitoring output contacts is also permitted.

PI e in accordance with EN ISO 13849-1 can be achieved when using sensors / input elements with sufficiently high MTTFd in connection with temporal plausibility monitoring and a sufficiently high change of the switching state = dynamic testing.

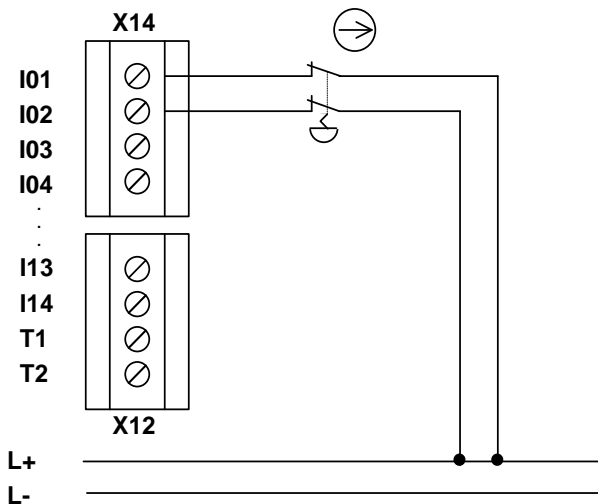


Figure: dual-channel sensor homogeneous without cycling, with positive disconnection

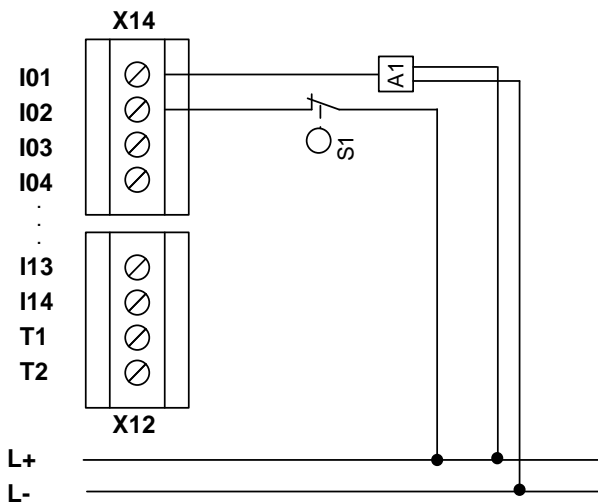


Figure: dual-channel input element heterogeneous, without cycling

 **Safety note:**

- PI d or higher in accordance with EN ISO 13849-1 is achieved by using switching elements / sensors with positively opening contacts or positive actuation acc. to EN 60947-5-1
- Using devices for which the fault exclusion double fault for the intended safety level can be specified for the switching elements, is permitted. We would like to draw your attention to the applicable regulations in the EC machine directive 2006/42/EC.

4.2.1.4.4 Dual-channel sensor with time-out and cross-shorting test

Cross-shorting as well as connections to DC 24 V and DC 0 V can be detected by using two independent clock signals on the homogeneous sensor.

PI d or higher acc. to EN ISO 13849-1 can be achieved when:

- Use of sensors/switching elements with forced actuation.
- Use of 2 sensors/switching elements with independent manipulation
- dto. However with actuation via a common actuation device in connection with an error exclusion for this device.

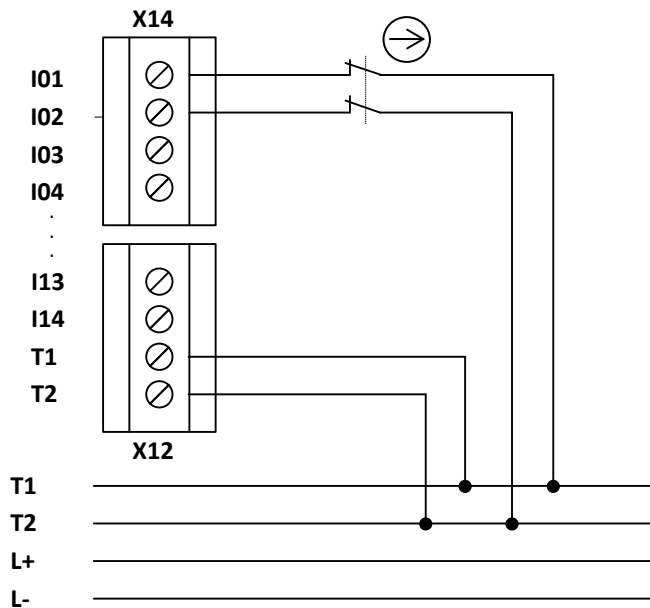


Figure: two-channel sensor, homogeneous with clock

Safety note:

- PI d or higher in accordance with EN ISO 13849-1 is achieved by using switching elements / sensors with positively actuation
- When using two independent sensors with independent actuation, PI d or higher acc. to EN ISO 13849-1 can be achieved.
- When using common elements in the actuation chain, an fault exclusion is required for this purpose. The corresponding limitations and criteria acc. to EN 13849-1 must be observed.

4.2.1.5 Overview of achievable PI for digital safety inputs

Type of sensor / input element	Input	Parameterized / operational tests				Achievable PI acc. to EN ISO 13849-1	Fault exclusion for input element	Condition for input element	
		Cross-shorting test	With time-out	Start test	Cyclic test during operation				
Single-channel	I01 ... I14					b		Operation proven input element	
				O	O	d	All faults at the input element Short-circuit at input/signal line	MTTF _D = high Connection in control cabinet or protected routing	
	I01 ... I04 I09 ... I14					e	All faults at the input element Short-circuit at input/signal line	Input element does not comply with min. P _{lr} Connection in control cabinet or protected routing	
	All	X					d	Getting caught Short-circuit at input/signal line	Mainly High level required (T _{High} > 100 * T _{Low}). Positively disconnecting MTTF _D = high Connection in control cabinet or protected routing
		X		O	O		e	All faults at the input element Short-circuit at input/signal line	Input element does not comply with min. P _{lr} Connection in control cabinet or protected routing MTTF _D = high
Dual-channel parallel	All					d	Short-circuit between input/signal line	Connection in control cabinet or protected routing MTTF _D = medium	
		X				e		MTTF _D = high	

Installation manual



Type of sensor / input element	InPort	Parameterized / operational tests				Achievable PI acc. to EN 13849-1	Fault exclusion for input element	Condition for input element
		Cross-shorting test	With time-out	Start test	Cyclic test during operation			
Dual-channel parallel	All		X			e	Short-circuit between input/signal line (only with common switching elements = 2xNO or 2xNC)	Connection in control cabinet or protected routing MTTF _D = high
Two-channel serial	I01 ... I04 I09 ... I12					d	Short-circuit at input/signal line Getting caught / positively disconnecting	Connection in control cabinet or protected routing MTTF _D = medium
				O	O	e	Short-circuit at input/signal line	Connection in control cabinet or protected routing MTTF _D = high
	All			O	O	d	Short-circuit at input/signal line	Connection in control cabinet or protected routing MTTF _D = medium
		X		O	O	e		MTTF _D = high

X: Diagnostic measure activated

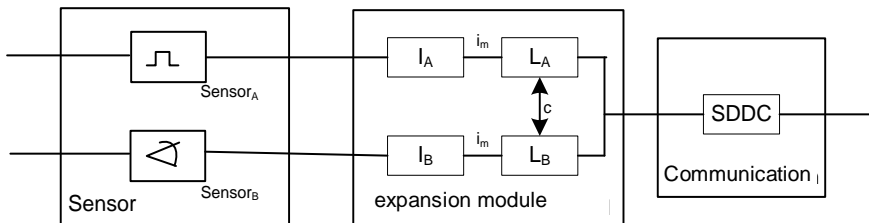
O: min. 1 diagnostic measure activated

4.2.2 Sensors for speed and/or position detection

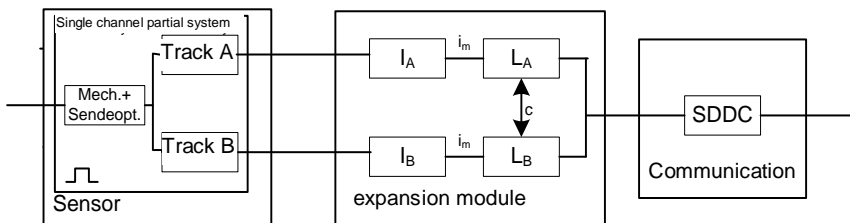
4.2.2.1 General safety related structure of the sensor interface for position and/or speed

The expansion modules of the SMX100 series can be optionally equipped with one (SMX111, SMX112, SMX121, SMX122) or two encoder interfaces (SMX111-2, SMX112-2, SMX121-2, SMX122-2) per axis.

Depending on encoder type and combination, different safety levels can be reached. The following system reflection results for the corresponding partial system:



Dual sensor system with separate signal processing in two channels, diagnose by cross-comparison in the PES



Sensor system with single and dual-channel partial system (example incremental encoder). Diagnose by separate signal processing in two channels and cross-comparison in the PES as well as further specific diagnoses.

4.2.2.2 General diagnostic measures for encoder interface

For fault detection in the sensor system the SMX series has a number of diagnostic measures implemented, depending on the chosen encoder type or its combination. These are automatically activated when choosing the encoder type.

With respect to their type and effectiveness diagnostic measures can generally be classified using the following table:

Diagnoses for sensors for position and/or speed detection:

Measure	DC	Note	Use
Cross-comparison of input signals with immediate and intermediate results in the logic (L) and temporal as well as logic program sequence monitoring and detection of static failures and short circuits (for multiple inputs/outputs).	99	Only to be used for: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> - dual-channel sensor systems (2 separate sensors), - the dual channel partial system of single channel sensors (incremental encoder) - Diagnose for the single and dual channel partial system of specially suitable sensor systems (SIN/COS-encoder, resolver) - Dynamic operation / no standstill monitoring 	Monitoring of 2-channel sensor systems or the corresponding partial system of sensors for dynamic operation Not to be used for standstill monitoring!
Cross-comparison of input signals without dynamic test	80-95%	DC depends on the frequency of the dynamic condition, i.e. standstill or movement, as well as on the quality of the monitoring measure (80 – 90 % for incremental encoder, 95 % for SIN/COS-encoder)	Monitoring of 2-channel sensor systems or the corresponding partial system of sensors for non-dynamic operation To be used especially for standstill monitoring!
Monitoring of some features of the sensor (response time, the area of analog signals, e.g. electric resistance, capacity)	60	Diagnose of specific features of sensors, only to be used for speed and position sensors as per chapter 4.3.	Monitoring of the single-channel partial system in single-channel sensor systems

Installation manual



4.2.2.3 Encoder types and their combination, diagnostic data

Encoder A	Encoder B	Safe speed	Safe direction	Safe absolute position	Fault exclusion	DC		
						1-channel partial system	2-channel partial system dynamic	2-channel partial system non-dynamic (standstill monitoring)
1 x Proxi	1 x Proxi	X			Fault exclusion mech. shaft breakage, positive encoder shaft connection required, if common elements are in use	n.a.	99%	80-90%
Incremental	NC	X			Fault exclusion mech. shaft breakage, positive encoder shaft connection required	60%	99%	80-90%
Incremental	Incremental	X	X			n.a.	99%	95%
Incremental	1 x Proxi	X				n.a.	99%	90-95%
Incremental	2 x counter Proxi 90°	X	X			n.a.	99%	90-95%
Incremental	SIN/COS	X	X			n.a.	99%	99%
Incremental	HTL	X	X			n.a.	99%	90-95%
Incremental	Resolver	X	X			n.a.	99%	99%
Incremental	SSI	X	X	X		n.a.	99%	90-95%
SIN/COS	NC	X	X		Fault exclusion mech. shaft breakage, positive encoder shaft connection required	90%	99%	90-95%
SIN/COS	Incremental	X	X			n.a.	99%	95-99%
SIN/COS	1 x Proxi	X	X			n.a.	99%	90-95%
SIN/COS	2 x counter Proxi 90°	X	X			n.a.	99%	95-99%
SIN/COS	HTL	X	X			n.a.	99%	95-99%
SIN/COS	Resolver	X	X			n.a.	99%	99%
SIN/COS	SSI	X	X	X		n.a.	99%	95-99%
SSI	2 x counter Proxi 90°	X	X	X		n.a.	99%	90-95%
SSI	SIN/COS	X	X	X		n.a.	99%	95-99%

Installation manual



<i>Encoder A</i>	<i>Encoder B</i>	<i>Safe speed</i>	<i>Safe direction</i>	<i>Safe absolute position</i>	<i>Fault exclusion</i>	<i>DC</i>		
						<i>1-channel partial system</i>	<i>2-channel partial system dynamic</i>	<i>2-channel partial system non-dynamic (standstill monitoring)</i>
SSI	Resolver	X	X	X		n.a.	99%	95-99%
SSI	SSI	X	X	X		n.a.	99%	90-95%
NC	SIN/COS	X	X		Fault exclusion mech. shaft breakage, positive encoder shaft connection required	90%	99%	90-95%
NC	Resolver	X	X		Fault exclusion mech. shaft breakage, positive encoder shaft connection required	90%	99%	90-95%
NC	HTL	X			Fault exclusion mech. shaft breakage, positive encoder shaft connection required	60%	99%	80-90%
2 x counter Proxi 90°	SSI	X	X	X		n.a.	99%	90-95%

4.2.2.4 Specific diagnostic measures with regard to the encoder type used

Encoder type		Supply voltage monitoring	Difference level monitoring	SIN/COS plausibility monitoring	Signal level input monitoring	Monitoring of the permissible quadrants	Monitoring of the counting signal separated for track A/B	Monitoring of the transfer ratio reference signal / measured signal	Frequency monitoring of the reference signal	Voltage monitoring of the reference signal	Form factor analysis of the measured signal	Plausibility test position signal versus speed	Monitoring of Clk-frequency
Interface X 31/32, X23	Incremental	X	X				X						
	SIN/COS	X		X									
	SSI	X	X										
	Proxi 2 x counting input	X											
	Proxi 2 x counting input	X											
Interface X 33/34	Incremental	X	X		X		X						
	HTL		X		X								
	Resolver			X		X		X	X	X	X		
	SIN/COS	X		X		X ¹⁾							
	SSI	X	X									X	X

1) Only in High-Resolution Mode

4.2.2.5 Safety relevant cut-off thresholds encoder systems for position and speed detection

Plausibility tests with the current position and speed values are performed between both measuring channels A and B of the SMX100 module as a basic measure, which are then checked against parameterizable thresholds.

The **incremental shut-down threshold** describes the tolerable deviation of position between both sensing channels A and B in the unit of the measuring distance.

The **speed shut-down threshold** describes the tolerable deviation in speed between both sensing channels A and B.

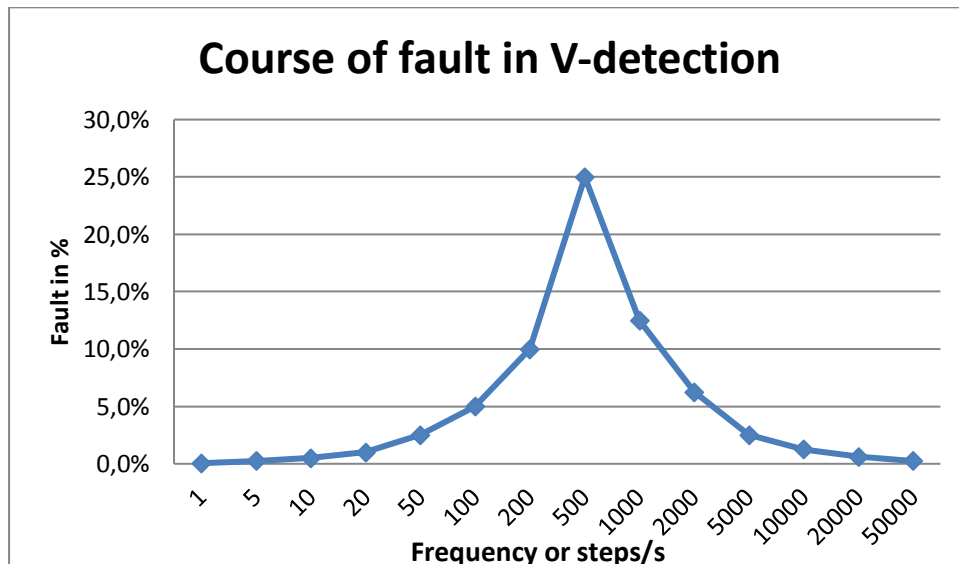
Diagnostic functions for the determination of optimal parameter values for the applications are available within the SCOPE-dialog of the parameterization tool.

Note:

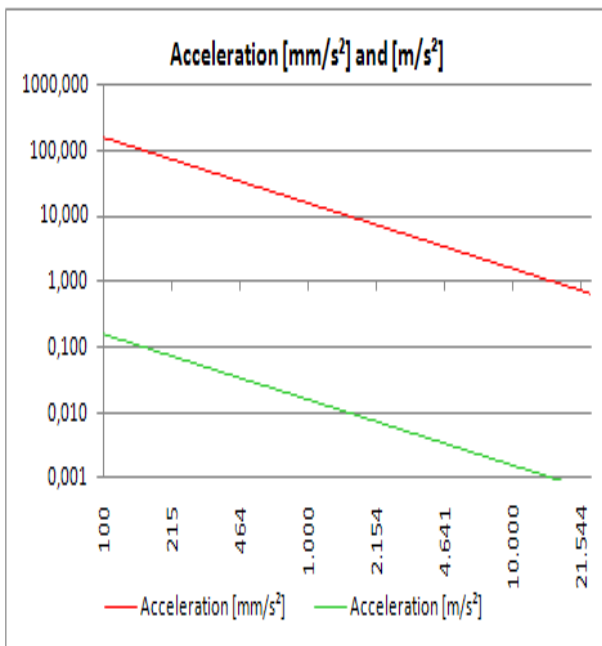
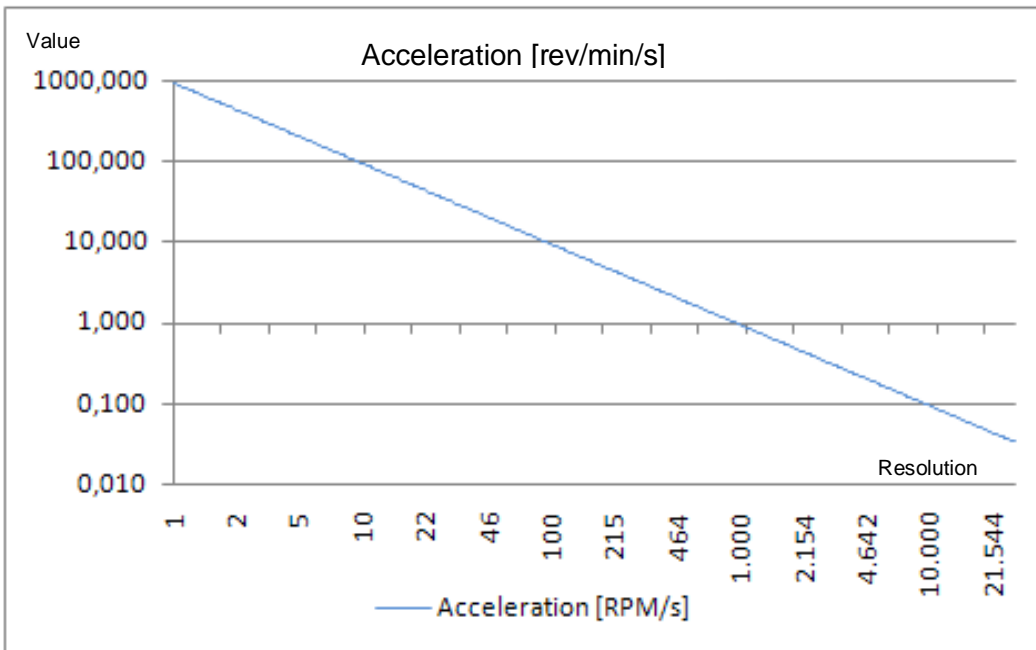
Speed and acceleration are detected values with a minimal digital resolution. This fact limits the smallest possible detection of speed or acceleration and determines the digital step width for the input values.

Speed resolution:

Up to a frequency of 500 Hz or 500 steps/s speed is detected with the frequency measuring method, below this it is measured with a time measuring method. This results in the following course of the sensing fault:



The digital acceleration resolution is limited by a maximum peak time of 256 ms and the encoder resolution. The graphs below show the lowest measurable acceleration in dependence on the resolution in revolutions/min, mm/s² and m/s².



Graph acceleration, rotary
(Values in rev/min/s)

Graph acceleration, linear
(Values in mm/s and m/s²)

Acceleration [mm/s²] und [m/s²]

⚠ Safety note:

- The fault can be optimized by choosing a suitable sensor resolution for the corresponding application.
- For applications with limited resolution and/or time variance of the sensing signal, the functional performance of the monitoring function used can be improved by using an average filter. The average filter "smoothes" digital spurious components of the sensors. However, this is achieved at the cost of a longer response time of the overall system.

-
- The filter time can be variably set between 0 and 64 in steps of 8. The dimension is "msec". In order to determine the response time of the overall system, the filter times must be added to the specified response times of the SMX systems (see chapter 11).

 **Safety note:**

- The manufacturer's data (MTTF_D, FIT-numbers, etc.) must be used for a safety related assessment of the partial system "Sensors".
- If the manufacturer demands specific diagnoses to be able to guarantee the specified safety related characteristic values, these must be checked with respect to the specific encoder as specified in the table "Specific diagnostic measures for position and speed sensors". If in doubt, the matter must be clarified by the manufacturer.
- The DC-values listed in the table must be used conservatively and compliance with the boundary conditions (see table under „Remarks“) must be ensured.
- In order to determine the DC-value for safety functions with standstill monitoring a frequency assessment of the dynamic status may be required. A DC of 90 % may here be used as a guide value.
- According to the applicable standards, fault exclusions are permitted. The boundary conditions mentioned in this context must permanently be met.
- If several sensor systems are required for the correct function of a single safety function, their partial values must be correctly merged by following the chosen method. This applies also for a combination of digital and analog sensors (e.g. safely reduced speed with open safety door = door contact + encoder for speed detection)
- By choosing a suitable resolution of the sensor system a sufficiently low tolerance with regard to the corresponding cut-off thresholds for the individual safety functions must be ensured.
- When using the encoder input filter one must consider the extension of the response time when assessing the safety related function.

4.2.2.6 Safety related assessment of encoder types or there combination

Due to the monitoring functions implemented in the SMX-series, no special demands are initially made on the internal design of the encoder electronics in applications with encoder systems, i.e. standard encoders can normally be used.

A safety related assessment of the overall arrangement must generally be made. Data issued by the encoder manufacturer (FIT, MTTF) as well as the DC from the table in chapter "[4.2.2.2 General diagnostic measures for encoder interface](#)" must in this case be used.

When using individual encoders at least an fault exclusion for the mechanical actuating chain, as well as for the single-channel part must be made under due consideration of the applicable specification in EN 13849-1. Furthermore, the information in "[4.2.2 Sensors for speed and/or position detection](#)" must also be observed.

PI d and higher acc. to EN 13849-1 is normally reached by a combination of two encoders with prioritized different technology and separated mechanical linking.

The use of compact encoders with internal 2-channel structure of different technology is also suitable for applications up to PI e acc. to EN 13849-1, however, under due consideration of the specifically required fault exclusions and their permissibility. Normally one should use encoders with proven safety related characteristics, the safety level of which meets the demanded level.

Safety note:

- They use of standard encoders or a combination of standard encoders is permitted. A safety-related evaluation is strictly required for the overall arrangement consisting of encoders, sensors/switching elements for triggering the safety function, the SMX module and the shutdown channel. To determine the safety level achieved, the manufacturer's specifications (FIT, MTTF) and the DC must be used in accordance with the requirements in "[4.2.2](#)".
- If only one encoder is used, the fault exclusion "shaft breakage / fault in the mechanical encoder connection" is required. Suitable measures must be applied for this purpose, e.g. a positive connection of the encoder by means of slot shim or locking pin. The applicable information issued by the manufacturer as well as EN ISO 138549-1 with respect to requirements and permissibility of the fault exclusion must strictly be followed.
- Encoders with proven safety related characteristics must preferably be used as individual encoders. The safety level of these encoders must at least meet the intended safety level of the overall arrangement. The information of the manufacturer with respect to diagnostic measures, mechanical connection and measures for the voltage supply must be strictly followed.
- SIN/COS encoder: The internal structure of the sensor system must be designed in such a way, that output signals for both tracks can be generated independently from each other and Common-Cause faults can be ruled out. Evidence of the mechanical design, e.g. fastening of the code disc on the shaft, must also be provided. Encoders with proven safety related characteristics should preferably be used.
- When using compact encoders with internal dual-channel structure, such as e.g. SSI + incremental/SinCos, you must strictly follow the instructions of the manufacturer concerning safety related characteristics, diagnostic measures, mechanical connection and measures concerning the electric power supply. The safety level of the encoder must at least meet the intended safety level of the overall arrangement. Encoders with proven safety related characteristics should preferably be used.

The SMX100 module generally detects the following faults in the external encoder system:

- Short-circuits between safety relevant signal lines
- Interruptions in safety relevant signal lines
- Stuck at 0 or 1 on one or all safety relevant signal lines

Each encoder type has further specific diagnoses for fault detection in the external encoder system assigned. The following list shows the respective diagnostic measures for the individual encoders, together with the limiting parameters.

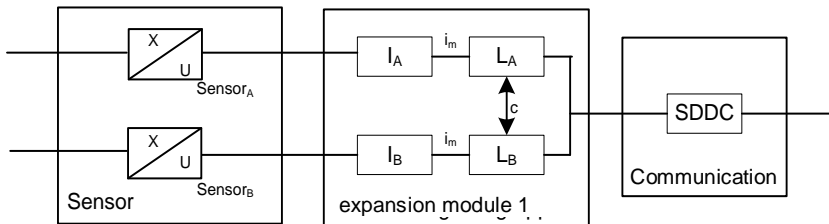
 **Safety note:**

- The diagnostic measures obviously have tolerances because of measuring inaccuracies. These tolerances must be accounted for in the safety related assessment.
- The limiting values for the corresponding diagnostic measures are partly parametrizable or fixed. The diagnostic coverages resulting from this must be assessed in relation to the application and included in the safety related overall assessment.

4.2.3 Analog sensors

The basic modules SMX12A have two analog inputs with two input channels each. Only 2-channel sensors can generally be connected to this interface.

The internal signal processing takes place separately in the two channels with cross-comparison of the results.



Dual-channel sensor system with separate signal processing in two channels, diagnose by cross-comparison in the PES

As with other sensor systems, a vast number of diagnostic measures has been implemented.

With respect to their type and effectiveness diagnostic measures can generally be classified using the following table:

Diagnoses for sensors for position and/or speed detection:

Measure	DC	Note	Use
Cross-comparison of input signals with dynamic test, if short-circuits cannot be detected (for multiple inputs/outputs)	90	Comparison of the analog input values with identical characteristics for both channels	Monitoring of dual-channel systems with identical characteristic of the input signals
Cross-comparison of input signals with immediate and intermediate results in the logic (L) and temporal as well as logic program sequence monitoring and detection of static failures and short circuits (for multiple inputs/outputs).	99	Comparison of the analog input values with diverse characteristic for both channels. E.g. inverse signal course, etc.	Monitoring of dual-channel systems with diverse characteristic of the input signals

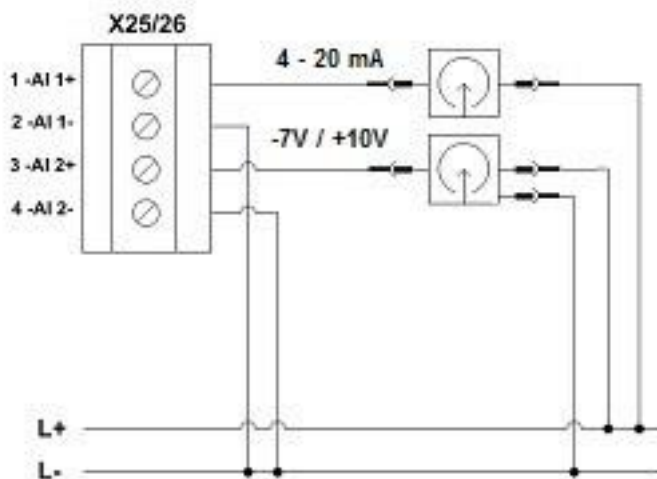
⚠ Safety note:

- The manufacturer's data (MTTF_D, FIT-numbers, etc.) must be used for a safety related assessment of the partial system "Sensors".
- The DC-values listed in the table must be used conservatively and compliance with the boundary conditions (see table under „Remarks“) must be ensured.
- According to the applicable standards, fault exclusions are permitted. The boundary conditions mentioned in this context must permanently be met.
- If several sensor systems are required for the correct function of a single safety function, their partial values must be correctly merged by following the chosen method. This applies also for a combination of digital and analog sensors (e.g. safely reduced speed with open safety door = door contact + encoder for speed detection)

4.2.3.1 Exemplary connection of analog sensors

By using suitable sensors and careful wiring of the sensor OI e acc. to EN ISO 13849-1 can be achieved.

The analog current inputs are all equipped with the fixed loading resistor of 500Ohm. For analog voltage inputs this resistor is omitted.



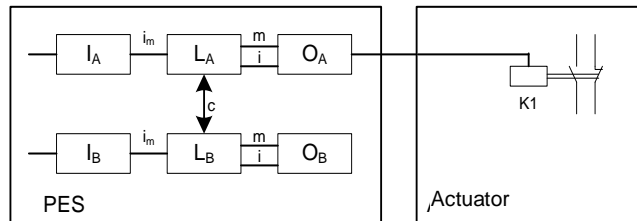
⚠ Safety note:

- PI e acc. to EN ISO 13849-1 is achieved when using two non-reactive sensors, for which Common Cause faults can be ruled out.

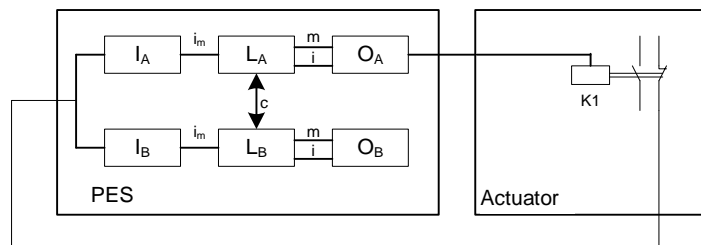
4.3 Safety related characteristic data and wiring of the outputs

SMX modules all have safe outputs of various types. For wiring, the corresponding characteristic as specified in the following description, must be accounted for.

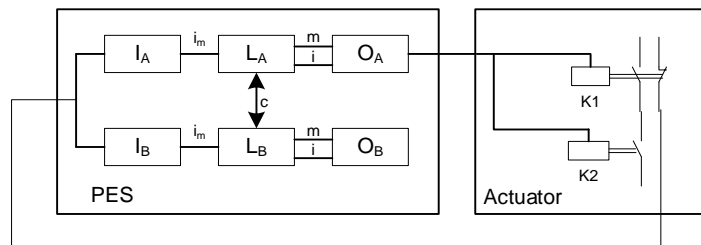
4.3.1 Characteristic of the output elements



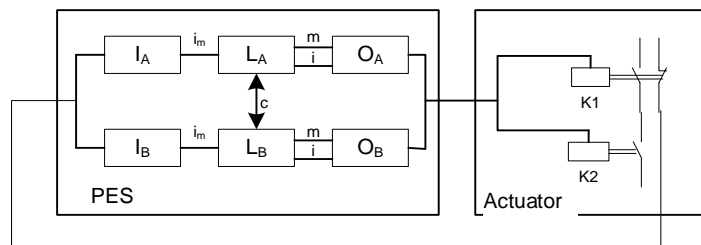
Single-channel output SMX and single-channel actuator without diagnostics



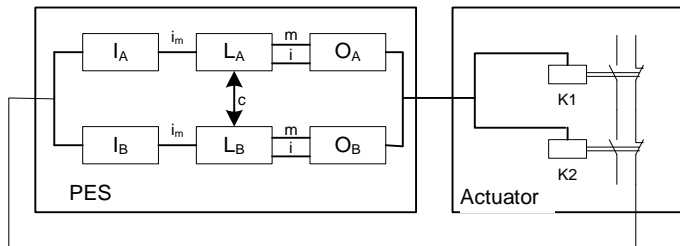
Single-channel output SMX and single-channel actuator with diagnostics



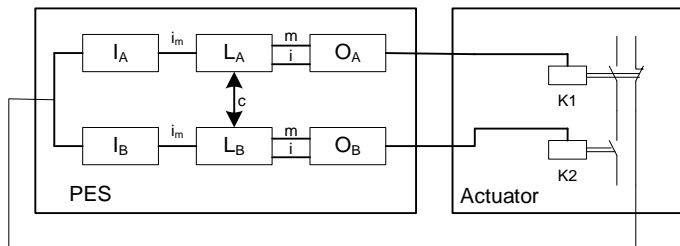
Single-channel output SMX (Q 5/6, Q 1/3, Q 2/4) and dual-channel actuator with at least single-channel diagnostics.



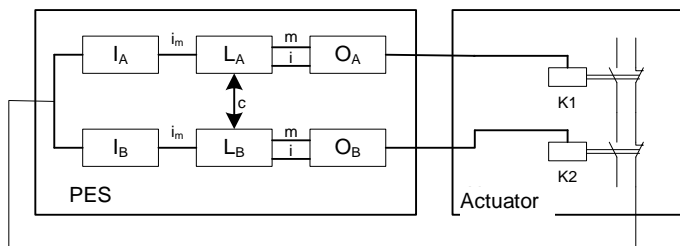
Single-channel output SMX with internal dual-channel processing (IQQ x) and dual-channel actuator with at least single-channel diagnose



Single-channel output SMX with internal dual-channel processing (IQQ x) and dual-channel actuator with dual-channel diagnose



Dual-channel output SMX and dual-channel actuator with single-channel diagnose



Dual-channel output SMX and dual-channel actuator with dual-channel diagnose

4.3.2 Diagnoses in the cut-off circuit

The cut-off circuit is equipped with durably implemented and parametrizable diagnostics functions. Certain diagnostics functions also include the external part of the cut-off channel. Depending on the use of these diagnostics functions, different DC-values will arise.

4.3.2.1 Diagnostic Functions

Durably implemented diagnostics functions:

Cross-wise readback of outputs:

All safety outputs are read back in the complementary channel. Faults in the internal cutout circuit of the SMX module are thus detected with DC = High.

Test of cutout ability for Q 5 und Q 6 (only control of relay), Q 1, Q 2, Q 3, Q 4:

The cutout ability of these outputs is cyclically tested. Failure of the cutout possibility is clearly detected.

Parametrizable diagnostics functions:

Readback of the actuator status via auxiliary contacts, position indicators, etc.:

The current status of the actuator is detected by correspondingly suitable auxiliary contacts or position indicators and compared with the nominal status. Any deviation is thereby clearly recognized.

Note: The DC depends on a single-channel or dual-channel diagnose as well as on the switching frequency.

Testing the cutout ability for IQQ x und Q 1 – Q 4:

Once this function has been activated, the cutout ability of these outputs is cyclically tested. Failure of the cutout possibility is clearly detected.

4.3.2.2 Overview DC with respect to the chosen diagnostics functions

Measure	DC	Note	Use
Monitoring of outputs b a channel without dynamic test.	0-90%	DC depending on switching frequency When using elements for switching amplification external relays or contactors) only effective in connection with the readback function of the switching contacts	Monitoring of electro-mechanical, pneumatic or hydraulic actuators / outputs
Redundant cutout path with monitoring one of the drive elements	90%	When using elements for switching amplification external relays or contactors) only effective in connection with the readback function of the switching contacts	Monitoring of the outputs with direct functions as safety circuit or monitoring of safety circuits with elements for switching amplification of pneumatic / hydraulic control valves in connection with readback functions from their switching status
Cross-comparison of input signals with immediate and intermediate results in the logic (L) and temporal as well as logic program sequence monitoring and detection of static failures and short circuits (for multiple inputs/outputs).	99%	When using elements for switching amplification external relays or contactors) only effective in connection with the readback function of the switching contacts For applications with frequent safety shut-down requests these tests should be performed more frequently, e.g. at the beginning of the shift, 1 x per week. However, a test should at least be carried out cyclically 1 x year.	Monitoring of the outputs with direct functions as safety circuit or monitoring of safety circuits with elements for switching amplification of pneumatic / hydraulic control valves in connection with readback functions from their switching status

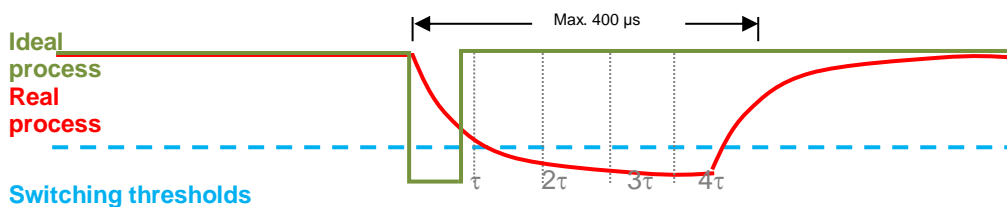
4.3.3 Permissible capacitive and inductive load at safe outputs

The safe outputs of the SMX100 exhibit an OSSD character. That is, the outputs are cyclically switched off for the test of the switching off ability and the status is read back.

The examination of the switching off ability takes place according to the following criteria/functions:

- After switching the output off, the output voltage may max. be 5.6 V
- The permissible voltage level must be achieved at the latest after 400 μs
- If the permissible voltage level is reached, the test is seen as successful, the output is activated again without further delay
- If the permissible voltage level is still not reached after 400 μs , an alarm is triggered and all safe outputs (second channel with safe outputs!) are deactivated

The following representation shows the ideal (green curve) and typical (red curve) process.



For the determination of the maximally permissible capacity or inductance, the time constant τ of the real RC or RL member at the output must be viewed.

This RC or RL member determines the real discharge curve:

The voltage level of max. 5.6 V is securely reached after 3τ .

It thus applies:

$$3\tau \leq 350\mu\text{s}$$

$$\tau \leq 100\mu\text{s}$$

With that connection

$$\tau = RC = \frac{L}{R}$$

the max. usable capacitive or inductive load can be determined in connection its Ohm's load:

$$C_{\text{max}} = \frac{\tau}{R} = \frac{10^{-4}}{R} \quad \text{or} \quad L_{\text{max}} = \tau R = 10^{-4} \cdot R$$

Typical values for the capacity C are $C=20 \text{ nF}$ and for longitudinal inductance $L = 100 \text{ mH}$

4.3.4 Digital Outputs

The modules

- SMX100-1(/2), SMX100-2(/2), SMX100-4(/2)
- SMX111(/2/D), SMX111-2(/2/D), SMX112(/2/D), SMX112-2(/2/D)
- SMX131x(/2), SMX132-x(R)/2/D

all have basic outputs of identical design.

4.3.4.1 Characteristic data of the basic outputs

The SMX-Serie provides a total of 8 outputs, which can be interconnected individually or in groups.

Output	Architecture acc. to EN ISO 13849-1	Comment
Combination of 2 relays Q 5 to Q 6	4	Complete tripping channel in compliance with architecture category 4 acc. to EN ISO 13849-1
Q 5 – Q14	Not safe	Only functional
Q1_PP and Q2_PN	4	Complete tripping channel in compliance with architecture category 4 acc. to EN ISO 13849-1
Q1_PP	Not safe	Only functional
Q2_PN	Not safe	Only functional
Q3_PP and Q4_PN	4	Complete tripping channel in compliance with architecture category 4 acc. to EN ISO 13849-1
Q3_PP	Not safe	Only functional
Q4_PN	Not safe	Only functional
Q1 – Q4	4	Complete tripping channel in compliance with architecture category 4 acc. to EN ISO 13849-1
Y1	Not safe	Auxiliary output
Y2	Not safe	Auxiliarx output

The Qx_PP, Qx_PN and Qx- outputs are subjected to a plausibility test in all operating states. In switched on state the correct function of all outputs is tested with a cyclic test pulse. For this purpose the output is switched to the corresponding inverse value for a test period TT <500µs (typically 200 µs) i.e. one P-output is switched instantaneously to 0 VDC potential, while one M-output is switched to 24 VDC potential.

The relay outputs are monitored for plausibility during each switching cycle. The relay outputs must be switched cyclically and thus tested to maintain the safety function. The switching/test cycle is determined in dependence on the application.

⚠ Safety note:

- For applications with frequent safety shut-down requests these tests should be performed more frequently, e.g. at the beginning of the shift, 1 x per week. However, a test should at least be carried out cyclically 1 x year.

The test function for the outputs is performed for groupes and individual controls. The auxiliary outputs are not tested

- **The High-Side (Qx_PP) and Low-Side (Qx_PN) outputs must individually not be used for safety duties. Any use for safety duties is only permitted for High-Side / Low-Side combination**
(Note: not relevant from FW release 05-00-00-01)

- A mixed operation with the relay contacts is **not** permitted!
Mixed operation: A dangerous contact voltage potential may not be mixed with a protective low voltage.

Example:

FALSE: 230 VAC (120 VAC cULus) are switched over Q1.1 + Q1.2 and 24V DC are switched over Q2.1+Q2.2.

TRUE: 230 VAC (120 VAC cULus) are switched over Q1.1 + Q1.2 and over Q2.1 + Q2.2 respectively.
Or 24 VDC are respectively switched over Q1.1 + Q1.2 and Q2.1 + Q2.2.

The outputs can be loaded as follows:

Output	Voltage	Current
Relay Qx	24 VDC	2,0 A (DC13, Pilot Duty)
Relay Qx	230 VAC	2,0 A (AC15)
	120 VDC	2,0 A (Pilot Duty)
Yx	24 VDC	250 mA
Qx_PP	24 VDC	250 mA
		SMXGen2(/2) 2 A
Qx_PN	GNDEXT	250 mA
		SMXGen2(/2) 2 A
Qx	24 VDC	250 mA
		SMXGen2(/2) 0,5 A, 2 A

⚠ Safety note:

- For safety relevant applications only external switching elements with a minimum withstand current of > 1.2 mA may be used.
- For safety-technical applications, only external switching elements may be used in connection with the combination p-/n-switching outputs
 - at a load resistance $\geq 100 \Omega$ with a minimum holding current of > 2mA
 - or

- at a load resistance < 100 Ω with a holding capacity > 0.4 mW

Only relevant with SMXGen2 (/2) to HW release 11-xx-xx...

- For the output system a vast number of diagnostic measures have been implemented. Special attention must be paid to the inclusion of elements for switching amplification, such as relays, contactors, etc. in the cutout circuit.

4.3.4.2 Wiring examples basic outputs

4.3.4.2.1 Single-channel switching relay or semi-conductor output without test

For the connection of multi-phase applications or for higher current demands external contactors may be used. For a single-pole connection without external test please bear in mind that the SMX100 module will not recognize bonding of one or several external contacts. The following circuit example is only limited suitable for safety applications, PI b acc. to EN ISO 13849-1 can maximally be achieved!

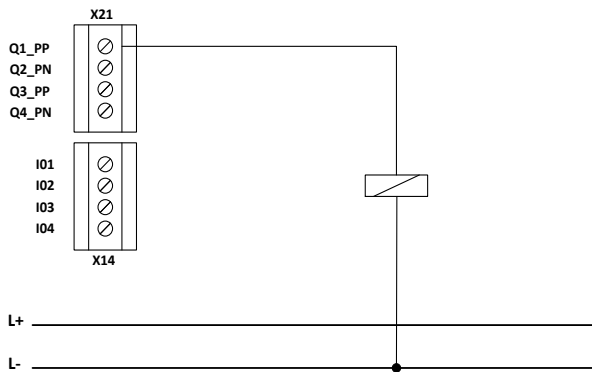


Fig.: Single-channel switching P-output.

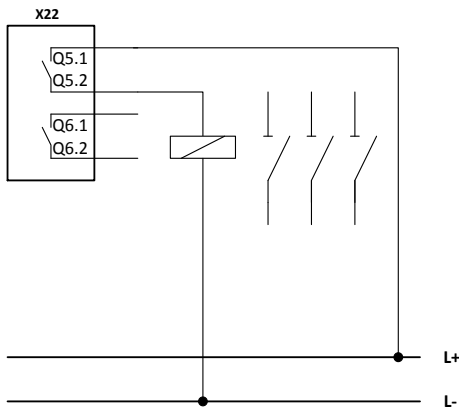


Fig.: Single-channel switching relay output.

⚠ Safety note:

- Not recommended for safety applications! In this context see also the notes in EN ISO 13849-1 concerning the application and the required fault exclusions.

4.3.4.2.2 Single-channel switching relay or semi-conductor output with external switching amplifier and testing

When using external switching amplifiers or downstream electro-mechanical, pneumatic or hydraulic components, the setup for testing the complete chain and a message/warning feature for detected faults is required in order to achieve PI c or higher.

Positively guided auxiliary contacts are especially needed for electro-mechanical devices and message contacts for the valve position are required for hydraulic or pneumatic components. The message/warning device must ensure that the operator recognizes the dangerous situation immediately.

The achievable PI is mainly depending on the test rate, PI d acc. to nach EN ISO 13849-1 can maximally be achieved!

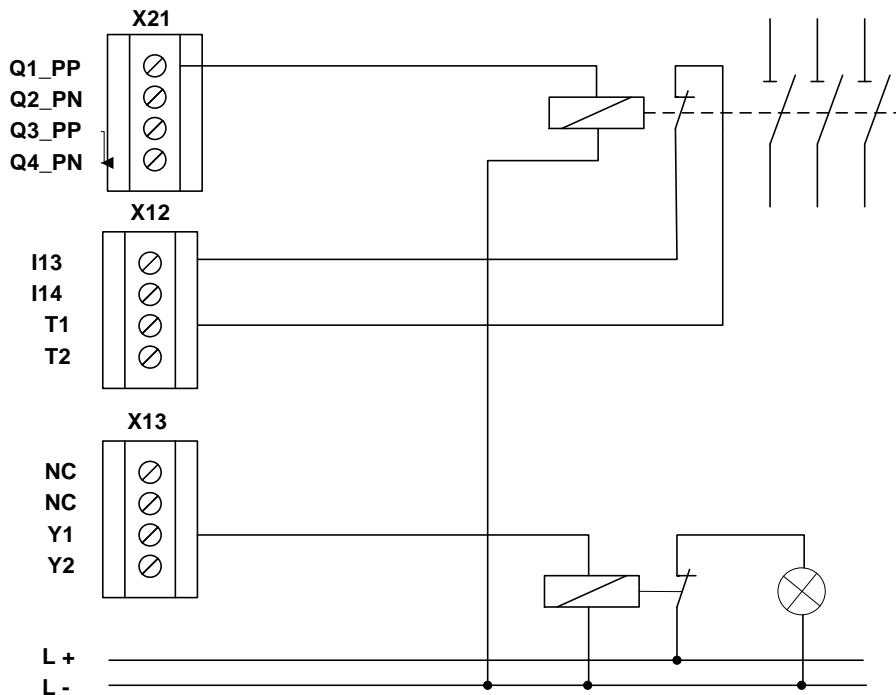


Fig.: Single-channel relay output with testing

Safety note:

- Only conditionally recommended for safety applications! In this context see also the notes in EN ISO 13849-1 concerning the application and the required fault exclusions.
- For PI c or higher a test rate of $> 100 \cdot$ the request rate is required.
- For PL c and higher a message/warning feature is required, which informs the operator immediately about a dangerous situation

4.3.4.2.3 Single-channel switching relay or semi-conductor output with dual-channel external circuit with testing

For safety applications from PL C after EN ISO 13849-1 it is recommended, or demanded to access two external switching off elements. For reaching error of PL c or higher, a device for testing the complete chain and a notification/warning device is further required when an error is recognized - for this see notes under 4.3.4.2 .2.

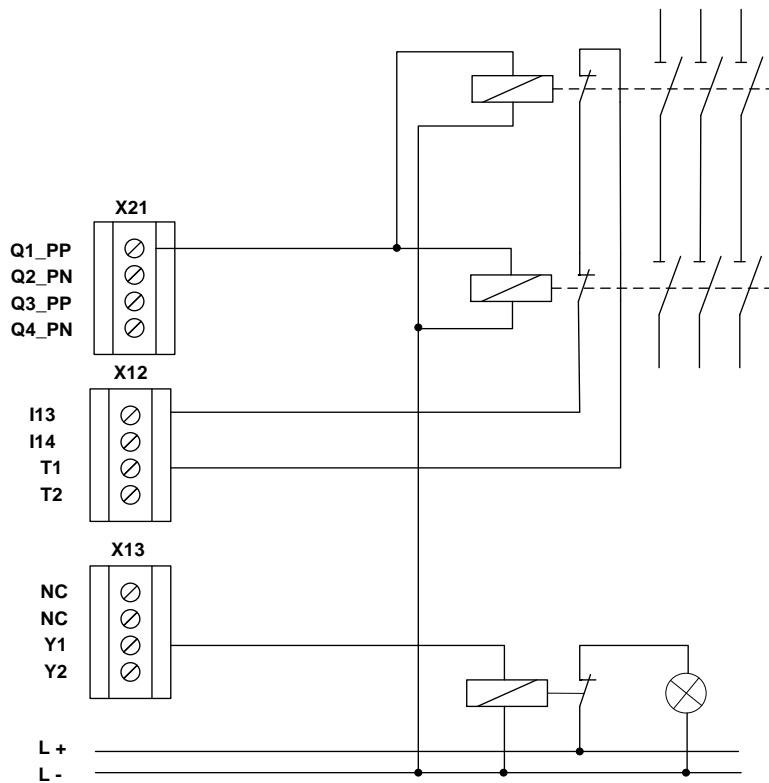


Fig.: Single-channel switching outout Q1_PP with dual-channel external circuit and monitoring at output 13 1 as group feedback

The two external monitoring contacts are switched in series, supplied by the clock signal T1 and read via input 13. Input 13 was chosen as readback input, but any other input can be assigned for this purpose.

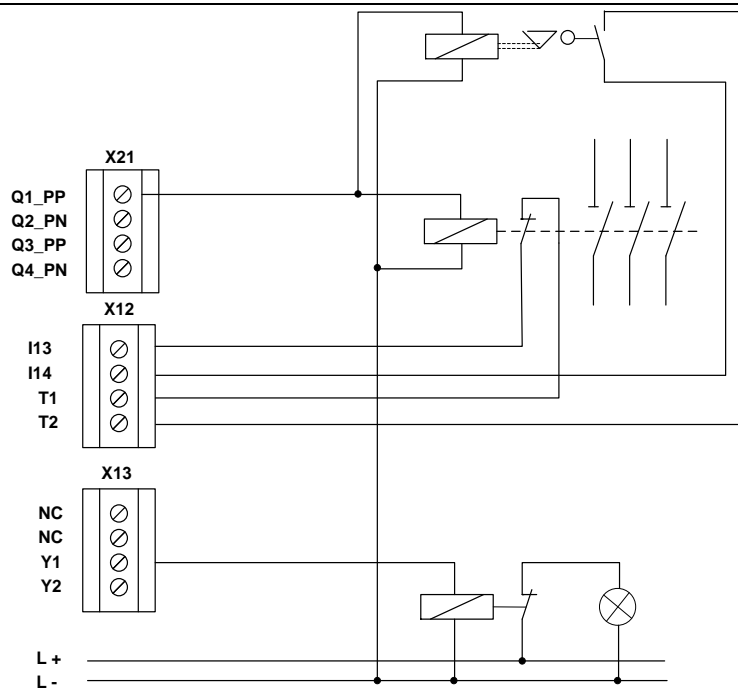


Fig.: Single-channel switching output Q1_PP with dual-channel external circuit as combination of electro-mechanical element and hydraulic/pneumatic valve and monitoring at two inputs

⚠ Safety note:

- Only conditionally recommended for safety applications! In this context see also the notes in EN ISO 13849-1 concerning the application and the required fault exclusions.
- For PL c and higher a message/warning feature is required, which informs the operator immediately about a dangerous situation
- For higher requirements you must make sure that at least 1 switching operation must take place every 24 hours, in order to test the switching ability of the external power contactor.

4.3.4.2.4 Two-channel switching relay output with external monitoring - group feedback

For safety related applications from PI d acc. to EN ISO 13849-1 two relays on the SMX1xx module and two external power contactors are used.

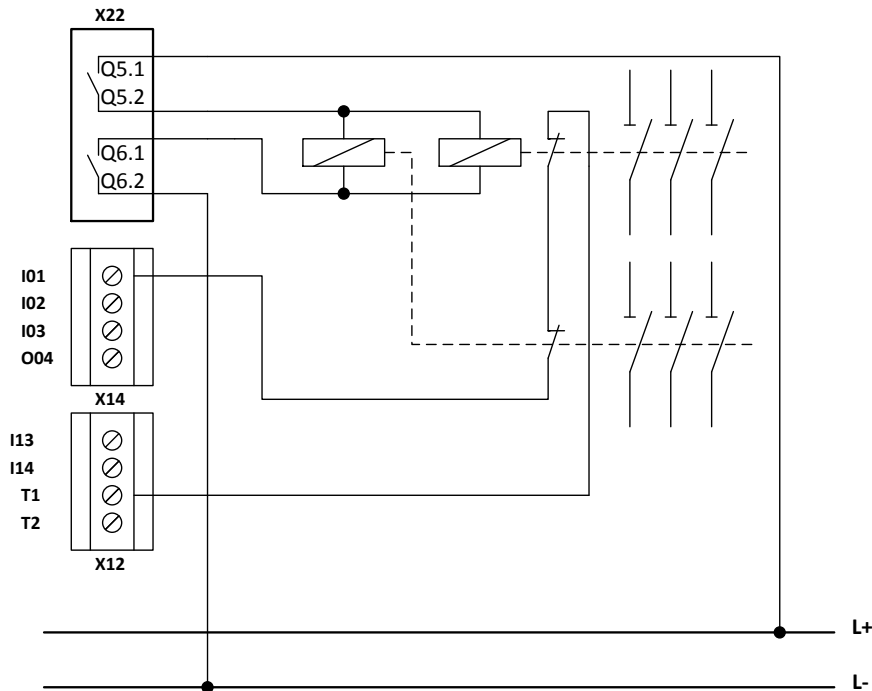


Fig.: Two-channel switching relay output with external monitoring – group feedback

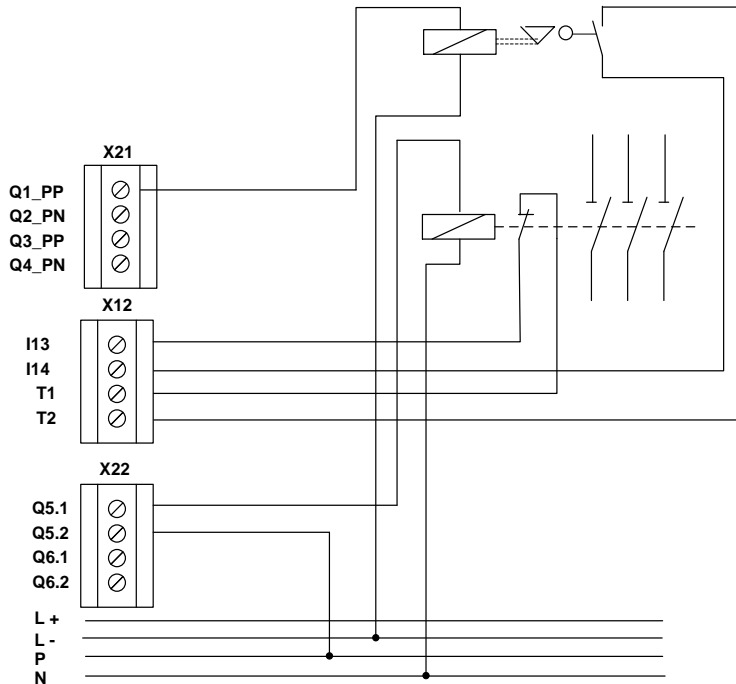
The two external monitoring contacts are switched in series, supplied by the clock signal T1 and read in from I01 (configured as EMU-input). In case of higher demands one must consider that at least 1 switching process must take place every 24 hours.

Safety note:

- For achieving PI e acc. to EN ISO 13849-1 a sufficiently high testing rate is required.
- For applications with frequent safety shut-down requests these tests should be performed more frequently, e.g. at the beginning of the shift, 1 x per week. However, a test should at least be carried out cyclically 1 x year.

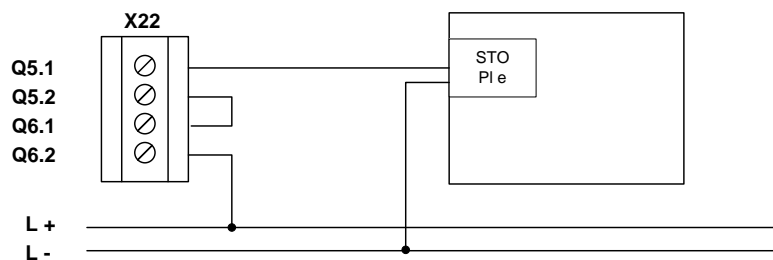
4.3.4.2.5 Dual-channel output with relay output and semi-conductor output – external control circuit with monitoring

For safety applications from PI d and higher acc. to EN ISO 13849-1. The external circuit is controlled in dual-channel mode via a relay and a semi-conductor output. Each of the two external cutout paths is monitored. For PL e acc. to EN ISO 13849-1 a sufficiently high testing rate and $MTTF_D = \text{high}$ is demanded for the external circuit.



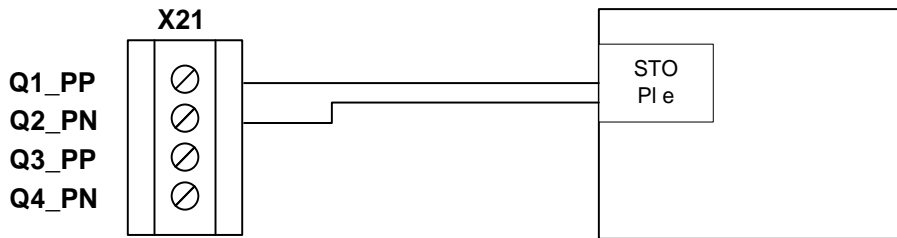
4.3.4.2.6 Dual-channel output with relay output and external control circuit in PI e

For safety applications from PI d and higher acc. to EN ISO 13849-1. The external circuit is controlled in dual-channel mode via the relay outputs. For PL e acc. to EN ISO 13849-1 a sufficiently high testing rate and PI e is demanded for the external circuit.



4.3.4.2.7 Dual-channel output with semi-conductor output and external control circuit in PI e

For safety applications from PI d and higher acc. to EN ISO 13849-1. The external circuit is controlled in dual-channel mode via the semi-conductor outputs. For PL e acc. to EN ISO 13849-1 PI e is demanded for the external circuit



4.3.4.2.8 Wiring of a notification output

Both semi-conductor outputs implemented on the SMX1xx module can be wired for functional applications. These outputs are not pulse-commutated.

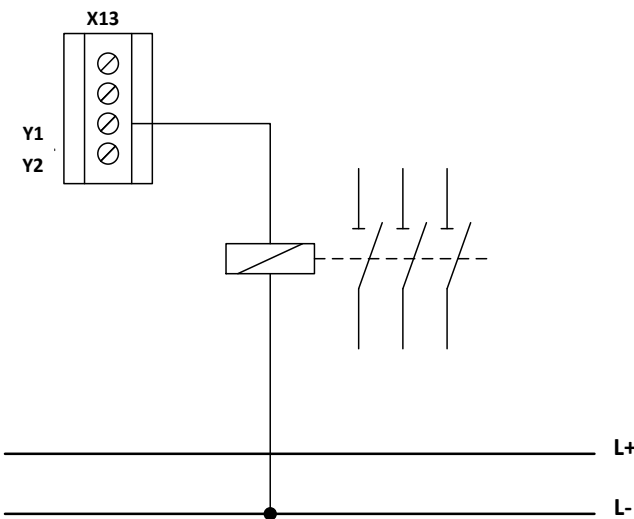


Fig.: Wiring of a notification output

Applications with notification outputs are not accepted!

4.3.5 Digital outputs I/O's (IQQx)

The modules

SMX100-2(/2), SMX100-4(/2)

SMX131(/2), SMX131R(/2), SMX131R-4/2

SMX132-x(R)/2/D

respectively have configurable safe digital I/O's in different numbers (see chapter 3 module overview). This connection acts as safe digital pp-switching output parameterized as output (IQQx).

4.3.5.1 Classification of the I/O's (IQQx) when used as output

Classification	Achievable PI acc. to EN ISO 13849-1	Comment
Static single-channel ⁽²⁾	PL c	Fault detection or fault reaction acc. to cat. 2
Static two-channel ⁽²⁾	PL d	Same group ⁽¹⁾ : - Time-shifted triggering on PLC level - Fault approach short-circuit on both outputs Different group ⁽¹⁾ : - Nom further requirements necessary
	PL e	Different group ⁽¹⁾ required
Dynamically single-channel ⁽²⁾	PL e	Nom further requirements necessary
Dynamically dual-channel ⁽²⁾	PL e	No further requirements necessary

Note:

- 1) Group 1: IQQ1 ... IQQ6
 Group 2: IQQ7 ... IQQ10

- 2) Static: no pulse test on output
 Dynamic: Pulse test on output $t_{Test} \leq 500 \mu s$

4.3.5.2 Wiring examples for safe digital outputs I/O's (IQQx)

4.3.5.2.1 Wiring single-channel without testing

When using a two-channel output (IQQx) in connection with a single-channel external wiring without external examination it must be taken into account that an adherence of one or several external contacts of the SMX1xx module is not recognized. The following circuitry example is only suitable in a restrictive manner, maximally PL b according to EN ISO 13849-1 can be reached!

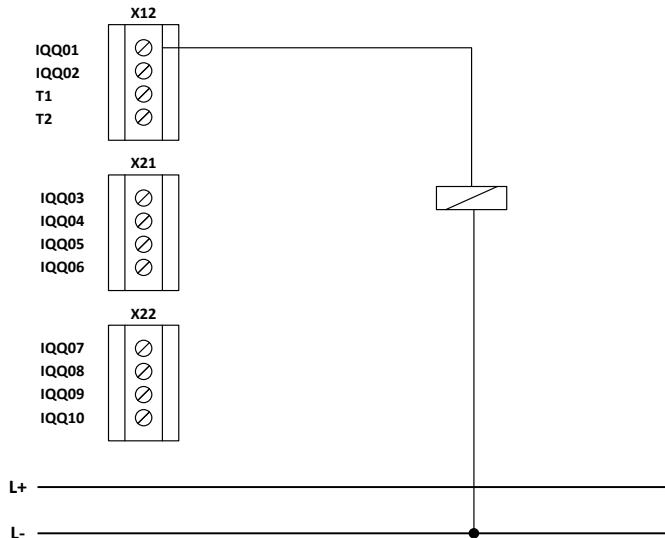


Fig.: Two-channel output with single-channel wiring without testing

⚠ Safety note:

- Not recommended for safety applications! In this context see also the notes in EN ISO 13849-1 concerning the application and the required fault exclusions.

4.3.5.2.2 Wiring single-channel with testing

When using a two-channel output (IQQx) in connection with a single-channel external wiring with testing. Positively guided auxiliary contacts are especially needed for electro-mechanical devices and message contacts for the valve position are required for hydraulic or pneumatic components. Furthermore, a message/warning device for indicating a failure is required. The message/warning device must ensure that the operator recognizes the dangerous situation immediately. The achievable PI is mainly depending on the test rate, PI d acc. to EN ISO 13849-1 can maximally be achieved!

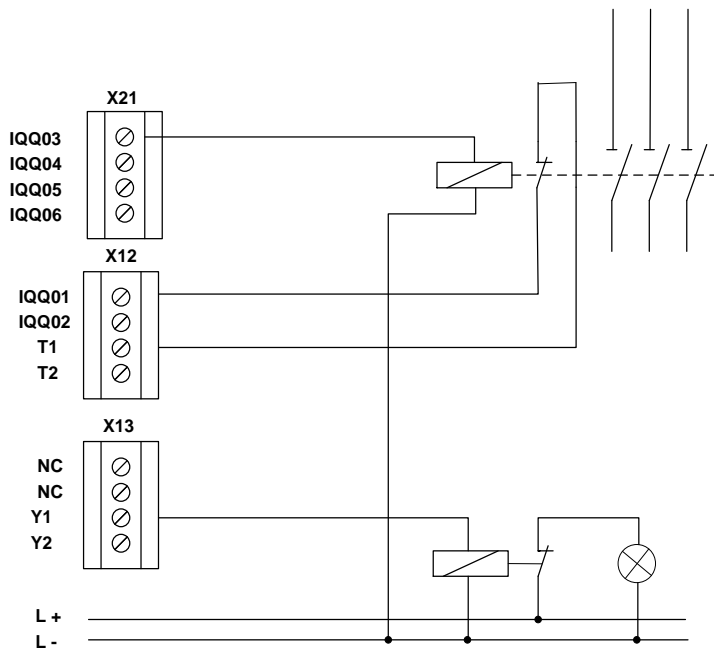


Fig.: Two-channel output with single-channel wiring with testing

Safety note:

- Only conditionally recommended for safety applications! In this context see also the notes in EN ISO 13849-1 concerning the application and the required fault exclusions.
- For PI c or higher a test rate of $> 100 \cdot$ the request rate is required.
- For PL c and higher a message/warning feature is required, which informs the operator immediately about a dangerous situation

4.3.5.2.3 Wiring with safe cut-off circuit

For safety applications from PI c and higher acc. to EN ISO 13849-1. The external circuit is controlled directly via a two-channel output. The achievable PL acc. to EN ISO 13849-1 depends on the use of dynamic testing (see 4.3.2.1 DC) and the PL of the downstream device.

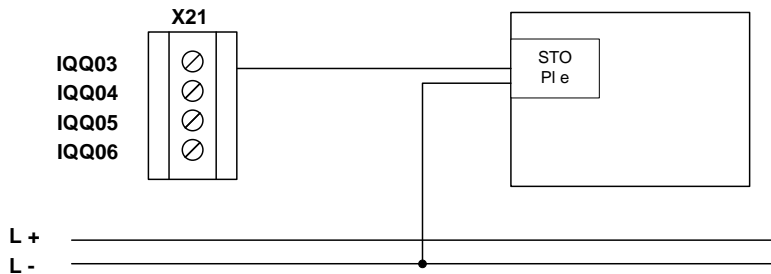


Fig.: Two-channel output in connection with a device with examined disconnection

4.3.5.2.4 Wiring with two-channel switching-off circuit

Suitable for PI d and higher acc. to EN ISO 13849-1. Use of a two-channel output IQQx in conjunction with two-channel external wiring with test. Positively guided auxiliary contacts are especially needed for electro-mechanical devices and message contacts for the valve position are required for hydraulic or pneumatic components.

The achievable PI depends on the use of dynamic testing as well as $MTTF_D$ -value of the external channel. PI e acc. to EN ISO 13849-1 can maximally be reached!

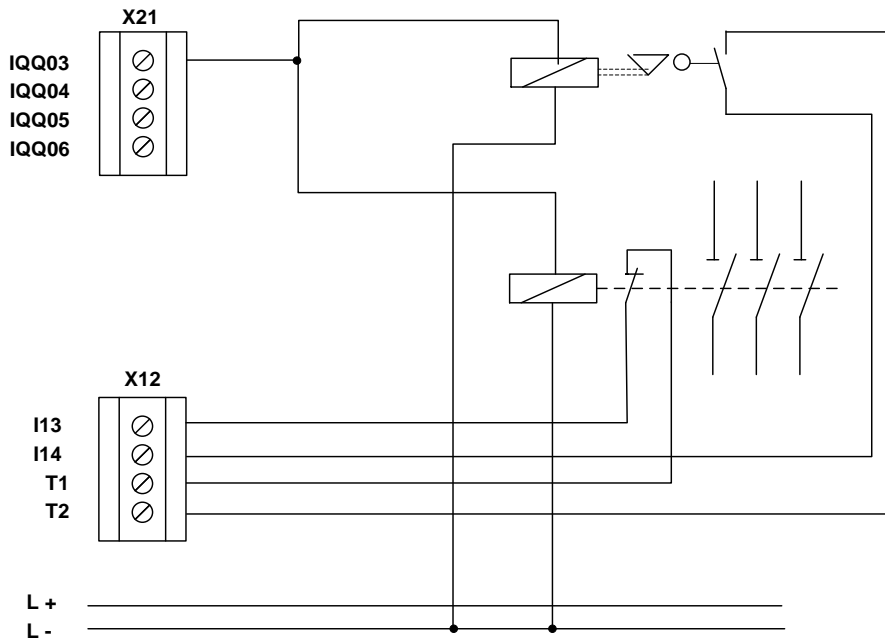


Fig.: Two-channel output in connection with two-channel switching-off circuit with testing

4.3.5.2.5 Redundant two-channel output

Suitable for PI d and higher acc. to EN ISO 13849-1. Use of two outputs IQQx in connection with a dual-channel external wiring.

4.3.5.2.5.1 Outputs in the same group

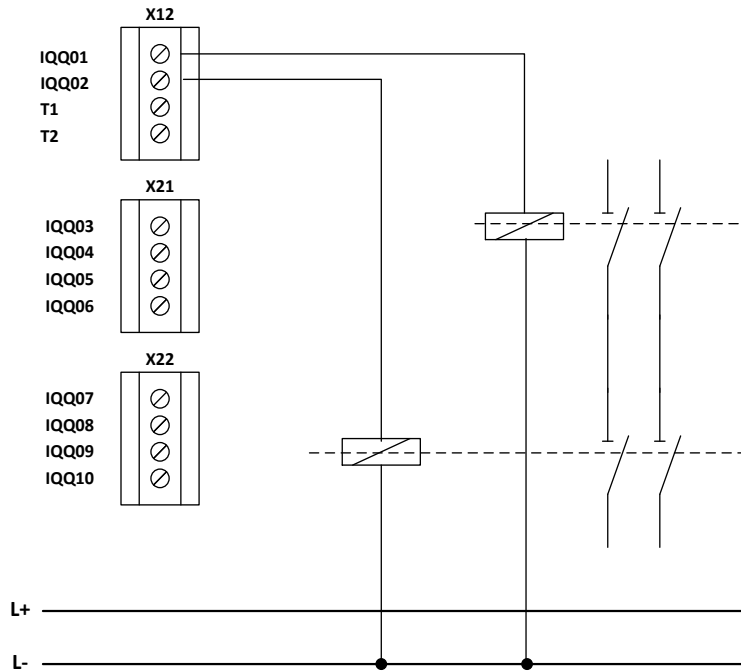


Fig.: Redundant two-channel outputs in the same group in connection with two-channel switching-off circuit

4.3.5.2.5.2 Outputs in different groups

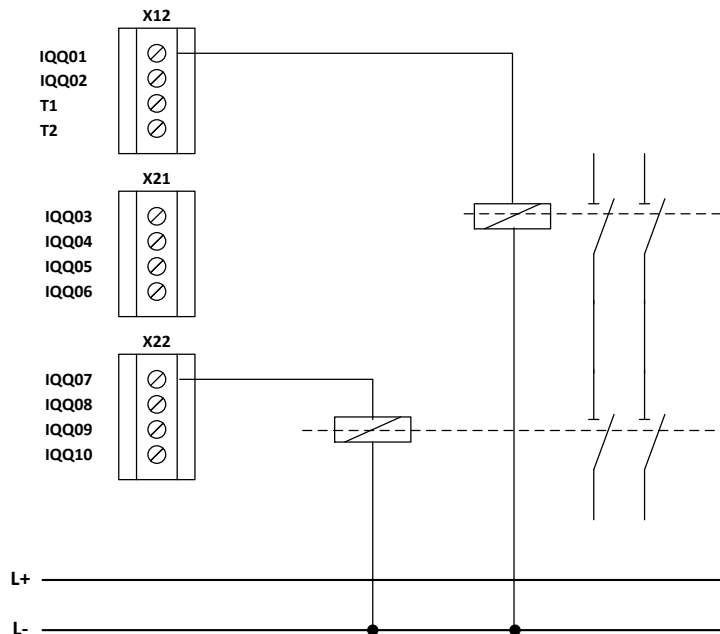


Fig.: Redundant two-channel outputs in different groups in connection with two-channel switching-off circuit

Safety note:

- For a safety related assessment of the partial system output the data issued by the respective manufacturer (MTTF_D, FIT-numbers, B10d-value, etc.) must be used when using external elements, e.g. for switching amplification, in the shut-down circuit.
- The DC-values listed in the table must be used conservatively and compliance with the boundary conditions (see table under „Remarks“) must be ensured.
- According to the applicable standards, fault exclusions are permitted. The boundary conditions mentioned in this context must permanently be met.
- When using elements for switching amplification in safety circuits, their function must be monitored by means of suitable readback contacts, etc. (see circuitry examples). Suitable readback contacts are contacts which are linked with the contacts in the shut-down circuit in a positively switching way.
- The switching ability of the external switching amplifier must be cyclically tested. The time between 2 tests must be determined in accordance with the requirements of the application and ensured by suitable measures. Suitable measures may be of organizational (On and Off switching at the beginning of a shift, etc.) or technical (automatic, cyclic switching) nature.

4.3.5.3 Overview of achievable PI for digital safety outputs

Output SMX	Actuator / external shut-down circuit	Category acc. to EN13849-1	DC		MTTF _d Actuator	Achievable PI acc. to EN ISO 13849-1	Boundary conditions	Fault exclusion
Single-channel without dynamic output test Qx Q1_PP, Q2_PN, Q3_PP, Q4_PN IQQx	Single-channel Contactor, valve, brake, etc. without direct feedback for diagnostics.	Cat. B	0 %		Medium	B	Contactors and downstream actuators appropriately designed for safety application	
	Single-channel Contactor, valve, brake, etc. with monitored and positively guided auxiliary contact	Cat. 2	60-90%	Depending on switching frequency	Medium	B	Auxiliary output required for warning in case of detected malfunction	Contactors and downstream actuators appropriately designed for safety application
					High	C	As before	
						D	As before DC = 90 % due to a sufficiently high test rate with reference to the application	
Single-channel without dynamic output test Q1 or 2 or Single-channel Q1_PP, Q2_PN, Q3_PP, Q4_PN	Dual channel Contactor, valve, brake, etc. with direct feedback for diagnostics at least in one channel or actuator single-channel controlled with safety function cat. 3 (e.g. STO)	Cat. 2	90%	Monitoring only in an external shut-down circuit	Medium	c	Auxiliary output required for warning in case of detected malfunction	Short circuit on external control
					High	d		
Single-channel without dynamic output test IQQ01..IQQ40	Dual channel Contactor, valve, brake, etc. with direct feedback for diagnostics at least in one channel or actuator single-channel controlled with safety function cat. 3 (e.g. STO)	Cat. 3	90 %	Monitoring only in an external shut-down circuit	Medium or High	d	Contactors and downstream actuators appropriately designed for safety application	Short circuit on external control
Einkanalig mit dynamischen Ausgangstest IQQ01..IQQ40	Dual channel Contactor, valve, brake, etc. with direct feedback for diagnostics at least in one channel or actuator with safety function cat. 4 (e.g. STO)	Cat. 4	99%	Monitoring in both external shut-down circuits	High	e	Contactors and downstream actuators appropriately designed for safety application Monitoring of electro-mechanical components by means of positively guided switches, position monitoring of control valves, etc.	

Output SMX	Actuator / external shut-down circuit	Category acc. to EN13849 -1	DC		MTTF _d Actuator	Achievable PI acc. to EN 13849-1	Boundary conditions	Fault exclusion
Dual-channel without dynamic output test Q1 and Q2 2 x IQQ01..IQQ40	Dual-channel Contactor, valve, brake, etc. with direct feedback for diagnostics at least in one channel or actuator with safety function cat. 4 (e.g. STO)	Cat. 3	90%	Monitoring in both external shut-down circuits	Medium or High	d	<p>Contactor and downstream actuators appropriately designed for safety application</p> <p>Monitoring of electro-mechanical components by means of positively guided switches, position monitoring of control valves, etc.</p> <p>Outputs IQQ1..401 x each from different groups (groups of 6/4 contiguous IQQ-ports each, e.g. IQQ1..6, IQQ7..10)</p> <p>or</p> <p>Time-shifted triggering on PLC level</p>	Short circuit on external control
Dual-channel Q1 and Q2 or Dual-channel with dynamic output test Q1_PP and, Q2_PN, Q3_PP and Q4_PN 2 x IQQ01..IQQ40	Dual-channel Contactor, valve, brake, etc. with direct feedback for diagnostics at least in one channel or actuator with safety function cat. 4 (e.g. STO)	Cat. 4	99%	Monitoring in both external shut-down circuits	High	e	<p>Contactor and downstream actuators appropriately designed for safety application</p> <p>Monitoring of electro-mechanical components by means of positively guided switches, position monitoring of control valves, etc.</p> <p>For applications with frequent safety shut-down requests these tests should be performed more frequently, e.g. at the beginning of the shift, 1 x per week. However, a test should at least be carried out cyclically 1 x year.</p>	Short-circuit in external control in both channels

5 Connection and installation

5.1 General notes on installation

Strictly follow the safety regulations when installing!

Degree of protection IP20

Route all signal lines for the interfacing of digital inputs and contact monitoring separately. You should in any case disconnect 230VAC (120VAC cULus) voltages from extra-low voltage lines (24V), if these voltages are used in connection with the application.

The cable lengths for digital inputs and outputs must normally not exceed **30 m**.

If the cable lengths exceeds 30 m you must apply appropriate measures for fault exclusion concerning impermissible overvoltage. Appropriate measures include e.g. lightning protection for outdoor lines, overvoltage protection of the indoor system, protected routing of cables.

Only cULus:

The maximum cable length of **30 m** shall not be exceeded.

Measures concerning the electromagnetic compatibility (EMC)

The SMX100 module is intended for use in the drive environment and meets the EMC-requirements mentioned above.

It is also assumed that the electromagnetic compatibility of the overall system is ensured by application of appropriate measures.

Safety notes:

- Electric power supply lines of the SMX100 and "discontinuous-action lines" of the power converter must be isolated from each other.
- Signal lines and power lines of the power converter must be routed through separate cable ducts. The distance between the cable ducts should be minimum 10 mm.
- Only shielded cables must be used to connect the position and speed sensors. The signal transmission cable must be RS-485-standard compliant (lines twisted in pairs).
- Care must be taken to ensure that the shielding is correctly connected in the 9-pin SUB-D plugs of the position and speed sensors. Only metal or metal coated plugs are permitted.
- The shielding on the sensor side must comply with appropriate methods.
- EMC-compliant installation of the power converter technology in the environment of the SMX100 module must be assured. Special attention must be paid to the routing of cables, the shielding of motor cables and the connection of the braking resistor. Strict compliance with the installation instructions of the power converter manufacturer is mandatory.
- All contactors in the environment of the power converter must be equipped with appropriate suppressor circuits.
- Suitable measures to protect against overvoltages must be applied.

Used symbols acc. to UL 61010-1



Symbol 14

- The temperature at the connecting terminals can amount to over 60°C. From this temperature, suitable cable types must be used.

5.2 Installation and assembly of the SMX100 module

The module is solely to be installed in control cabinets with a degree of protection of at least IP54.

Only cULus:

This device is intended to be used indoor only.

The modules must be vertically fastened on a top hat rail

For air vents, there must be free space of 30 mm above and below the vents. Stringing of expansion modules is permitted. As the adjacent devices can generate waste heat, a distance of 20 mm should be maintained.

Note:

When using in non-closed spaces, it must be guaranteed that the environmental conditions of the individual modules (see technical data) are adhered to.

5.3 Installation of backplane bus system

Mounting several SMX100 modules (SMX100-1, SMX100-2, SMX100-4) on one top hat rail in connection with the backplane bus system is also possible. These modules can be combined with a communication extension. In this case the backplane bus system needs to be configured by BBH when placing the order and delivered in accordance with the application in question.

The backplane bus system consists of a 5-pin plug connector with snap-in contacts. In these plug connectors all 5 contacts are equipped by standard. In this case the component is not specially marked. On a second variant of the plug connector only 3 contacts are equipped.

Note:

Expansion modules have no own power supply unit and depend on a DC power supply via the backplane bus system. Base modules (SMX100-1, SMX100-2, SMX100-4) are equipped with a reinforced power supply unit and always feed in to the backplane bus.

There are two different types of backplane bus connectors:

- **TB1:** Standard design (all contacts are present)
- **TB2:** Circuit breaker design (The two live conductors are not present and are marked with a green dot.

Using the backplane bus connector TB1:

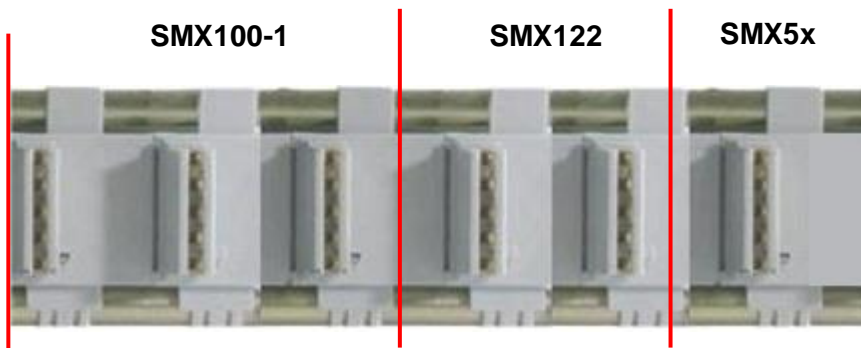
The backplane bus connector TB1 can only be installed in connection with expansion modules without their own power supply. Connection of several standalone modules is not possible.

Using the backplane bus connector TB2:

The backplane bus connector TB2 is used for combining several base modules with expansion modules. A detailed description can be found under point 4.3.1.

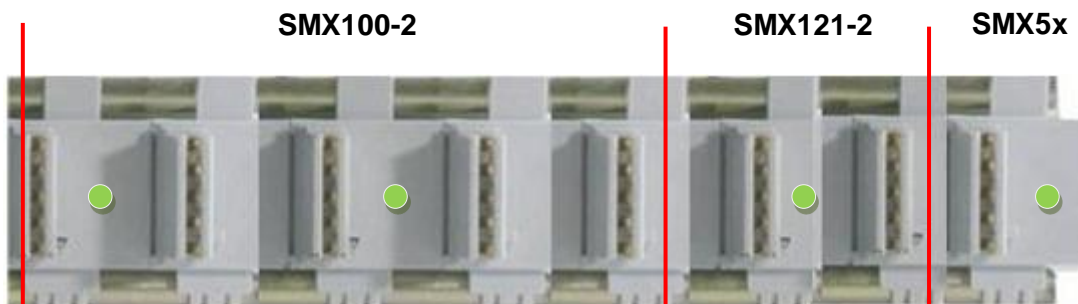
5.3.1 Arrangement examples

5.3.1.1 SMX100-1 + SMX122 + SMX5x



There is no TB2 between the SMX122 module and the communication module SMX5x because the power supply for the SMX5x is fed in through the backplane bus system.

5.3.1.2 SMX100-2 + SMX121-2 + SMX5x



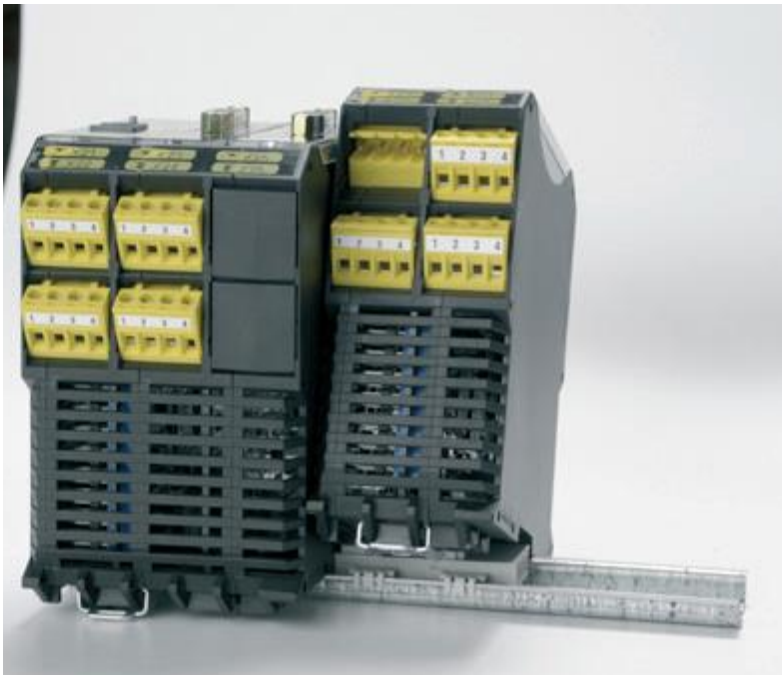
There is no TB2 between the SMX121-2 module and the communication module SMX5x because the power supply for the SMX5x is fed in through the backplane bus system.

5.4 Assembling the modules

The modules are mounted on C-standard rails by means of snap-on latches.

5.4.1 Assembly on C-rail

The devices are inserted into the rail under an oblique angle and then snapped on downwards. For disassembling use a screwdriver, insert it into the slot of the downwards pointing latch and then move it up.



5.4.2 Assembly on backplane bus

After assembling the backplane bus the device can be installed. For this purpose insert the module from above into the plug connection under a oblique angle and snap it onto the C-rail.



Insert the module from above under an oblique angle.



Snap-on downwards on to the C-rail.

The backplane plug connection can later be extended. The system configuration can thus be extended by additional modules.



Snap the backplane bus element into the C-rail and insert it into the counter-piece by sliding it sideways.

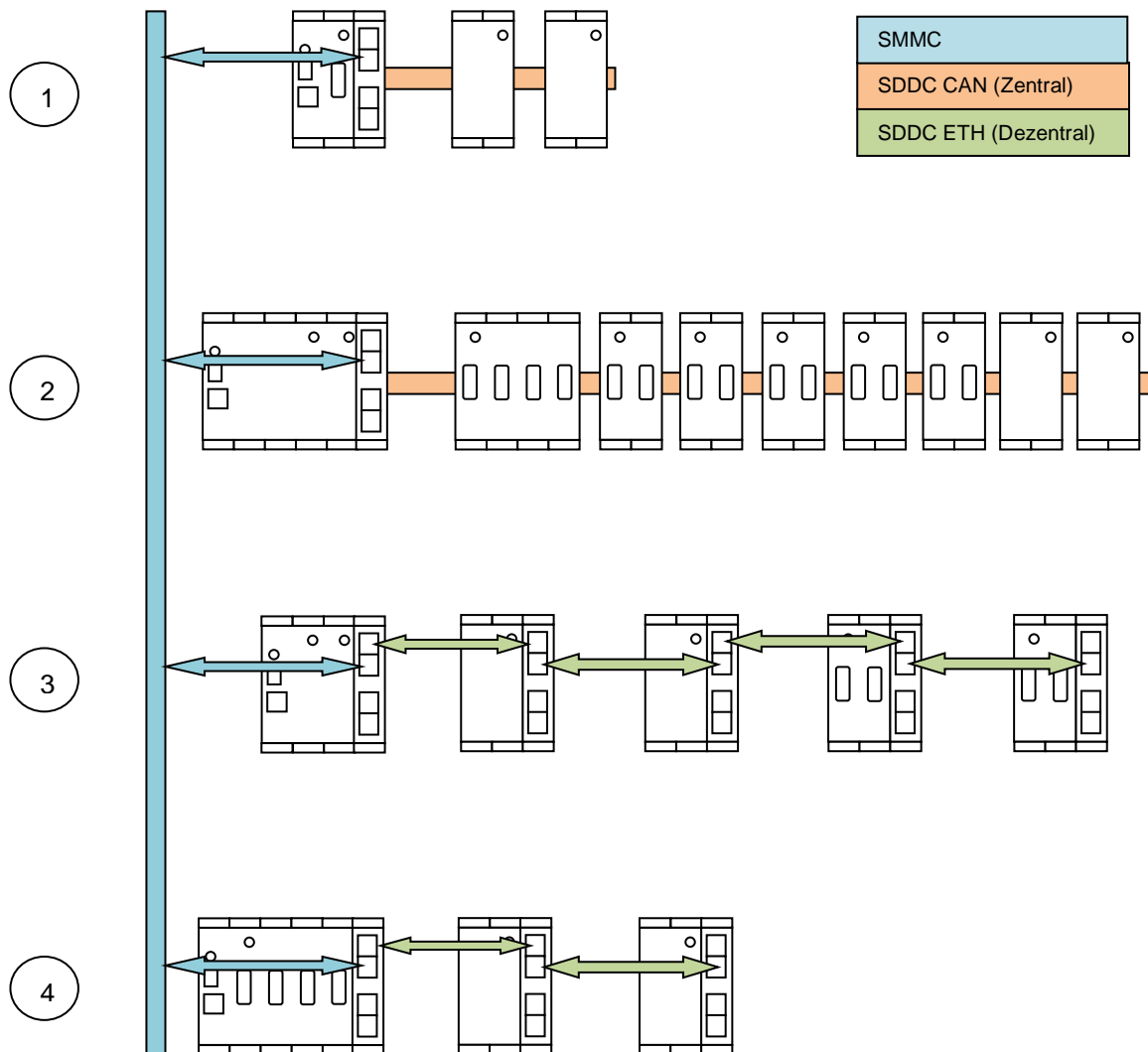
5.5 Installation und Konfiguration von Master \leftrightarrow Master (SMMC) und Master \leftrightarrow Slave (SDDC)

The SMMC communication enables the safe data exchange of 2 byte between several SDDC masters.

The communication takes place without master for the coordination of the data. Thus data exchange between available participants is always given. Through this principle, an incomplete or separate network can operate in its partial regions.

In order to be able to coordinate several SDDC masters with different cycle times, a SMMC cycle time is parameterized, which must be adhered to by all participants. This cycle time is the smallest common multiple of the cycle time of the individual participants.

5.5.1 Network topology



1	Communication of a SMX compact with <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • central expansion modules via SDDC CAN rear wall bus • SMMC via Ethernet
2	Communication of a SMX modular with <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • central expansion modules via SDDC CAN rear wall bus • SMMC via Ethernet
3	Communication of a SMX modular with <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • decentral expansion modules via SDDC Ethernet • SMMC via Ethernet
4	Communication of a SMX compact with <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • decentral expansion modules via SDDC Ethernet • SMMC via Ethernet

5.5.2 Installation I/O-extension

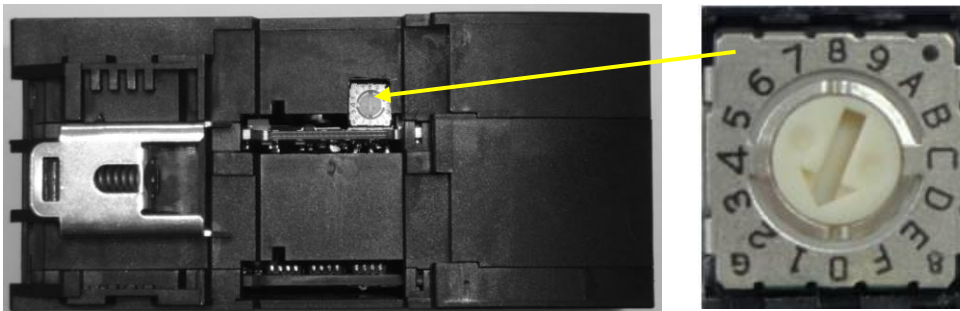
Note:

Max. 8 SMX 1xx modules can be operated with one basic unit.

5.5.2.1 Physical address configuration of the slave modules (central/decentral)

On the SMX1xx module the bus address must be set with the help of the address switch.

This setting is made on the back of the module

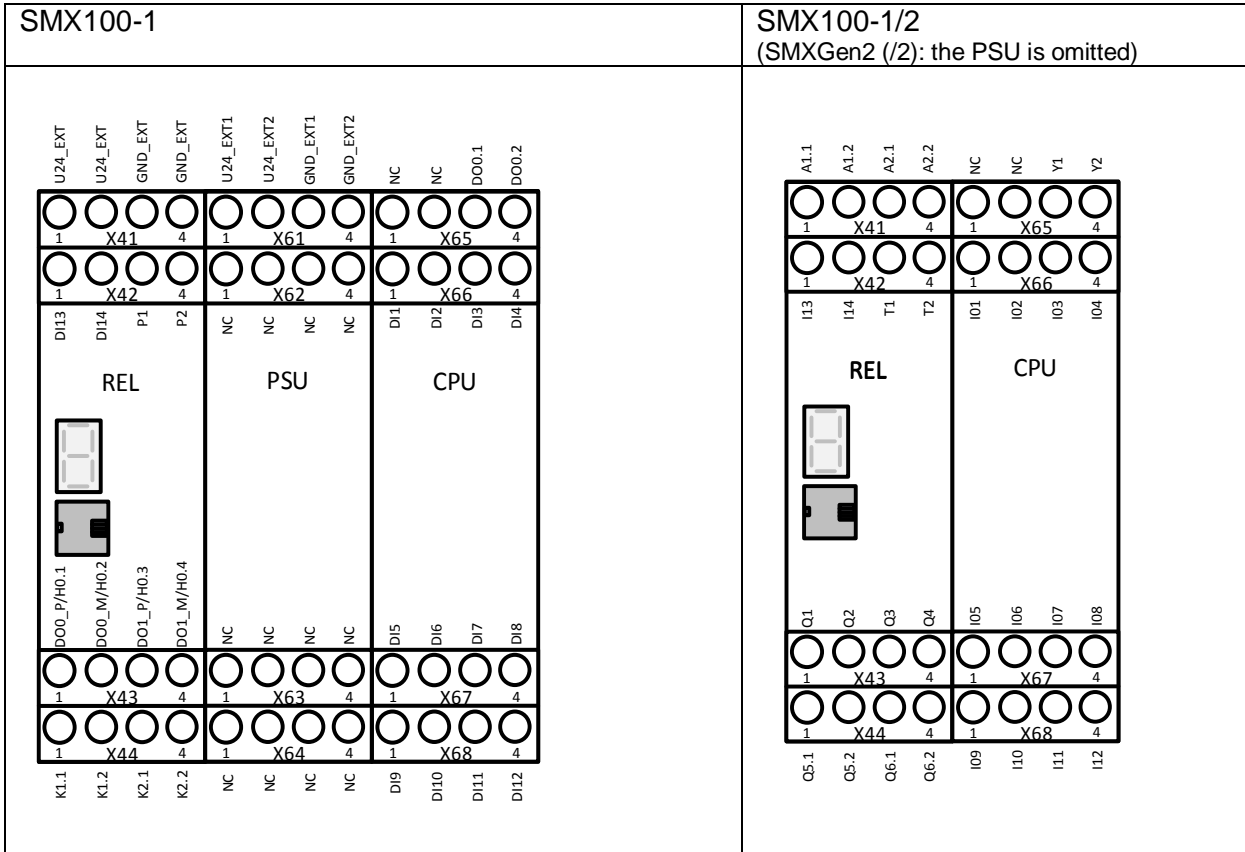


Note:

- Address range of the SMX1xx module from 1...15.
- Address "0" is reserved for the basic device.

5.6 Terminal assignment

5.6.1 Terminal assignment SMX100-1(/2)



Terminal assignment					
Unit	Terminal	Pin	Pin SMXGen2 (/2)	Description	Note
REL	X41	1 - U24_EXT	1 - A1.1	Voltage supply device +24 VDC	
		2 - U24_EXT	2 - A1.2	Voltage supply device +24 VDC Outputs	from SMXGen2 (/2)
		3 - GND_EXT	3 - A2.1	Voltage supply device 0 VDC	
		4 - GND_EXT	4 - A2.2		
	X42	1 - DI13	1 - I13	Safe digital inputs	
		2 - DI14	2 - I14		
		3 - P1	3 - T1	Clock outputs	
		4 - P2	4 - T2		
	X43	1 - DO0_P	1 - Q1	Output of the pp-switching DO 0_P (Q1_PP) / pp-switching Q1	from SMXGen /2 alternatively via SafePLC2 parameterizable
		2 - DO0_M	2 - Q2	Output of the pn-switching DO 0_M (Q2_PN) / pp-switching Q2	
		3 - DO1_P	3 - Q3	Output of the pp-switching DO 1_P (Q3_PP) / pp-switching Q3	
		4 - DO1_M	4 - Q4	Output of the pn-switching DO 1_M (Q4_PN) / pp-switching Q4	
	X44	1 - K1.1	1 - Q5.1	Safe relay output	
		2 - K1.2	2 - Q5.2		
		3 - K2.1	3 - Q6.1	Safe relay output	
		4 - K2.2	4 - Q6.2		

Terminal assignment					
Unit	Terminal	Pin	Pin SMXGen2 (/2)	Description	Note
PSU (not applicable SMXGen2 (/2))	X61	1 - U24_EXT1		Voltage supply device +24 VDC	
		2 - U24_EXT2		Voltage supply device +24 VDC	
		3 - GND_EXT1		Voltage supply device 0 VDC	
		4 - GND_EXT2			
	X62	1 - NC		No function	
		2 - NC			
		3 - NC			
		4 - NC			
	X63	1 - NC			
		2 - NC			
		3 - NC			
		4 - NC			
	X64	1 - NC			
		2 - NC			
		3 - NC			
		4 - NC			

Terminal assignment					
Unit	Terminal	Pin	Pin SMXGen2 (/2)	Description	Note
CPU	X65	1 - NC	1 - NC	No function	
		2 - NC	2 - NC		
		3 - DO 1	3 - Y1	Auxiliary outputs	
		4 - DO 2	4 - Y2		
	X66	1 - DI1	1 - I01	Safe digital inputs	
		2 - DI2	2 - I02		
		3 - DI3	3 - I03		
		4 - DI4	4 - I04		
	X67	1 - DI5	1 - I05		
		2 - DI6	2 - I06		
		3 - DI7	3 - I07		
		4 - DI8	4 - I08		
	X68	1 - DI9	1 - I09		
		2 - DI10	2 - I10		
		3 - DI11	3 - I11		
		4 - DI12	4 - I12		

5.6.2 Terminal assignment SMX100-2(/2)

SMX100-2																			
U24_EXT	U24_EXT	GND_EXT	GND_EXT	U24_EXT1	U24_EXT2	GND_EXT1	GND_EXT2	U24_EXT3	U24_EXT4	GND_EXT3	GND_EXT4	U24_EXT5	U24_EXT6	GND_EXT5	GND_EXT6	NC	NC	DO0.1	DO0.2
1	2	3	4	1	2	3	4	1	2	3	4	1	2	3	4	1	2	3	4
X41				X45				X49				X61				X65			
1	2	3	4	1	2	3	4	1	2	3	4	1	2	3	4	1	2	3	4
X42				X46				X50				X62				X66			
DI13	DI14	P1	P2	IO1	IO2	DO0.3	DO0.4	IO11	IO12	DO0.5	DO0.6	NC	NC	NC	NC	DI1	DI2	DI3	DI4
REL				IO				IO				PSU				CPU			
DO0_P/H0.1	DO0_M/H0.2	DO1_P/H0.3	DO1_M/H0.4	IO3	IO4	IO5	IO6	IO13	IO14	IO15	IO16	NC	NC	NC	NC	DI5	DI6	DI7	DI8
1	2	3	4	1	2	3	4	1	2	3	4	1	2	3	4	1	2	3	4
X43				X47				X51				X63				X67			
1	2	3	4	1	2	3	4	1	2	3	4	1	2	3	4	1	2	3	4
X44				X48				X52				X64				X68			
K1.1	K1.2	K2.1	K2.2	IO7	IO8	IO9	IO10	IO17	IO18	IO19	IO20	NC	NC	NC	NC	DI9	DI10	DI11	DI12

SMX100-2/2 (SMXGen2 (/2): the PSU is omitted)																			
A1.1	A1.2	A2.1	A2.2	A1.3	A1.4	A2.3	A2.4	A1.5	A1.6	A2.5	A2.6	NC	NC	Y1	Y2	NC	NC	Y1	Y2
1	2	3	4	1	2	3	4	1	2	3	4	1	2	3	4	1	2	3	4
X41				X45				X49				X65				X65			
1	2	3	4	1	2	3	4	1	2	3	4	1	2	3	4	1	2	3	4
X42				X46				X50				X66				X66			
II3	II4	T1	T2	IO01	IO02	Y3	Y4	IO11	IO12	Y5	Y6	IO1	IO2	IO3	IO4	IO1	IO2	IO3	IO4
REL				IO				IO				CPU				CPU			
IO1	IO2	IO3	IO4	IO03	IO04	IO05	IO06	IO13	IO14	IO15	IO16	IO5	IO6	IO7	IO8	IO5	IO6	IO7	IO8
1	2	3	4	1	2	3	4	1	2	3	4	1	2	3	4	1	2	3	4
X43				X47				X51				X67				X67			
1	2	3	4	1	2	3	4	1	2	3	4	1	2	3	4	1	2	3	4
X44				X48				X52				X68				X68			
Q5.1	Q5.2	Q6.1	Q6.2	IO07	IO08	IO09	IO10	IO17	IO18	IO19	IO20	IO9	IO10	IO11	IO12	IO9	IO10	IO11	IO12

Terminal assignment					
Unit	Terminal	Pin	Pin SMXGen2 (/2)	Description	Note
REL	X41	1 - U24_EXT	1 - A1.1	Voltage supply device +24 VDC	
		2 - U24_EXT	2 - A1.2	Voltage supply device +24 VDC Outputs	
		3 - GND_EXT	3 - A2.1	Voltage supply device 0 VDC	
		4 - GND_EXT	4 - A2.2		
	X42	1 - DI13	1 - I13	Safe digital inputs	
		2 - DI14	2 - I14		
		3 - P1	3 - T1	Clock outputs	
		4 - P2	4 - T2		
	X43	1 - DO0_P	1 - Q1	Output of the pp-switching DO 0_P (Q1_PP) / pp-switching (Q1)	from SMXGen2 (/2) alternatively via SafePLC2 parameterizable
		2 - DO0_M	2 - Q2	Output of the pn-switching DO 0_M (Q2_PN) / pp-switching (Q2)	
		3 - DO1_P	3 - Q3	Output of the pp-switching DO 1_P (Q3_PN) / pp-switching (Q3)	
		4 - DO1_M	4 - Q4	Output of the pn-switching DO 1_M (Q4_PN) / pp-switching (Q4)	
	X44	1 - K1.1	1 - Q5.1	Safe relay output	
		2 - K1.2	2 - Q5.2		
		3 - K2.1	3 - Q6.1	Safe relay output	
		4 - K2.2	4 - Q6.2		

Terminal assignment					
Unit	Terminal	Pin	Pin SMXGen2 (/2)	Description	Note
IO	X45	1 - U24_EXT	1 - A1.3	Voltage supply device +24 VDC Outputs	
		2 - U24_EXT	2 - A1.4		
		3 - GND_EXT	3 - A2.3	Voltage supply device 0 VDC	
		4 - GND_EXT	4 - A2.4		
	X46	1 - IO1	1 - IQ01	Safe digital inputs, outputs pp-switching	
		2 - IO2	2 - IQ02		
		3 - DO0.3	3 - Y3	Auxiliary outputs	
		4 - DO0.4	4 - Y4		
	X47	1 - IO3	1 - IQ03	Safe digital inputs, outputs pp-switching	
		2 - IO4	2 - IQ04		
		3 - IO5	3 - IQ05		
		4 - IO6	4 - IQ06		
	X48	1 - IO7	1 - IQ07		
		2 - IO8	2 - IQ08		
		3 - IO9	3 - IQ09		
		4 - IO10	4 - IQ10		

Terminal assignment					
Unit	Terminal	Pin	Pin SMXGen2 (/2)	Description	Note
IO	X49	1 - U24_EXT	1 - A1.5	Voltage supply device +24 VDC Outputs	
		2 - U24_EXT	2 - A1.6		
		3 - GND_EX3	3 - A2.5	Voltage supply device 0 VDC	
		4 - GND_EXT	4 - A2.6		
	X50	1 - IO11	1 - IQ11	Safe digital inputs, outputs pp-switching	
		2 - IO12	2 - IQ12		
		3 - DO0.5	3 - Y5	Auxiliary outputs	
		4 - DO0.6	4 - Y6		
	X51	1 - IO13	1 - IQ13	Safe digital inputs, outputs pp-switching	
		2 - IO14	2 - IQ14		
		3 - IO15	3 - IQ15		
		4 - IO16	4 - IQ16		
	X52	1 - IO17	1 - IQ17		
		2 - IO18	2 - IQ18		
		3 - IO19	3 - IQ19		
		4 - IO20	4 - IQ20		

Terminal assignment				
Unit	Terminal	Pin	Description	Note
PSU (not applicable SMXGen 2 (/2))	X61	1 - U24_EXT	Voltage supply device +24 VDC	
		2 - U24_EXT		
		3 - GND_EXT	Voltage supply device 0 VDC	
		4 - GND_EXT		
	X62	1 - NC	No function	
		2 - NC		
		3 - NC		
		4 - NC		
	X63	1 - NC		
		2 - NC		
		3 - NC		
		4 - NC		
	X64	1 - NC		
		2 - NC		
		3 - NC		
		4 - NC		

<i>Terminal assignment</i>					
<i>Unit</i>	<i>Terminal</i>	<i>Pin</i>	<i>Pin Release /2</i>	<i>Description</i>	<i>Note</i>
CPU	X65	1 - NC	1 - NC	No function	
		2 - NC	2 - NC		
		3 - DO0.1	3 - Y1	Auxiliary outputs	
		4 - DO0.2	4 - Y2		
	X66	1 - DI1	1 - I01	Safe digital inputs	
		2 - DI2	2 - I02		
		3 - DI3	3 - I03		
		4 - DI4	4 - I04		
	X67	1 - DI5	1 - I05		
		2 - DI6	2 - I06		
		3 - DI7	3 - I07		
		4 - DI8	4 - I08		
	X68	1 - DI9	1 - I09		
		2 - DI10	2 - I10		
		3 - DI11	3 - I11		
		4 - DI12	4 - I12		

Terminal assignment					
Unit	Terminal	Pin	Pin SMXGen2 (/2)	Description	Note
REL	X41	1 - U24_EXT	1 - A1.1	Voltage supply device +24 VDC	
		2 - U24_EXT	2 - A1.2	Voltage supply device +24 VDC Outputs	
		3 - GND_EXT	3 - A2.1	Voltage supply device 0 VDC	
		4 - GND_EXT	4 - A2.2		
	X42	1 - DI13	1 - I13	Sichere digital inputs	
		2 - DI14	2 - I14		
		3 - P1	3 - T1	Clock outputs	
		4 - P2	4 - T2		
	X43	1 - DO0_P	1 - Q1	Output of the pp-switching DO 0_P (Q1_PP) / pp-switching (Q1)	from SMXGen2 (/2) alternatively via SafePLC2 parameterizable
		2 - DO0_M	2 - Q2	Output of the pn-switching DO 0_M (Q2_PN) / pp-switching (Q2)	
		3 - DO1_P	3 - Q3	Output of the pp-switching DO 1_P (Q3_PN) / pp-switching (Q3)	
		4 - DO1_M	4 - Q4	Output of the pn-switching DO 1_M (Q4_PN) / pp-switching (Q4)	
	X44	1 - K1.1	1 - Q5.1	Safe relay output	
		2 - K1.2	2 - Q5.2		
		3 - K2.1	3 - Q6.1	Safe relay output	
		4 - K2.2	4 - Q6.2		

Terminal assignment					
Unit	Terminal	Pin	Pin SMXGen2 (/2)	Description	Note
IO	X45	1 - U24_EXT	1 - A1.3	Voltage supply device +24 VDC Outputs	
		2 - U24_EXT	2 - A1.4		
		3 - GND_EXT	3 - A2.3	Voltage supply device 0 VDC	
		4 - GND_EXT	4 - A2.4		
	X46	1 - IO1	1 - IQ01	Safe digital inputs, outputs pp-switching	
		2 - IO2	2 - IQ02		
		3 - DO0.3	3 - Y3	Auxiliary outputs	
		4 - DO0.4	4 - Y4		
	X47	1 - IO3	1 - IQ03	Safe digital inputs, outputs pp-switching	
		2 - IO4	2 - IQ04		
		3 - IO5	3 - IQ05		
		4 - IO6	4 - IQ06		
	X48	1 - IO7	1 - IQ07		
		2 - IO8	2 - IQ08		
		3 - IO9	3 - IQ09		
		4 - IO10	4 - IQ10		

Terminal assignment					
Unit	Terminal	Pin	Pin SMXGen2 (/2)	Description	Note
IO	X49	1 - U24_EXT	1 - A1.5	Voltage supply device +24 VDC Outputs	
		2 - U24_EXT	2 - A1.6		
		3 - GND_EXT	3 - A2.5	Voltage supply device 0 VDC	
		4 - GND_EXT	4 - A2.6		
	X50	1 - IO11	1 - IQ11	Safe digital inputs, outputs pp-switching	
		2 - IO12	2 - IQ12		
		3 - DO0.5	3 - Y5	Auxiliary outputs	
		4 - DO0.6	4 - Y6		
	X51	1 - IO13	1 - IQ13	Safe digital inputs, outputs pp-switching	
		2 - IO14	2 - IQ14		
		3 - IO15	3 - IQ15		
		4 - IO16	4 - IQ16		
	X52	1 - IO17	1 - IQ17		
		2 - IO18	2 - IQ18		
		3 - IO19	3 - IQ19		
		4 - IO20	4 - IQ20		

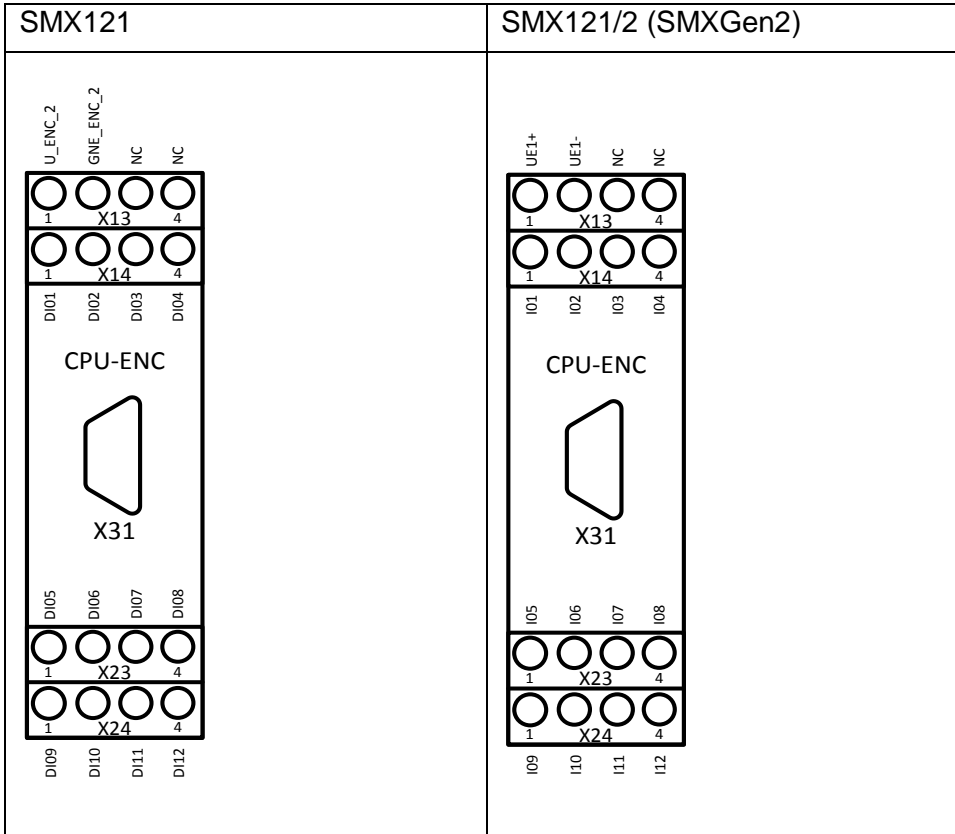
Terminal assignment					
Unit	Terminal	Pin	Pin SMXGen2 (/2)	Description	Note
IO	X53	1 - U24_EXT	1 - A1.7	Voltage supply device +24 VDC Outputs	
		2 - U24_EXT	2 - A1.8		
		3 - GND_EXT	3 - A2.7	Voltage supply device 0 VDC	
		4 - GND_EXT	4 - A2.8		
	X54	1 - IO21	1 - IQ21	Safe digital inputs, outputs pp-switching	
		2 - IO22	2 - IQ22		
		3 - DO0.3	3 - Y7	Auxiliary outputs	
		4 - DO0.4	4 - Y8		
	X55	1 - IO23	1 - IQ23	Safe digital inputs, outputs pp-switching	
		2 - IO24	2 - IQ24		
		3 - IO25	3 - IQ25		
		4 - IO26	4 - IQ26		
	X56	1 - IO27	1 - IQ27		
		2 - IO28	2 - IQ28		
		3 - IO29	3 - IQ29		
		4 - IO30	4 - IQ30		

Terminal assignment					
Unit	Terminal	Pin	Pin SMXGen2 (/2)	Description	Note
IO	X57	1 - U24_EXT	1 - A1.9	Voltage supply device +24 VDC Outputs	
		2 - U24_EXT	2 - A1.10		
		3 - GND_EXT	3 - A2.9	Voltage supply device 0 VDC	
		4 - GND_EXT	4 - A2.10		
	X58	1 - IO31	1 - IQ31	Safe digital inputs, outputs pp-switching	
		2 - IO32	2 - IQ32		
		3 - DO0.5	3 - Y9	Auxiliary outputs	
		4 - DO0.6	4 - Y10		
	X59	1 - IO33	1 - IQ33	Safe digital inputs, outputs pp-switching	
		2 - IO34	2 - IQ34		
		3 - IO35	3 - IQ35		
		4 - IO36	4 - IQ36		
	X60	1 - IO37	1 - IQ37		
		2 - IO38	2 - IQ38		
		3 - IO39	3 - IQ39		
		4 - IO40	4 - IQ40		

Terminal assignment				
Unit	Terminal	Pin	Description	Note
PSU (not applicable SMXGen 2 (/2))	X61	1 - U24_EXT	Voltage supply device +24 VDC	
		2 - U24_EXT		
		3 - GND_EXT	Voltage supply device 0 VDC	
		4 - GND_EXT		
	X62	1 - NC	No function	
		2 - NC		
		3 - NC		
		4 - NC		
	X63	1 - NC		
		2 - NC		
		3 - NC		
		4 - NC		
	X64	1 - NC		
		2 - NC		
		3 - NC		
		4 - NC		

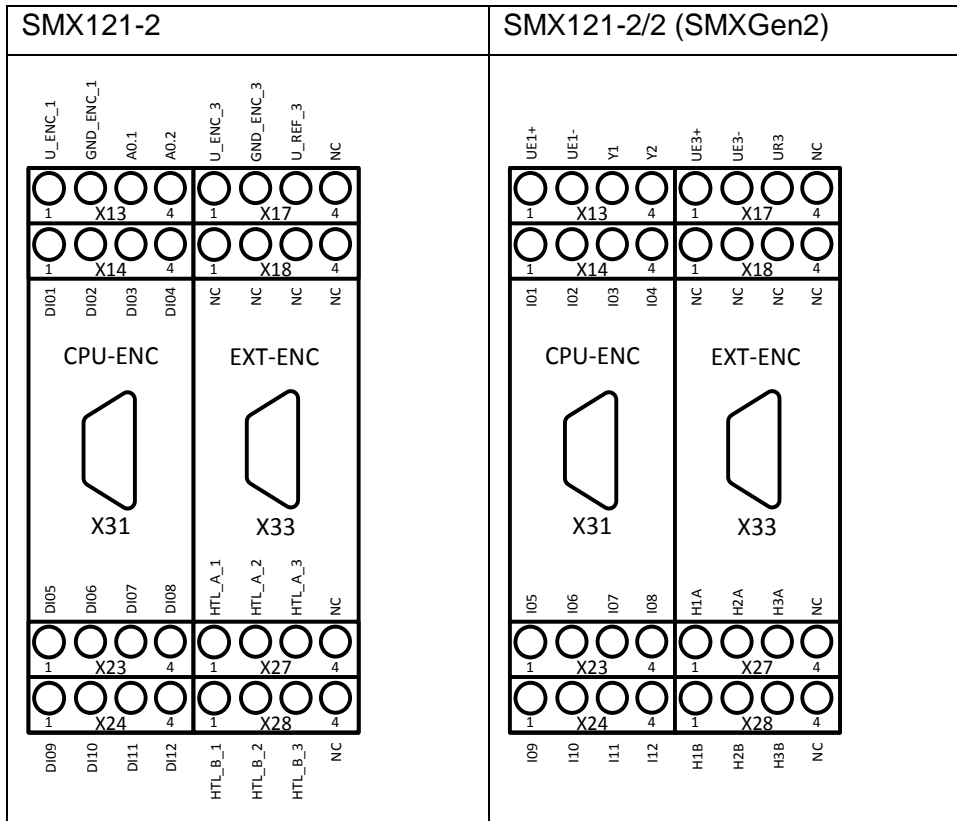
Terminal assignment					
Unit	Terminal	Pin	Pin SMXGen2 (/2)	Description	Note
CPU	X65	1 - NC	1 - NC	No function	
		2 - NC	2 - NC		
		3 - DO0.1	3 - Y1	Auxiliary outputs	
		4 - DO0.2	4 - Y2		
	X66	1 - DI1	1 - I01	Safe digital inputs	
		2 - DI2	2 - I02		
		3 - DI3	3 - I03		
		4 - DI4	4 - I04		
	X67	1 - DI5	1 - I05		
		2 - DI6	2 - I06		
		3 - DI7	3 - I07		
		4 - DI8	4 - I08		
	X68	1 - DI9	1 - I09		
		2 - DI10	2 - I10		
		3 - DI11	3 - I11		
		4 - DI12	4 - I12		

5.6.4 Terminal assignment SMX121(/2)



Terminal assignment					
Unit	Terminal	Pin	Pin SMXGen2 (/2)	Description	Note
CPU-ENC	X13	1 - U_ENC_2	1 - UE1+	Voltage supply encoder +24V DC X31	
		2 - GND_ENC_2	2 - UE1-	Voltage supply encoder 0V DC X31	
		3 - NC	3 - NC	No function	
		4 - NC	4 - NC		
	X14	1 - DI1	1 - I01	Safe digital inputs	
		2 - DI2	2 - I02		
		3 - DI3	3 - I03		
		4 - DI4	4 - I04		
	X23	1 - DI5	1 - I05		
		2 - DI6	2 - I06		
		3 - DI7	3 - I07		
		4 - DI8	4 - I08		
	X24	1 - DI9	1 - I09		
		2 - DI10	2 - I10		
		3 - DI11	3 - I11		
		4 - DI12	4 - I12		

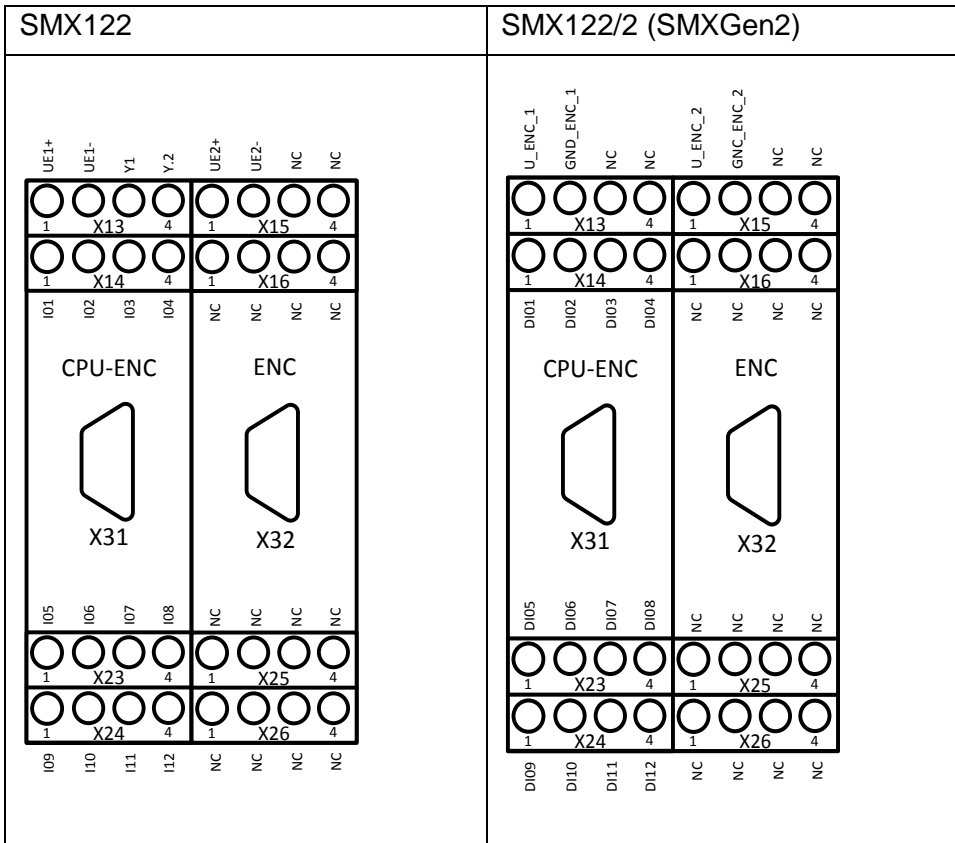
5.6.5 Terminal assignment SMX121-2(/2)



Terminal assignment						
Unit	Terminal	Pin	Pin SMXGen2 (/2)	Description	Note	
CPU-ENC	X13	1 - U_ENC_1	1 - UE1+	Voltage supply encoder +24V DC X31		
		2 - GND_ENC_1	2 - UE1-	Voltage supply encoder 0V DC X31		
		3 - NC	3 - NC	No function		
		4 - NC	4 - NC			
	X14	1 - DI1	1 - IO1	Safe digital inputs		
		2 - DI2	2 - IO2			
		3 - DI3	3 - IO3			
		4 - DI4	4 - IO4			
	X23	1 - DI5	1 - IO5			
		2 - DI6	2 - IO6			
		3 - DI7	3 - IO7			
		4 - DI8	4 - IO8			
X24	1 - DI9	1 - IO9				
	2 - DI10	2 - IO10				
	3 - DI11	3 - IO11				
	4 - DI12	4 - IO12				

Terminal assignment					
Unit	Terminal	Pin	Pin SMXGen2 (2)	Description	Note
EXT-ENC	X17	1 – U_ENC_3	1 – UE3+	Voltage supply encoder +24V DC X33	
		2 – GND_ENC_3	2 – UE3-	Voltage supply encoder 0V DC X33	
		3 – U_REF_3	3 – UR3	Reference voltage encoder X33	
		4 – NC	4 – NC	No function	
	X18	1 – NC	1 – NC	No function	
		2 – NC	2 – NC		
		3 – NC	3 – NC		
		4 – NC	4 – NC		
	X27	1 – HTL_A_1	1 – H1A	Encoder 24V	
		2 – HTL_A_2	2 – H2A	Encoder A+	
		3 – HTL_A_3	3 – H3A	Encoder Ground	
		4 – NC	4 – NC	No function	
	X28	1 – HTL_B_1	1 – H1B	Encoder 24V	
		2 – HTL_B_2	2 – H2B	Encoder B+	
		3 – HTL_B_3	3 – H3B	Encoder Ground	
		4 – NC	4 – NC	No function	

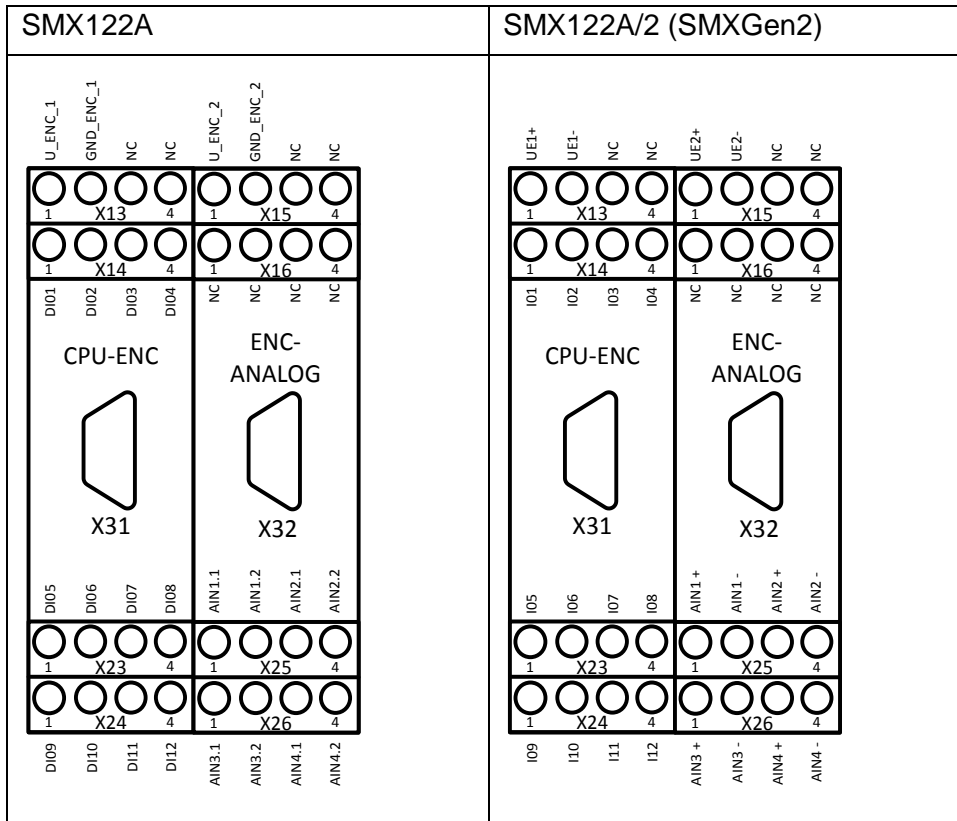
5.6.6 Terminal assignment SMX122(/2)



Terminal assignment						
Unit	Terminal	Pin	Pin SMXGen2 (/2)	Description	Note	
CPU-ENC	X13	1 - U_ENC_1	1 - UE1+	Voltage supply encoder +24V DC X31		
		2 - GND_ENC_1	2 - UE1-	Voltage supply encoder 0V DC X31		
		3 - NC	3 - NC	No function		
		4 - NC	4 - NC			
	X14	1 - DI1	1 - I01	Safe digital inputs		
		2 - DI2	2 - I02			
		3 - DI3	3 - I03			
		4 - DI4	4 - I04			
	X23	1 - DI5	1 - I05			
		2 - DI6	2 - I06			
		3 - DI7	3 - I07			
		4 - DI8	4 - I08			
X24	1 - DI9	1 - I09				
	2 - DI10	2 - I10				
	3 - DI11	3 - I11				
	4 - DI12	4 - I12				

Terminal assignment					
Unit	Terminal	Pin	Pin SMXGen2 (2)	Description	Note
ENC	X15	1 – U_ENC_2	1 – UE2+	Voltage supply encoder +24V DC X32	
		2 – GND_ENC_2	2 – UE2-	Voltage supply encoder 0V DC X32	
		3 – NC	3 – NC	No function	
		4 – NC	4 – NC		
	X16	1 – NC	1 – NC	No function	
		2 – NC	2 – NC		
		3 – NC	3 – NC		
		4 – NC	4 – NC		
	X25	1 – NC	1 – NC	No function	
		2 – NC	2 – NC		
		3 – NC	3 – NC		
		4 – NC	4 – NC		
	X26	1 – NC	1 – NC	No function	
		2 – NC	2 – NC		
		3 – NC	3 – NC		
		4 – NC	4 – NC		

5.6.7 Terminal assignment SMX122A(/2)



Terminal assignment						
Unit	Terminal	Pin	Pin SMXGen2 (/2)	Description	Note	
CPU-ENC	X13	1 - U_ENC_1	1 - UE1+	Voltage supply encoder +24V DC X31		
		2 - GND_ENC_1	2 - UE1-	Voltage supply encoder 0V DC X31		
		3 - NC	3 - NC	No function		
		4 - NC	4 - NC			
	X14	1 - DI1	1 - I01	Safe digital inputs		
		2 - DI2	2 - I02			
		3 - DI3	3 - I03			
		4 - DI4	4 - I04			
	X23	1 - DI5	1 - I05			
		2 - DI6	2 - I06			
		3 - DI7	3 - I07			
		4 - DI8	4 - I08			
X24	1 - DI9	1 - I09				
	2 - DI10	2 - I10				
	3 - DI11	3 - I11				
	4 - DI12	4 - I12				

Terminal assignment					
Unit	Terminal	Pin	Pin SMXGen2 (2)	Description	Note
ENC	X15	1 – U_ENC_2	1 – UE2+	Voltage supply encoder +24V DC X32	
		2 – GND_ENC_2	2 – UE2-	Voltage supply encoder 0V DC X32	
		3 – NC	3 – NC	No function	
		4 – NC	4 – NC		
	X16	1 – NC	1 – NC	No function	
		2 – NC	2 – NC		
		3 – NC	3 – NC		
		4 – NC	4 – NC		
	X25	1 – AIN 1.1	1 – AIN 1+	Safe analog input	
		2 – AIN 1.2	2 – AIN 1-		
		3 – AIN 2.1	3 – AIN 2+		
		4 – AIN 2.2	4 – AIN 2-		
	X26	1 – AIN 3.1	1 – AIN 3+	Safe analog input	
		2 – AIN 3.2	2 – AIN 3-		
		3 – AIN 4.1	3 – AIN 4+		
		4 – AIN 4.2	4 – AIN 4-		

5.6.8 Terminal assignment SMX122-2(/2)

SMX122-2	SMX122-2/2 (SMXGen2)
<p>Terminal assignments for SMX122-2:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> CPU-ENC (X31): 1-U_ENC_1, 2-GND_ENC_1, 3-NC, 4-NC EXT-ENC (X33): 1-NC, 2-NC, 3-NC, 4-NC EXT-ENC (X34): 1-NC, 2-NC, 3-NC, 4-NC ENC (X32): 1-NC, 2-NC, 3-NC, 4-NC DI01-DI04: 1-DI01, 2-DI02, 3-DI03, 4-DI04 HTL_A_1-3: 1-HTL_A_1, 2-HTL_A_2, 3-HTL_A_3, 4-NC HTL_B_1-3: 1-HTL_B_1, 2-HTL_B_2, 3-HTL_B_3, 4-NC DI05-DI08: 1-DI05, 2-DI06, 3-DI07, 4-DI08 X23-X26: 1-X23, 2-X24, 3-X25, 4-X26 X27-X30: 1-X27, 2-X28, 3-X29, 4-X30 	<p>Terminal assignments for SMX122-2/2 (SMXGen2):</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> CPU-ENC (X31): 1-UE1+, 2-UE1-, 3-Y1, 4-Y2 EXT-ENC (X33): 1-UE3+, 2-UE3-, 3-UR3, 4-NC EXT-ENC (X34): 1-UE4+, 2-UE4-, 3-UR4, 4-NC ENC (X32): 1-UE2+, 2-UE2-, 3-NC, 4-NC I01-I04: 1-I01, 2-I02, 3-I03, 4-I04 H1A-H3A: 1-H1A, 2-H2A, 3-H3A, 4-NC I05-I08: 1-I05, 2-I06, 3-I07, 4-I08 X23-X26: 1-X23, 2-X24, 3-X25, 4-X26 X27-X30: 1-X27, 2-X28, 3-X29, 4-X30

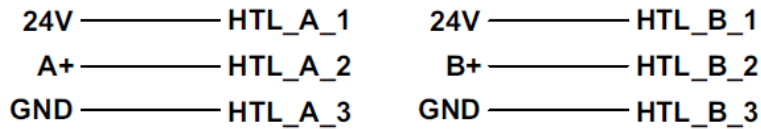
Terminal assignment						
Unit	Terminal	Pin	Pin SMXGen2 (/2)	Description	Note	
CPU-ENC	X13	1 - U_ENC_1	1 - UE1+	Voltage supply encoder +24V DC X31		
		2 - GND_ENC_1	2 - UE1-	Voltage supply encoder 0V DC X31		
		3 - NC	3 - NC	No function		
		4 - NC	4 - NC			
	X14	1 - DI1	1 - I01	Safe digital inputs		
		2 - DI2	2 - I02			
		3 - DI3	3 - I03			
		4 - DI4	4 - I04			
	X23	1 - DI5	1 - I05			
		2 - DI6	2 - I06			
		3 - DI7	3 - I07			
		4 - DI8	4 - I08			
X24	1 - DI9	1 - I09				
	2 - DI10	2 - I10				
	3 - DI11	3 - I11				
	4 - DI12	4 - I12				

Terminal assignment						
Unit	Terminal	Pin	Pin SMXGen2 (2)	Description	Note	
EXT-ENC	X17	1 – U_ENC_3	1 – UE3+	Voltage supply encoder +24V DC X33		
		2 – GND_ENC_3	2 – UE3-	Voltage supply encoder 0V DC X33		
		3 – U_REF_3	3 – UR3	Reference voltage encoder X33		
		4 – NC	4 – NC	No function		
	X18	1 – NC	1 – NC	No function		
		2 – NC	2 – NC			
		3 – NC	3 – NC			
		4 – NC	4 – NC			
	X27	1 – HTL_A_1	1 – H1A	Encoder 24V		
		2 – HTL_A_2	2 – H2A	Encoder A+		
		3 – HTL_A_3	3 – H3A	Encoder Ground		
		4 – NC	4 – NC	No function		
	X28	1 – HTL_B_1	1 – H1B	Encoder 24V		
		2 – HTL_B_2	2 – H2B	Encoder B+		
		3 – HTL_B_3	3 – H3B	Encoder Ground		
		4 – NC	4 – NC	No function		

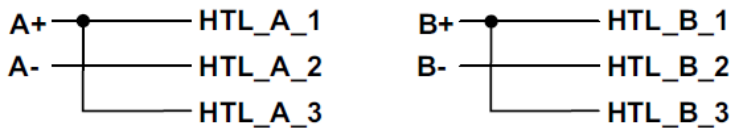
Terminal assignment						
Unit	Terminal	Pin	Pin SMXGen2 (2)	Description	Note	
EXT-ENC	X19	1 – U_ENC_4	1 – UE4+	Voltage supply encoder +24V DC X34		
		2 – GND_ENC_4	2 – UE4-	Voltage supply encoder 0V DC X34		
		3 – U_REF_4	3 – UR4	Reference voltage encoder X34		
		4 – NC	4 – NC	No function		
	X20	1 – NC	1 – NC	No function		
		2 – NC	2 – NC			
		3 – NC	3 – NC			
		4 – NC	4 – NC			
	X29	1 – HTL_A_1	1 – H1A	Encoder 24V		
		2 – HTL_A_2	2 – H2A	Encoder A+		
		3 – HTL_A_3	3 – H3A	Encoder Ground		
		4 – NC	4 – NC	No function		
	X30	1 – HTL_B_1	1 – H1B	Encoder 24V		
		2 – HTL_B_2	2 – H2B	Encoder B+		
		3 – HTL_B_3	3 – H3B	Encoder Ground		
		4 – NC	4 – NC	No function		

Terminal assignment					
Unit	Terminal	Pin	Pin SMXGen2 (2)	Description	Note
ENC	X15	1 – U_ENC_2	1 – UE2+	Voltage supply encoder +24V DC X32	
		2 – GND_ENC_2	2 – UE2-	Voltage supply encoder 0V DC X32	
		3 – NC	3 – NC	No function	
		4 – NC	4 – NC		
	X16	1 – NC	1 – NC	No function	
		2 – NC	2 – NC		
		3 – NC	3 – NC		
		4 – NC	4 – NC		
	X25	1 – NC	1 – NC	No function	
		2 – NC	2 – NC		
		3 – NC	3 – NC		
		4 – NC	4 – NC		
	X26	1 – NC	1 – NC	No function	
		2 – NC	2 – NC		
		3 – NC	3 – NC		
		4 – NC	4 – NC		

HTL encoder connection: A+/B+



HTL encoder connection: A+,A-/B+,B-



5.6.9 Terminal assignment SMX122-2A(/2)

SMX122-2A	SMX122-2A/2 (SMXGen2)
<p>Terminal assignments for SMX122-2A:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> CPU-ENC (X31): 1-U_ENC_1, 2-GND_ENC_1, 3-NC, 4-NC EXT-ENC (X33): 1-NC, 2-NC, 3-NC, 4-NC EXT-ENC (X34): 1-NC, 2-NC, 3-NC, 4-NC ENC-ANALOG (X32): 1-NC, 2-NC, 3-NC, 4-NC 	<p>Terminal assignments for SMX122-2A/2 (SMXGen2):</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> CPU-ENC (X31): 1-UE1+, 2-UE1-, 3-Y1, 4-Y2 EXT-ENC (X33): 1-UE3+, 2-UE3-, 3-UR3, 4-NC EXT-ENC (X34): 1-UE4+, 2-UE4-, 3-UR4, 4-NC ENC-ANALOG (X32): 1-UE2+, 2-UE2-, 3-NC, 4-NC

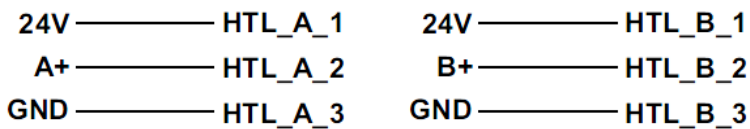
Terminal assignment						
Unit	Terminal	Pin	Pin SMXGen2 (/2)	Description	Note	
CPU-ENC	X13	1 - U_ENC_1	1 - UE1+	Voltage supply encoder +24V DC X31		
		2 - GND_ENC_1	2 - UE1-	Voltage supply encoder 0V DC X31		
		3 - NC	3 - NC	No function		
		4 - NC	4 - NC			
	X14	1 - DI1	1 - I01	Safe digital inputs		
		2 - DI2	2 - I02			
		3 - DI3	3 - I03			
		4 - DI4	4 - I04			
	X23	1 - DI5	1 - I05			
		2 - DI6	2 - I06			
		3 - DI7	3 - I07			
		4 - DI8	4 - I08			
X24	1 - DI9	1 - I09				
	2 - DI10	2 - I10				
	3 - DI11	3 - I11				
	4 - DI12	4 - I12				

Terminal assignment						
Unit	Terminal	Pin	Pin SMXGen2 (2)	Description	Note	
EXT-ENC	X17	1 – U_ENC_3	1 – UE3+	Voltage supply encoder +24V DC X33		
		2 – GND_ENC_3	2 – UE3-	Voltage supply encoder 0V DC X33		
		3 – U_REF_3	3 – UR3	Reference voltage encoder X33		
		4 – NC	4 – NC	No function		
	X18	1 – NC	1 – NC	No function		
		2 – NC	2 – NC			
		3 – NC	3 – NC			
		4 – NC	4 – NC			
	X27	1 – HTL_A_1	1 – H1A	Encoder 24V		
		2 – HTL_A_2	2 – H2A	Encoder A+		
		3 – HTL_A_3	3 – H3A	Encoder Ground		
		4 – NC	4 – NC	No function		
	X28	1 – HTL_B_1	1 – H1B	Encoder 24V		
		2 – HTL_B_2	2 – H2B	Encoder B+		
		3 – HTL_B_3	3 – H3B	Encoder Ground		
		4 – NC	4 – NC	No function		

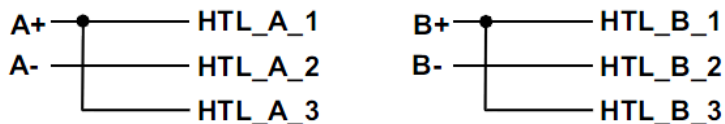
Terminal assignment						
Unit	Terminal	Pin	Pin SMXGen2 (2)	Description	Note	
EXT-ENC	X19	1 – U_ENC_4	1 – UE4+	Voltage supply encoder +24V DC X34		
		2 – GND_ENC_4	2 – UE4-	Voltage supply encoder 0V DC X34		
		3 – U_REF_4	3 – UR4	Reference voltage encoder X34		
		4 – NC	4 – NC	No function		
	X20	1 – NC	1 – NC	No function		
		2 – NC	2 – NC			
		3 – NC	3 – NC			
		4 – NC	4 – NC			
	X29	1 – HTL_A_1	1 – H1A	Encoder 24V		
		2 – HTL_A_2	2 – H2A	Encoder A+		
		3 – HTL_A_3	3 – H3A	Encoder Ground		
		4 – NC	4 – NC	No function		
	X30	1 – HTL_B_1	1 – H1B	Encoder 24V		
		2 – HTL_B_2	2 – H2B	Encoder B+		
		3 – HTL_B_3	3 – H3B	Encoder Ground		
		4 – NC	4 – NC	No function		

Terminal assignment					
Unit	Terminal	Pin	Pin SMXGen2 (2)	Description	Note
ENC	X15	1 – U_ENC_2	1 – UE2+	Voltage supply encoder +24V DC X32	
		2 – GND_ENC_2	2 – UE2-	Voltage supply encoder 0V DC X32	
		3 – NC	3 – NC	No function	
		4 – NC	4 – NC		
	X16	1 – NC	1 – NC	No function	
		2 – NC	2 – NC		
		3 – NC	3 – NC		
		4 – NC	4 – NC		
	X25	1 – AIN 1.1	1 – AIN 1+	Safe analog input	
		2 – AIN 1.2	2 – AIN 1-		
		3 – AIN 2.1	3 – AIN 2+		
		4 – AIN 2.2	4 – AIN 2-		
	X26	1 – AIN 3.1	1 – AIN 3+	Safe analog input	
		2 – AIN 3.2	2 – AIN 3-		
		3 – AIN 4.1	3 – AIN 4+		
		4 – AIN 4.2	4 – AIN 4-		

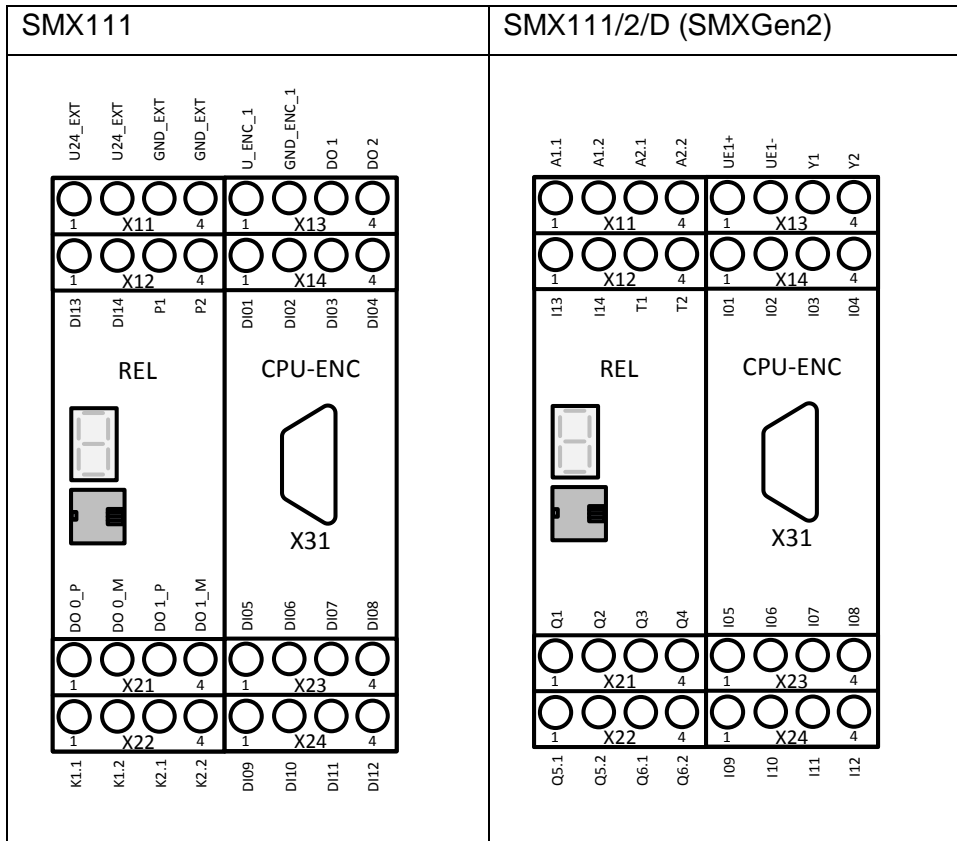
HTL encoder connection: A+/B+



HTL encoder connection: A+,A-/B+,B-



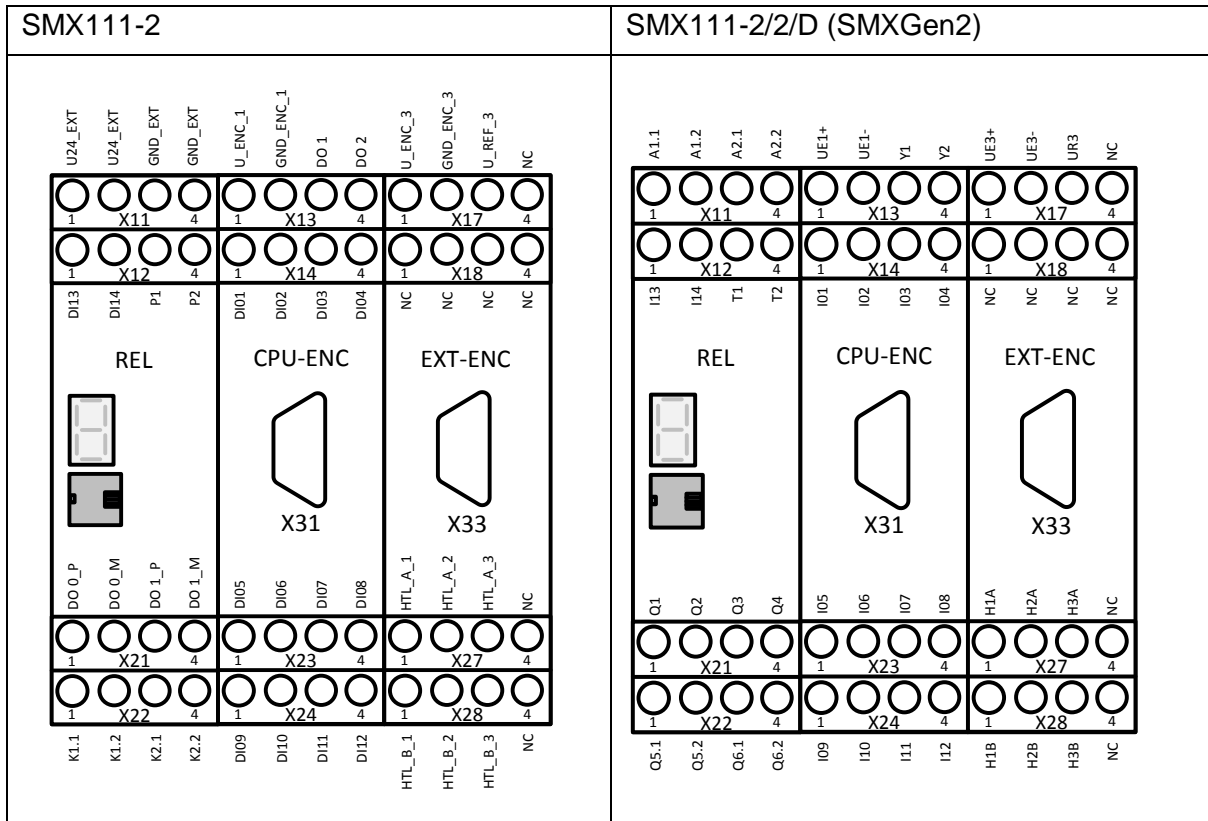
5.6.10 Terminal assignment SMX111(/2/D)



Terminal assignment					
Unit	Terminal	Pin	Pin SMXGen2 (/2)	Description	Note
REL	X11	1 - U24_EXT	1 - A1.1	Voltage supply device +24 VDC	
		2 - U24_EXT	2 - A1.2	Voltage supply device +24 VDC Outputs	from SMXGen2 (/2)
		3 - GND_EXT	3 - A2.1	Voltage supply device 0 VDC	
		4 - GND_EXT	4 - A2.2		
	X12	1 - DI13	1 - I13	Safe digital inputs	
		2 - DI14	2 - I14		
		3 - P1	3 - T1	Clock outputs	
		4 - P2	4 - T2		
	X21	1 - DO0_P	1 - Q1	Output of the pp-switching DO 0_P (Q1_PP) / pp-switching (Q1)	from SMXGen /2 alternatively via SafePLC2 parameterizable
		2 - DO0_M	2 - Q2	Output of the pn-switching DO 0_M (Q2_PN) / pp-switching (Q2)	
		3 - DO1_P	3 - Q3	Output of the pp-switching DO 1_P (Q3_PP) / pp-switching (Q3)	
		4 - DO1_M	4 - Q4	Output of the pn-switching DO 1_M (Q4_PN) / pp-switching (Q4)	
	X22	1 - K1.1	1 - Q5.1	Safe relay output	
		2 - K1.2	2 - Q5.2		
		3 - K2.1	3 - Q6.1	Safe relay output	
		4 - K2.2	4 - Q6.2		

Terminal assignment					
Unit	Terminal	Pin	Pin SMXGen2 (2)	Description	Note
CPU-ENC	X13	1 - U_ENC_1	1 - UE1+	Voltage supply encoder +24V DC X31	
		2 - GND_ENC_1	2 - UE1-	Voltage supply encoder 0V DC X31	
		3 - DO 0.1	3 - Y1	Auxiliary outputs	
		4 - DO 0.2	4 - Y2		
	X14	1 - DI1	1 - I01	Safe digital inputs	
		2 - DI2	2 - I02		
		3 - DI3	3 - I03		
		4 - DI4	4 - I04		
	X23	1 - DI5	1 - I05		
		2 - DI6	2 - I06		
		3 - DI7	3 - I07		
		4 - DI8	4 - I08		
	X24	1 - DI9	1 - I09		
		2 - DI10	2 - I10		
		3 - DI11	3 - I11		
		4 - DI12	4 - I12		

5.6.11 Terminal assignment SMX111-2(/2/D)

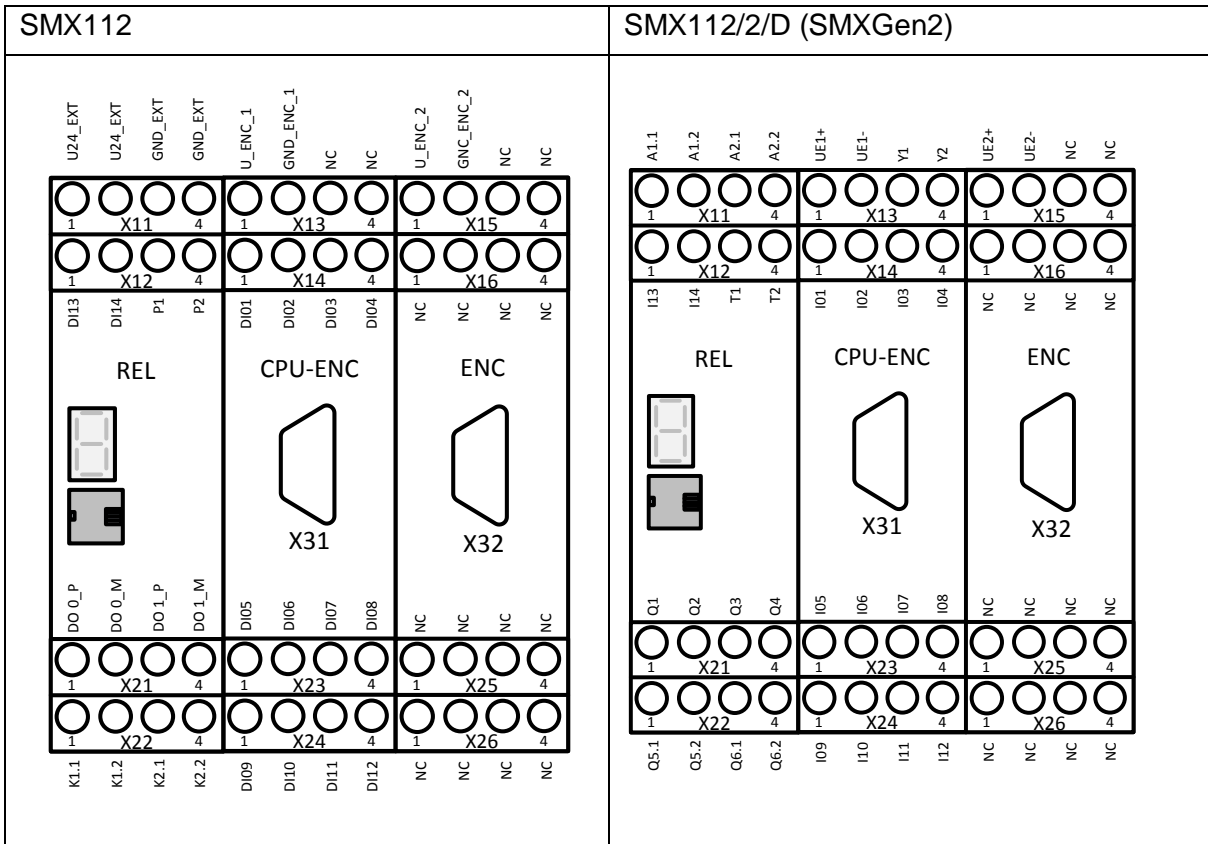


Terminal assignment					
Unit	Terminal	Pin	Pin SMXGen2 (/2)	Description	Note
REL	X11	1 - U24_EXT	1 - A1.1	Voltage supply device +24 VDC	
		2 - U24_EXT	2 - A1.2	Voltage supply device +24 VDC Outputs	from SMXGen2 (/2)
		3 - GND_EXT	3 - A2.1	Voltage supply device 0 VDC	
		4 - GND_EXT	4 - A2.2		
	X12	1 - DI13	1 - I13	Safe digital inputs	
		2 - DI14	2 - I14		
		3 - P1	3 - T1	Clock outputs	
		4 - P2	4 - T2		
	X21	1 - DO0_P	1 - Q1	Output of the pp-switching DO 0_P (Q1_PP) / pp-switching (Q1)	from SMXGen /2 alternatively via SafePLC2 parameterizable
		2 - DO0_M	2 - Q2	Output of the pn-switching DO 0_M (Q2_PN) / pp-switching (Q2)	
		3 - DO1_P	3 - Q3	Output of the pp-switching DO 1_P (Q3_PP) / pp-switching (Q3)	
		4 - DO1_M	4 - Q4	Output of the pn-switching DO 1_M (Q4_PN) / pp-switching (Q4)	
	X22	1 - K1.1	1 - Q5.1	Safe relay output	
		2 - K1.2	2 - Q5.2		
		3 - K2.1	3 - Q6.1	Safe relay output	
		4 - K2.2	4 - Q6.2		

Terminal assignment					
Unit	Terminal	Pin	Pin SMXGen2 (2)	Description	Note
CPU-ENC	X13	1 - U_ENC_1	1 - UE1+	Voltage supply encoder +24V DC X31	
		2 - GND_ENC_1	2 - UE1-	Voltage supply encoder 0V DC X31	
		3 - DO 0.1	3 - Y1	Auxiliary outputs	
		4 - DO 0.2	4 - Y2		
	X14	1 - DI1	1 - I01	Safe digital inputs	
		2 - DI2	2 - I02		
		3 - DI3	3 - I03		
		4 - DI4	4 - I04		
	X23	1 - DI5	1 - I05		
		2 - DI6	2 - I06		
		3 - DI7	3 - I07		
		4 - DI8	4 - I08		
	X24	1 - DI9	1 - I09		
		2 - DI10	2 - I10		
		3 - DI11	3 - I11		
		4 - DI12	4 - I12		

Terminal assignment					
Unit	Terminal	Pin	Pin SMXGen2 (2)	Description	Note
EXT-ENC	X17	1 - U_ENC_3	1 - UE3+	Voltage supply encoder +24V DC X33	
		2 - GND_ENC_3	2 - UE3-	Voltage supply encoder 0V DC X33	
		3 - U_REF_3	3 - UR3	Reference voltage encoder X33	
		4 - NC	4 - NC	No function	
	X18	1 - NC	1 - NC	No function	
		2 - NC	2 - NC		
		3 - NC	3 - NC		
		4 - NC	4 - NC		
	X27	1 - HTL_A_1	1 - H1A	Encoder 24V	
		2 - HTL_A_2	2 - H2A	Encoder A+	
		3 - HTL_A_3	3 - H3A	Encoder Ground	
		4 - NC	4 - NC	No function	
	X28	1 - HTL_B_1	1 - H1B	Encoder 24V	
		2 - HTL_B_2	2 - H2B	Encoder B+	
		3 - HTL_B_3	3 - H3B	Encoder Ground	
		4 - NC	4 - NC	No function	

5.6.12 Terminal assignment SMX112(/2/D)

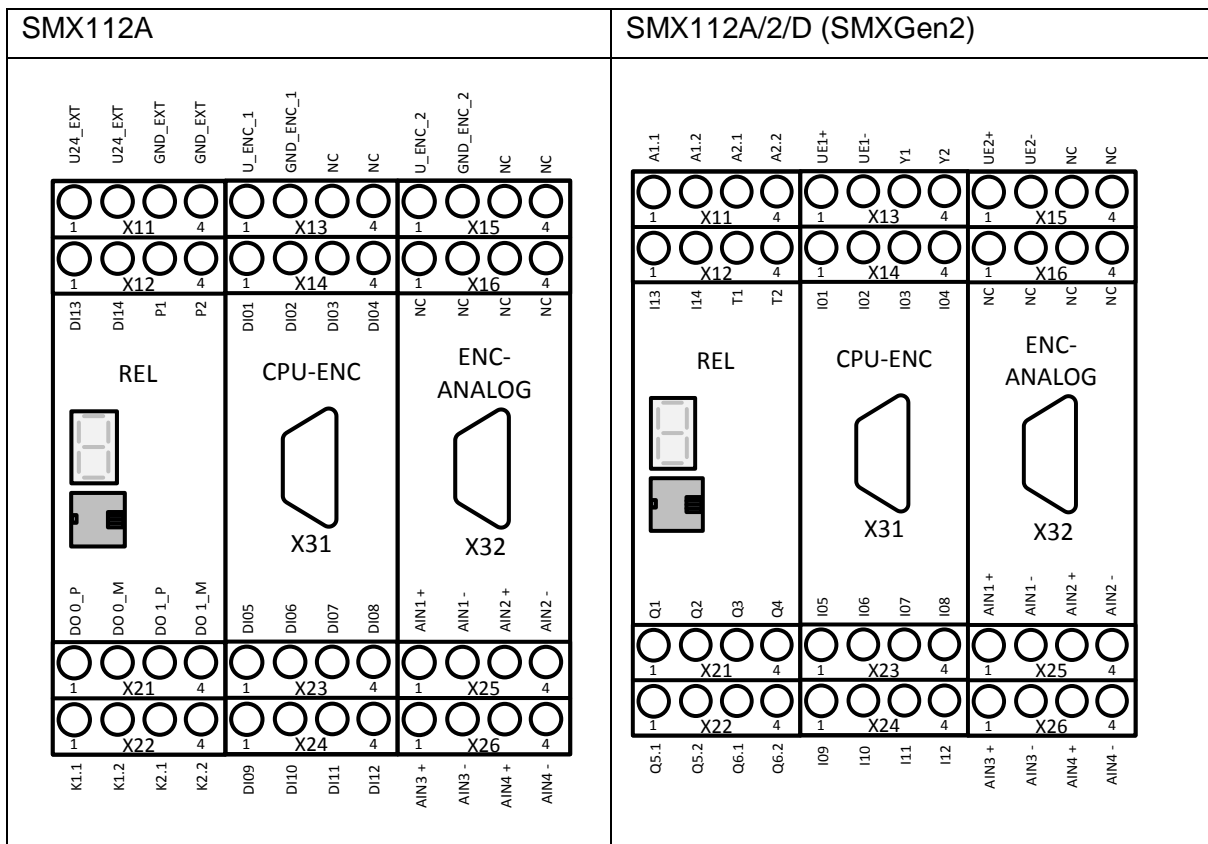


Terminal assignment					
Unit	Terminal	Pin	Pin SMXGen2 (/2)	Description	Note
REL	X11	1 - U24_EXT	1 - A1.1	Voltage supply device +24 VDC	
		2 - U24_EXT	2 - A1.2	Voltage supply device +24 VDC Outputs	from SMXGen2 (/2)
		3 - GND_EXT	3 - A2.1	Voltage supply device 0 VDC	
		4 - GND_EXT	4 - A2.2		
	X12	1 - DI13	1 - I13	Safe digital inputs	
		2 - DI14	2 - I14		
		3 - P1	3 - T1	Clock outputs	
		4 - P2	4 - T2		
	X21	1 - DO0_P	1 - Q1	Output of the pp-switching DO 0_P (Q1 PP) / pp-switching Q1	from SMXGen /2 alternatively via SafePLC2 parameterizable
		2 - DO0_M	2 - Q2	Output of the pn-switching DO 0_M (Q2_PN) / pp-switching Q2	
		3 - DO1_P	3 - Q3	Output of the pp-switching DO 1_P (Q3_PP) / pp-switching Q3	
		4 - DO1_M	4 - Q4	Output of the pn-switching DO 1_M (Q4_PN) / pp-switching Q4	
	X22	1 - K1.1	1 - Q5.1	Safe relay output	
		2 - K1.2	2 - Q5.2		
		3 - K2.1	3 - Q6.1	Safe relay output	
		4 - K2.2	4 - Q6.2		

Terminal assignment					
Unit	Terminal	Pin	Pin SMXGen2 (2)	Description	Note
CPU-ENC	X13	1 - U_ENC_1	1 - UE1+	Voltage supply encoder +24V DC X31	
		2 - GND_ENC_1	2 - UE1-	Voltage supply encoder 0V DC X31	
		3 - DO 0.1	3 - Y1	Auxiliary outputs	
		4 - DO 0.2	4 - Y2		
	X14	1 - DI1	1 - I01	Safe digital inputs	
		2 - DI2	2 - I02		
		3 - DI3	3 - I03		
		4 - DI4	4 - I04		
	X23	1 - DI5	1 - I05		
		2 - DI6	2 - I06		
		3 - DI7	3 - I07		
		4 - DI8	4 - I08		
	X24	1 - DI9	1 - I09		
		2 - DI10	2 - I10		
		3 - DI11	3 - I11		
		4 - DI12	4 - I12		

Terminal assignment					
Unit	Terminal	Pin	Pin SMXGen2 (2)	Description	Note
ENC	X15	1 - U_ENC_2	1 - UE2+	Voltage supply encoder +24V DC X32	
		2 - GND_ENC_2	2 - UE2-	Voltage supply encoder 0V DC X32	
		3 - NC	3 - NC	No function	
		4 - NC	4 - NC		
	X16	1 - NC	1 - NC	No function	
		2 - NC	2 - NC		
		3 - NC	3 - NC		
		4 - NC	4 - NC		
	X25	1 - NC	1 - NC	No function	
		2 - NC	2 - NC		
		3 - NC	3 - NC		
		4 - NC	4 - NC		
	X26	1 - NC	1 - NC	No function	
		2 - NC	2 - NC		
		3 - NC	3 - NC		
		4 - NC	4 - NC		

5.6.13 Terminal assignment SMX112A(/2/D)

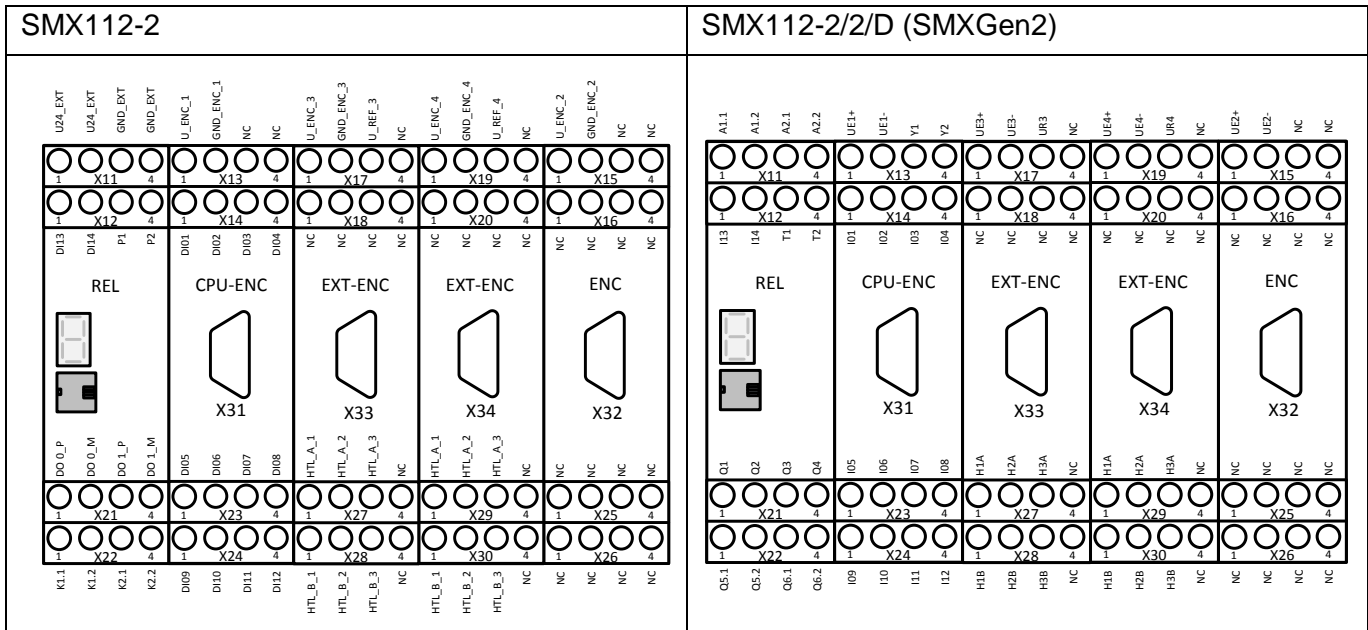


Terminal assignment					
Unit	Terminal	Pin	Pin SMXGen2 (/2)	Description	Note
REL	X11	1 - U24_EXT	1 - A1.1	Voltage supply device +24 VDC	from SMXGen2 (/2)
		2 - U24_EXT	2 - A1.2	Voltage supply device +24 VDC Outputs	
		3 - GND_EXT	3 - A2.1	Voltage supply device 0 VDC	
		4 - GND_EXT	4 - A2.2		
	X12	1 - DI13	1 - I13	Safe digital inputs	
		2 - DI14	2 - I14		
		3 - P1	3 - T1	Clock outputs	
		4 - P2	4 - T2		
	X21	1 - DO0_P	1 - Q1	Output of the pp-switching DO 0_P (Q1_PP) / pp-switching Q1	from SMXGen /2 alternatively via SafePLC2 parameterizable
		2 - DO0_M	2 - Q2	Output of the pn-switching DO 0_M (Q2_PN) / pp-switching Q2	
		3 - DO1_P	3 - Q3	Output of the pp-switching DO 1_P (Q3_PP) / pp-switching Q3	
		4 - DO1_M	4 - Q4	Output of the pn-switching DO 1_M (Q4_PN) / pp-switching Q4	
X22	1 - K1.1	1 - Q5.1	Safe relay output		
	2 - K1.2	2 - Q5.2			
	3 - K2.1	3 - Q6.1	Safe relay output		
	4 - K2.2	4 - Q6.2			

Terminal assignment					
Unit	Terminal	Pin	Pin SMXGen2 (2)	Description	Note
CPU-ENC	X13	1 - U_ENC_1	1 - UE1+	Voltage supply encoder +24V DC X31	
		2 - GND_ENC_1	2 - UE1-	Voltage supply encoder 0V DC X31	
		3 - DO 0.1	3 - Y1	Auxiliary outputs	
		4 - DO 0.2	4 - Y2		
	X14	1 - DI1	1 - I01	Safe digital inputs	
		2 - DI2	2 - I02		
		3 - DI3	3 - I03		
		4 - DI4	4 - I04		
	X23	1 - DI5	1 - I05		
		2 - DI6	2 - I06		
		3 - DI7	3 - I07		
		4 - DI8	4 - I08		
	X24	1 - DI9	1 - I09		
		2 - DI10	2 - I10		
		3 - DI11	3 - I11		
		4 - DI12	4 - I12		

Terminal assignment					
Unit	Terminal	Pin	Pin SMXGen2 (2)	Description	Note
ENC-analogue	X15	1 - U_ENC_2	1 - UE2+	Voltage supply encoder +24V DC X32	
		2 - GND_ENC_2	2 - UE2-	Voltage supply encoder 0V DC X32	
		3 - NC	3 - NC	No function	
		4 - NC	4 - NC		
	X16	1 - NC	1 - NC	No function	
		2 - NC	2 - NC		
		3 - NC	3 - NC		
		4 - NC	4 - NC		
	X25	1 - AIN 1.1	1 - AIN 1+	Safe analog input	
		2 - AIN 1.2	2 - AIN 1-		
		3 - AIN 2.1	3 - AIN 2+		
		4 - AIN 2.2	4 - AIN 2-		
	X26	1 - AIN 3.1	1 - AIN 3+	Safe analog input	
		2 - AIN 3.2	2 - AIN 3-		
		3 - AIN 4.1	3 - AIN 4+		
		4 - AIN 4.2	4 - AIN 4-		

5.6.14 Terminal assignment SMX112-2(/2/D)



Terminal assignment					
Unit	Terminal	Pin	Pin SMXGen2 (/2)	Description	Note
REL	X11	1 - U24_EXT	1 - A1.1	Voltage supply device +24 VDC	
		2 - U24_EXT	2 - A1.2	Voltage supply device +24 VDC Outputs	from SMXGen2 (/2)
		3 - GND_EXT	3 - A2.1	Voltage supply device 0 VDC	
		4 - GND_EXT	4 - A2.2		
	X12	1 - DI13	1 - I13	Safe digital inputs	
		2 - DI14	2 - I14		
		3 - P1	3 - T1	Clock outputs	
		4 - P2	4 - T2		
	X21	1 - DO0_P	1 - Q1	Output of the pp-switching DO 0_P (Q1_PP) / pp-switching Q1	from SMXGen /2 alternatively via SafePLC2 parameterizable
		2 - DO0_M	2 - Q2	Output of the pn-switching DO 0_M (Q2_PN) / pp-switching Q2	
		3 - DO1_P	3 - Q3	Output of the pp-switching DO 1_P (Q3_PP) / pp-switching Q3	
		4 - DO1_M	4 - Q4	Output of the pn-switching DO 1_M (Q4_PN) / pp-switching Q4	
X22	1 - K1.1	1 - Q5.1	Safe relay output		
	2 - K1.2	2 - Q5.2			
	3 - K2.1	3 - Q6.1	Safe relay output		
	4 - K2.2	4 - Q6.2			

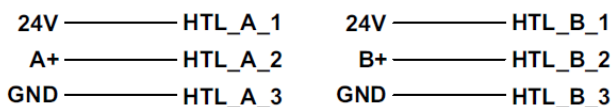
Terminal assignment					
Unit	Terminal	Pin	Pin SMXGen2 (2)	Description	Note
CPU-ENC	X13	1 - U_ENC_1	1 - UE1+	Voltage supply encoder +24V DC X31	
		2 - GND_ENC_1	2 - UE1-	Voltage supply encoder 0V DC X31	
		3 - DO 0.1	3 - Y1	Auxiliary outputs	
		4 - DO 0.2	4 - Y2		
	X14	1 - DI1	1 - I01	Safe digital inputs	
		2 - DI2	2 - I02		
		3 - DI3	3 - I03		
		4 - DI4	4 - I04		
	X23	1 - DI5	1 - I05		
		2 - DI6	2 - I06		
		3 - DI7	3 - I07		
		4 - DI8	4 - I08		
	X24	1 - DI9	1 - I09		
		2 - DI10	2 - I10		
		3 - DI11	3 - I11		
		4 - DI12	4 - I12		

Terminal assignment					
Unit	Terminal	Pin	Pin SMXGen2 (2)	Description	Note
EXT-ENC	X17	1 - U_ENC_3	1 - UE3+	Voltage supply encoder +24V DC X33	
		2 - GND_ENC_3	2 - UE3-	Voltage supply encoder 0V DC X33	
		3 - U_REF_3	3 - UR3	Reference voltage encoder X33	
		4 - NC	4 - NC	No function	
	X18	1 - NC	1 - NC	No function	
		2 - NC	2 - NC		
		3 - NC	3 - NC		
		4 - NC	4 - NC		
	X27	1 - HTL_A_1	1 - H1A	Encoder 24V	
		2 - HTL_A_2	2 - H2A	Encoder A+	
		3 - HTL_A_3	3 - H3A	Encoder Ground	
		4 - NC	4 - NC	No function	
	X28	1 - HTL_B_1	1 - H1B	Encoder 24V	
		2 - HTL_B_2	2 - H2B	Encoder B+	
		3 - HTL_B_3	3 - H3B	Encoder Ground	
		4 - NC	4 - NC	No function	

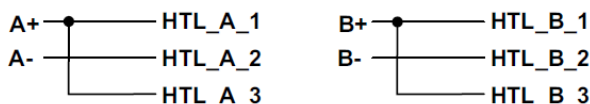
Terminal assignment					
Unit	Terminal	Pin	Pin SMXGen2 (2)	Description	Note
EXT-ENC	X19	1 – U_ENC_4	1 – UE4+	Voltage supply encoder +24V DC X34	
		2 – GND_ENC_4	2 – UE4-	Voltage supply encoder 0V DC X34	
		3 – U_REF_4	3 – UR4	Reference voltage encoder X34	
		4 – NC	4 – NC	No function	
	X20	1 – NC	1 – NC	No function	
		2 – NC	2 – NC		
		3 – NC	3 – NC		
		4 – NC	4 – NC		
	X29	1 – HTL_A_1	1 – H1A	Encoder 24V	
		2 – HTL_A_2	2 – H2A	Encoder A+	
		3 – HTL_A_3	3 – H3A	Encoder Ground	
		4 – NC	4 – NC	No function	
	X30	1 – HTL_B_1	1 – H1B	Encoder 24V	
		2 – HTL_B_2	2 – H2B	Encoder B+	
		3 – HTL_B_3	3 – H3B	Encoder Ground	
		4 – NC	4 – NC	No function	

Terminal assignment					
Unit	Terminal	Pin	Pin SMXGen2 (2)	Description	Note
ENC	X15	1 – U_ENC_2	1 – UE2+	Voltage supply encoder +24V DC X32	
		2 – GND_ENC_2	2 – UE2-	Voltage supply encoder 0V DC X32	
		3 – NC	3 – NC	No function	
		4 – NC	4 – NC		
	X16	1 – NC	1 – NC	No function	
		2 – NC	2 – NC		
		3 – NC	3 – NC		
		4 – NC	4 – NC		
	X25	1 – NC	1 – NC	No function	
		2 – NC	2 – NC		
		3 – NC	3 – NC		
		4 – NC	4 – NC		
	X26	1 – NC	1 – NC	No function	
		2 – NC	2 – NC		
		3 – NC	3 – NC		
		4 – NC	4 – NC		

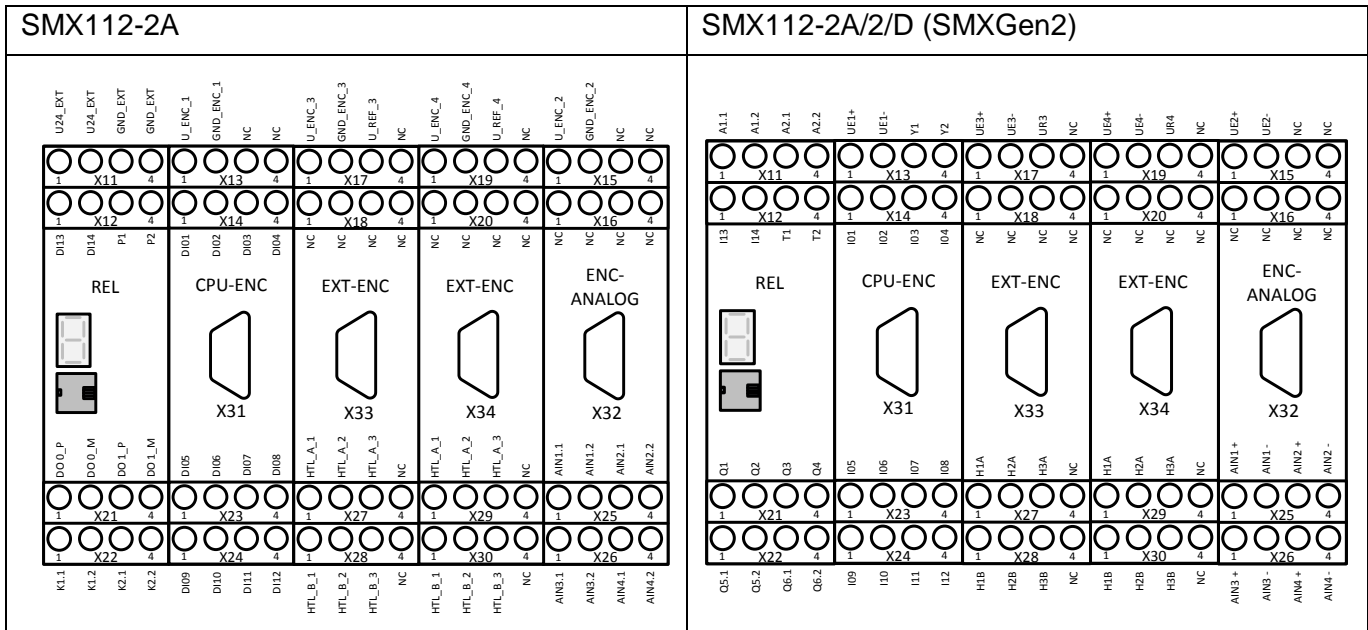
HTL encoder connection: A+/B+



HTL encoder connection: A+,A-/B+,B-



5.6.15 Terminal assignment SMX112-2A(/2/D)



Terminal assignment					
Unit	Terminal	Pin	Pin SMXGen2 (/2)	Description	Note
REL	X11	1 - U24_EXT	1 - A1.1	Voltage supply device +24 VDC	
		2 - U24_EXT	2 - A1.2	Voltage supply device +24 VDC Outputs	from SMXGen2 (/2)
		3 - GND_EXT	3 - A2.1	Voltage supply device 0 VDC	
		4 - GND_EXT	4 - A2.2		
	X12	1 - DI13	1 - I13	Safe digital inputs	
		2 - DI14	2 - I14		
		3 - P1	3 - T1	Clock outputs	
		4 - P2	4 - T2		
	X21	1 - DO0_P	1 - Q1	Output of the pp-switching DO 0_P (Q1_PP) / pp-switching Q1	from SMXGen /2 alternatively via SafePLC2 parameterizable
		2 - DO0_M	2 - Q2	Output of the pn-switching DO 0_M (Q2_PN) / pp-switching Q2	
		3 - DO1_P	3 - Q3	Output of the pp-switching DO 1_P (Q3_PP) / pp-switching Q3	
		4 - DO1_M	4 - Q4	Output of the pn-switching DO 1_M (Q4_PN) / pp-switching Q4	
X22	1 - K1.1	1 - Q5.1	Safe relay output		
	2 - K1.2	2 - Q5.2			
	3 - K2.1	3 - Q6.1	Safe relay output		
	4 - K2.2	4 - Q6.2			

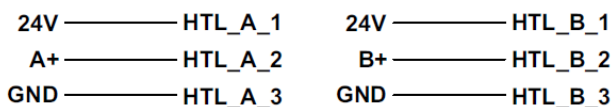
Terminal assignment					
Unit	Terminal	Pin	Pin SMXGen2 (2)	Description	Note
CPU-ENC	X13	1 - U_ENC_1	1 - UE1+	Voltage supply encoder +24V DC X31	
		2 - GND_ENC_1	2 - UE1-	Voltage supply encoder 0V DC X31	
		3 - DO 0.1	3 - Y1	Auxiliary outputs	
		4 - DO 0.2	4 - Y2		
	X14	1 - DI1	1 - I01	Safe digital inputs	
		2 - DI2	2 - I02		
		3 - DI3	3 - I03		
		4 - DI4	4 - I04		
	X23	1 - DI5	1 - I05		
		2 - DI6	2 - I06		
		3 - DI7	3 - I07		
		4 - DI8	4 - I08		
	X24	1 - DI9	1 - I09		
		2 - DI10	2 - I10		
		3 - DI11	3 - I11		
		4 - DI12	4 - I12		

Terminal assignment					
Unit	Terminal	Pin	Pin SMXGen2 (2)	Description	Note
EXT-ENC	X17	1 - U_ENC_3	1 - UE3+	Voltage supply encoder +24V DC X33	
		2 - GND_ENC_3	2 - UE3-	Voltage supply encoder 0V DC X33	
		3 - U_REF_3	3 - UR3	Reference voltage encoder X33	
		4 - NC	4 - NC	No function	
	X18	1 - NC	1 - NC	No function	
		2 - NC	2 - NC		
		3 - NC	3 - NC		
		4 - NC	4 - NC		
	X27	1 - HTL_A_1	1 - H1A	Encoder 24V	
		2 - HTL_A_2	2 - H2A	Encoder A+	
		3 - HTL_A_3	3 - H3A	Encoder Ground	
		4 - NC	4 - NC	No function	
	X28	1 - HTL_B_1	1 - H1B	Encoder 24V	
		2 - HTL_B_2	2 - H2B	Encoder B+	
		3 - HTL_B_3	3 - H3B	Encoder Ground	
		4 - NC	4 - NC	No function	

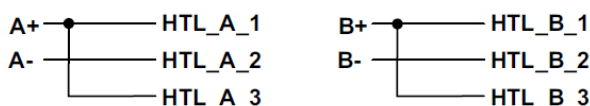
Terminal assignment					
Unit	Terminal	Pin	Pin SMXGen2 (2)	Description	Note
EXT-ENC	X19	1 – U_ENC_4	1 – UE4+	Voltage supply encoder +24V DC X34	
		2 – GND_ENC_4	2 – UE4-	Voltage supply encoder 0V DC X34	
		3 – U_REF_4	3 – UR4	Reference voltage encoder X34	
		4 – NC	4 – NC	No function	
	X20	1 – NC	1 – NC	No function	
		2 – NC	2 – NC		
		3 – NC	3 – NC		
		4 – NC	4 – NC		
	X29	1 – HTL_A_1	1 – H1A	Encoder 24V	
		2 – HTL_A_2	2 – H2A	Encoder A+	
		3 – HTL_A_3	3 – H3A	Encoder Ground	
		4 – NC	4 – NC	No function	
	X30	1 – HTL_B_1	1 – H1B	Encoder 24V	
		2 – HTL_B_2	2 – H2B	Encoder B+	
		3 – HTL_B_3	3 – H3B	Encoder Ground	
		4 – NC	4 – NC	No function	

Terminal assignment					
Unit	Terminal	Pin	Pin SMXGen2 (2)	Description	Note
ENC-analogue	X15	1 – U_ENC_2	1 – UE2+	Voltage supply encoder +24V DC X32	
		2 – GND_ENC_2	2 – UE2-	Voltage supply encoder 0V DC X32	
		3 – NC	3 – NC	No function	
		4 – NC	4 – NC		
	X16	1 – NC	1 – NC	No function	
		2 – NC	2 – NC		
		3 – NC	3 – NC		
		4 – NC	4 – NC		
	X25	1 – AIN 1.1	1 – AIN 1+	Safe analog input	
		2 – AIN 1.2	2 – AIN 1-		
		3 – AIN 2.1	3 – AIN 2+		
		4 – AIN 2.2	4 – AIN 2-		
	X26	1 – AIN 3.1	1 – AIN 3+	Safe analog input	
		2 – AIN 3.2	2 – AIN 3-		
		3 – AIN 4.1	3 – AIN 4+		
		4 – AIN 4.2	4 – AIN 4-		

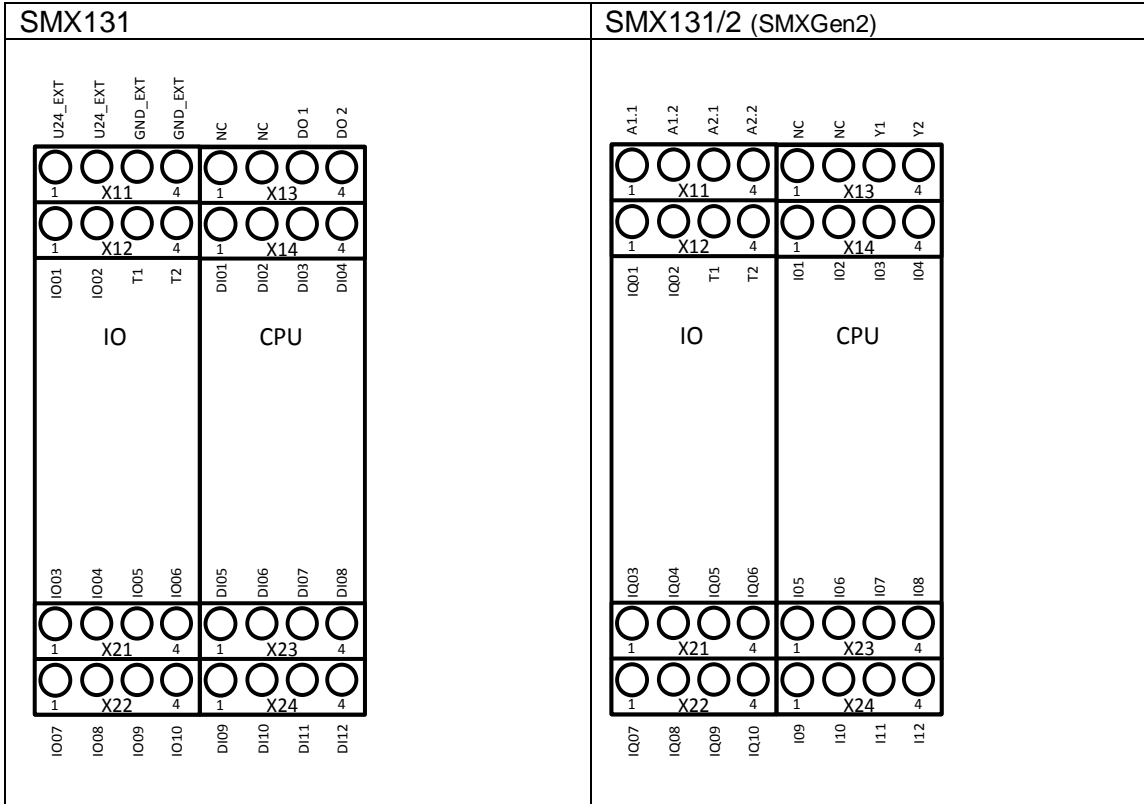
HTL encoder connection: A+/B+



HTL encoder connection: A+,A-/B+,B-



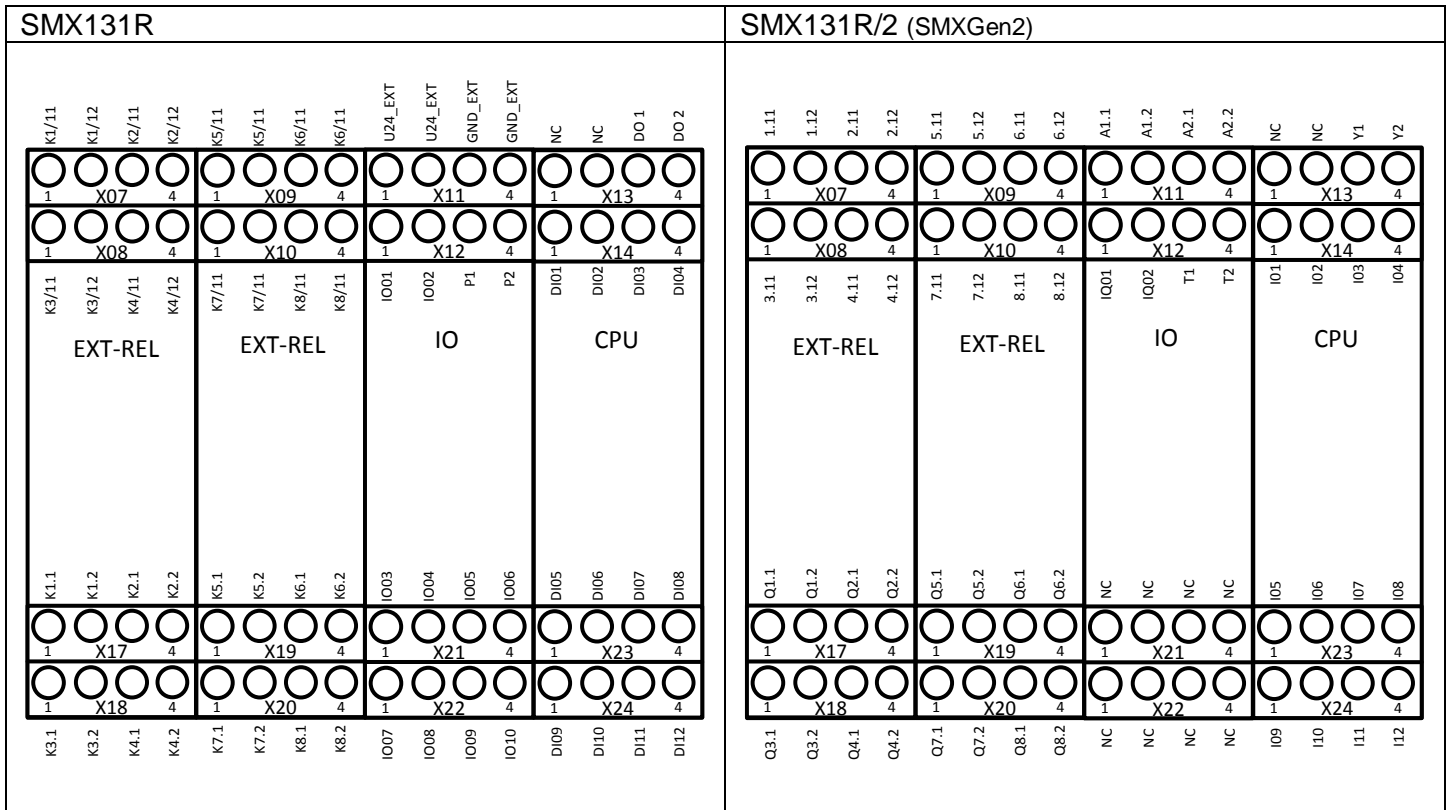
5.6.16 Terminal assignment SMX131(/2)



Terminal assignment					
Unit	Terminal	Pin	Pin SMXGen2 (/2)	Description	Note
IO	X11	1 - U24_EXT	1 - A1.3	Voltage supply device +24 VDC Outputs	
		2 - U24_EXT	2 - A1.4		
		3 - GND_EXT	3 - A2.3	Voltage supply device 0 VDC	
		4 - GND_EXT	4 - A2.4		
	X12	1 - IO01	1 - IQ01	Safe digital inputs, outputs pp-switching	
		2 - IO02	2 - IQ02		
		3 - DO0.3	3 - Y3	Auxiliary outputs	
		4 - DO0.4	4 - Y4		
	X21	1 - IO03	1 - IQ03	Safe digital inputs, outputs pp-switching	
		2 - IO04	2 - IQ04		
		3 - IO05	3 - IQ05		
		4 - IO06	4 - IQ06		
	X22	1 - IO07	1 - IQ07		
		2 - IO08	2 - IQ08		
		3 - IO09	3 - IQ09		
		4 - IO10	4 - IQ10		

Terminal assignment					
Unit	Terminal	Pin	Pin SMXGen2 (/2)	Description	Note
CPU	X13	1 - NC	1 - NC	No function	
		2 - NC	2 - NC		
		3 - DO0.1	3 - Y1	Auxiliary outputs	
		4 - DO0.2	4 - Y2		
	X14	1 - DI1	1 - I01	Safe digital inputs	
		2 - DI2	2 - I02		
		3 - DI3	3 - I03		
		4 - DI4	4 - I04		
	X23	1 - DI5	1 - I05		
		2 - DI6	2 - I06		
		3 - DI7	3 - I07		
		4 - DI8	4 - I08		
	X24	1 - DI9	1 - I09		
		2 - DI10	2 - I10		
		3 - DI11	3 - I11		
		4 - DI12	4 - I12		

5.6.17 Terminal assignment SMX131R(/2)



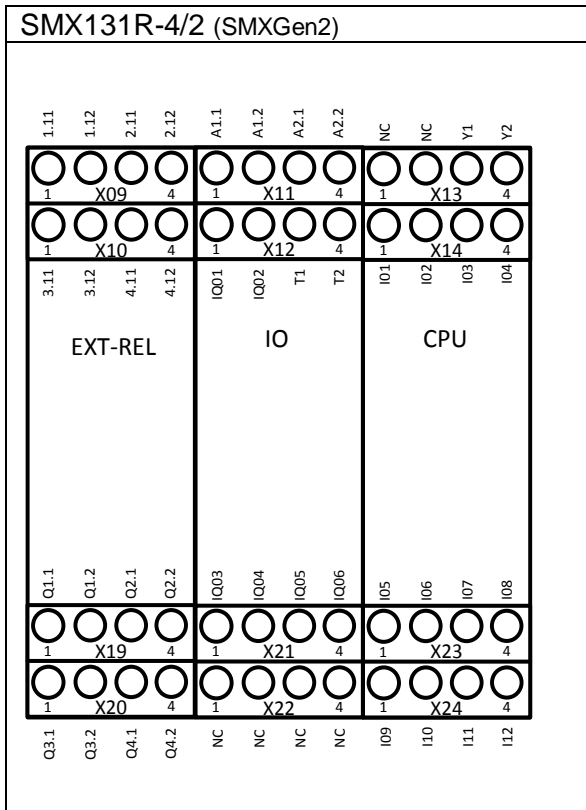
Terminal assignment					
Unit	Terminal	Pin	Pin SMXGen2 (/2)	Description	Note
EXT-REL	X07	1 – K1/11	1 – 1.11	Read back contact Relais 1	
		2 – K1/12	2 – 1.12		
		3 – K2/11	3 – 2.11	Read back contact Relais 2	
		4 – K2/12	4 – 2.12		
	X08	1 – K3/11	1 – 3.11	Read back contact Relais 3	
		2 – K3/12	2 – 3.12		
		3 – K4/11	3 – 4.11	Read back contact Relais 4	
		4 – K4/12	4 – 4.12		
	X17	1 – K1.1	1 – Q1.1	Safe relay output 1	
		2 – K1.2	2 – Q1.2		
		3 – K2.1	3 – Q2.1	Safe relay output 2	
		4 – K2.2	4 – Q2.2		
X18	1 – K3.1	1 – Q3.1	Safe relay output 3		
	2 – K3.2	2 – Q3.2			
	3 – K4.1	3 – Q4.1	Safe relay output 4		
	4 – K4.2	4 – Q4.2			

Terminal assignment					
Unit	Terminal	Pin	Pin SMXGen2 (/2)	Description	Note
EXT-REL	X09	1 - K5/11	1 - 1.11	Read back contact Relais 5	
		2 - K5/12	2 - 1.12		
		3 - K6/11	3 - 2.11	Read back contact Relais 6	
		4 - K6/12	4 - 2.12		
	X10	1 - K7/11	1 - 3.11	Read back contact Relais 7	
		2 - K7/12	2 - 3.12		
		3 - K8/11	3 - 4.11	Read back contact Relais 8	
		4 - K8/12	4 - 4.12		
	X19	1 - K5.1	1 - Q1.1	Safe relay output 5	
		2 - K5.2	2 - Q1.2		
		3 - K6.1	3 - Q2.1	Safe relay output 6	
		4 - K6.2	4 - Q2.2		
	X20	1 - K7.1	1 - Q3.1	Safe relay output 7	
		2 - K7.2	2 - Q3.2		
		3 - K8.1	3 - Q4.1	Safe relay output 8	
		4 - K8.2	4 - Q4.2		

Terminal assignment					
Unit	Terminal	Pin	Pin SMXGen2 (/2)	Description	Note
IO	X11	1 - U24_EXT	1 - A1.3	Voltage supply device +24 VDC Outputs	
		2 - U24_EXT	2 - A1.4		
		3 - GND_EXT	3 - A2.3	Voltage supply device 0 VDC	
		4 - GND_EXT	4 - A2.4		
	X12	1 - IO01	1 - IQ01	Safe digital inputs, outputs pp-switching	
		2 - IO02	2 - IQ02		
		3 - DO0.3	3 - Y3	Auxiliary outputs	
		4 - DO0.4	4 - Y4		
	X21	1 - NC	1 - NC	No function	
		2 - NC	2 - NC		
		3 - NC	3 - NC		
		4 - NC	4 - NC		
	X22	1 - NC	1 - NC		
		2 - NC	2 - NC		
		3 - NC	3 - NC		
		4 - NC	4 - NC		

Terminal assignment					
Unit	Terminal	Pin	Pin Release /2	Description	Note
CPU	X13	1 - NC	1 - NC	No function	
		2 - NC	2 - NC		
		3 - DO0.1	3 - Y1	Auxiliary outputs	
		4 - DO0.2	4 - Y2		
	X14	1 - DI1	1 - I01	Safe digital inputs	
		2 - DI2	2 - I02		
		3 - DI3	3 - I03		
		4 - DI4	4 - I04		
	X23	1 - DI5	1 - I05		
		2 - DI6	2 - I06		
		3 - DI7	3 - I07		
		4 - DI8	4 - I08		
	X24	1 - DI9	1 - I09		
		2 - DI10	2 - I10		
		3 - DI11	3 - I11		
		4 - DI12	4 - I12		

5.6.18 Terminal assignment SMX131R-4/2

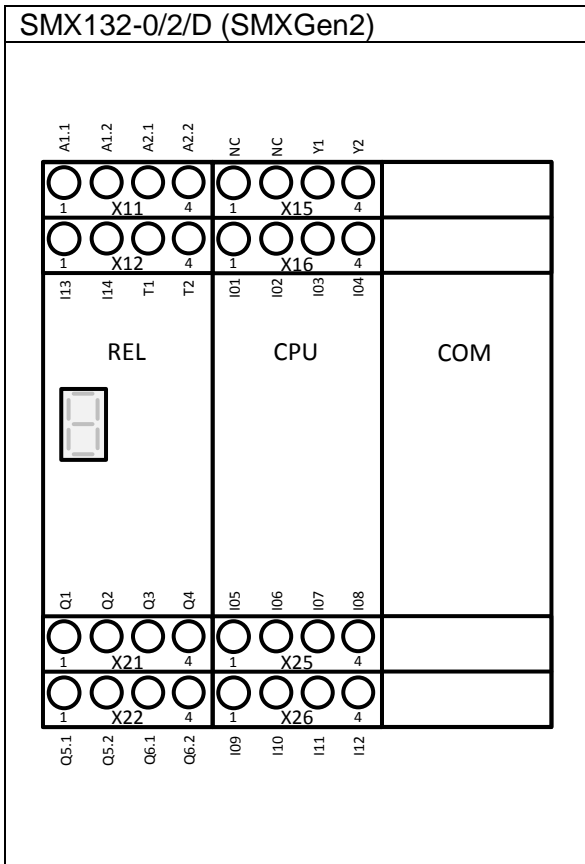


Terminal assignment				
Unit	Terminal	Pin SMXGen2 (/2)	Description	Note
EXT-REL	X09	1 – 1.11	Read back contact Relais 1	
		2 – 1.12		
		3 – 2.11	Read back contact Relais 2	
		4 – 2.12		
	X10	1 – 3.11	Read back contact Relais 3	
		2 – 3.12		
		3 – 4.11	Read back contact Relais 4	
		4 – 4.12		
	X19	1 – Q1.1	Safe relay output 1	
		2 – Q1.2		
		3 – Q2.1	Safe relay output 2	
		4 – Q2.2		
X20	1 – Q3.1	Safe relay output 3		
	2 – Q3.2			
	3 – Q4.1	Safe relay output 4		
	4 – Q4.2			

Terminal assignment				
Unit	Terminal	Pin SMXGen2 (/2)	Description	Note
IO	X11	1 - A1.3	Voltage supply device +24 VDC	
		2 - A1.4	Voltage supply device +24 VDC Outputs	
		3 - A2.3	Voltage supply device 0 VDC	
		4 - A2.4		
	X12	1 - IQ01	Safe digital inputs, outputs pp-switching	
		2 - IQ02		
		3 - Y1	Auxiliary outputs	
		4 - Y2		
	X21	1 - IQ03	Safe digital inputs, outputs pp-switching	
		2 - IQ04		
		3 - IQ05		
		4 - IQ06		
	X22	1 - IQ07		
		2 - IQ08		
3 - IQ09				
4 - IQ10				

Terminal assignment				
Unit	Terminal	Pin SMXGen2 (/2)	Description	Note
CPU	X13	1 - NC	No function	
		2 - NC		
		3 - Y1	Auxiliary outputs	
		4 - Y2		
	X14	1 - I01	Safe digital inputs	
		2 - I02		
		3 - I03		
		4 - I04		
	X23	1 - I05		
		2 - I06		
		3 - I07		
		4 - I08		
	X24	1 - I09		
		2 - I10		
		3 - I11		
		4 - I12		

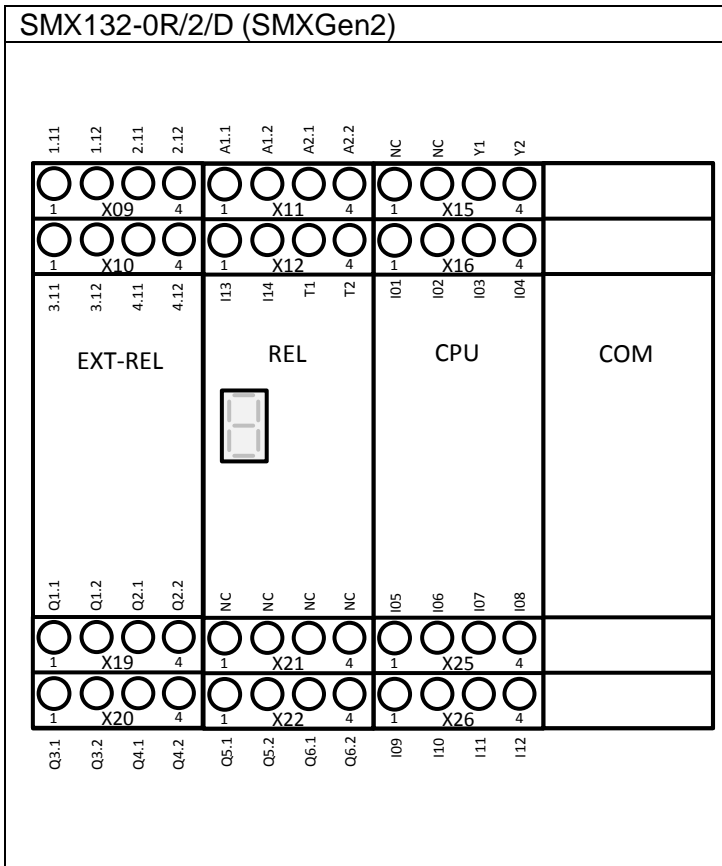
5.6.19 Terminal assignment SMX132-0/2/D



Terminal assignment				
Unit	Terminal	Pin SMXGen2 (/2)	Description	Note
REL	X11	1 - A1.1	Voltage supply device +24 VDC	
		2 - A1.2	Voltage supply device +24 VDC Outputs	from SMXGen2 (/2)
		3 - A2.1	Voltage supply device 0 VDC	
		4 - A2.2		
	X12	1 - I13	Safe digital inputs	
		2 - I14		
		3 - T1	Clock outputs	
		4 - T2		
	X21	1 - Q1	Output of the pp-switching DO 0_P (Q1 PP) /pp-switching Q1	from SMXGen /2 alternatively via SafePLC2 parameterizable
		2 - Q2	Output of the pn-switching DO 0_M (Q2 PN) /pp-switching Q2	
		3 - Q3	Output of the pp-switching DO 1_P (Q3 PP) / pp-switching Q3	
		4 - Q4	Output of the pn-switching DO 1_M (Q4 PN) / pp-switching Q4	
	X22	1 - Q5.1	Safe relay output	
		2 - Q5.2		
		3 - Q6.1	Safe relay output	
		4 - Q6.2		

Terminal assignment				
Unit	Terminal	Pin SMXGen2 (/2)	Description	Note
CPU	X15	1 - NC	No function	
		2 - NC		
		3 - Y1	Auxiliary outputs	
		4 - Y2		
	X16	1 - I01	Safe digital inputs	
		2 - I02		
		3 - I03		
		4 - I04		
	X25	1 - I05		
		2 - I06		
		3 - I07		
		4 - I08		
	X26	1 - I09		
		2 - I10		
		3 - I11		
		4 - I12		

5.6.20 Terminal assignment SMX132-0R/2/D

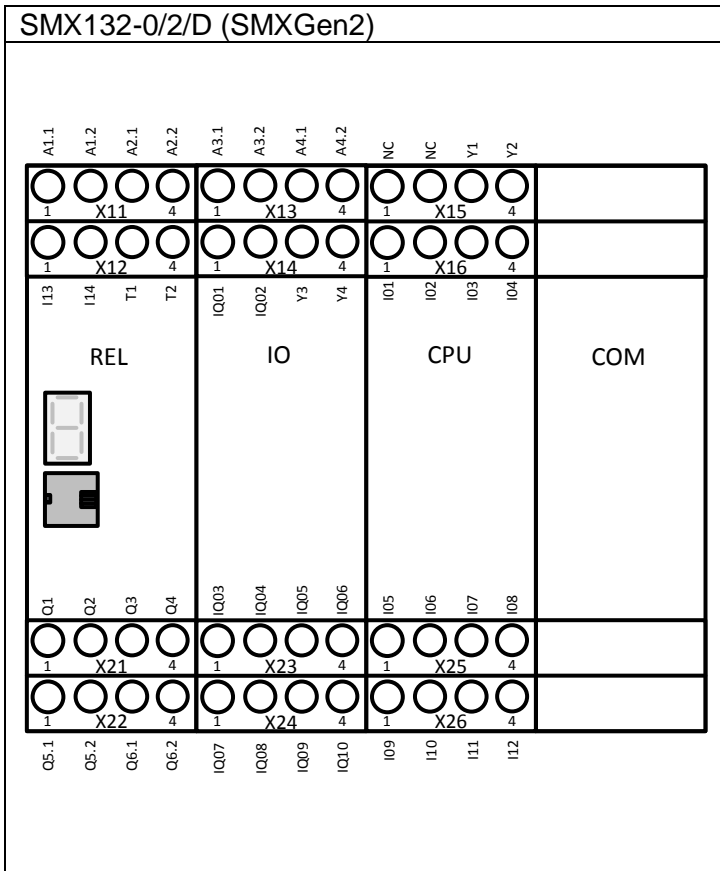


Terminal assignment				
Unit	Terminal	Pin SMXGen2 (/2)	Description	Note
EXT-REL	X09	1 – 1.11	Read back contact Relais 1	
		2 – 1.12		
		3 – 2.11	Read back contact Relais 2	
		4 – 2.12		
	X10	1 – 3.11	Read back contact Relais 3	
		2 – 3.12		
		3 – 4.11	Read back contact Relais 4	
		4 – 4.12		
	X19	1 – Q1.1	Safe relay output 1	
		2 – Q1.2		
		3 – Q2.1	Safe relay output 2	
		4 – Q2.2		
X20	1 – Q3.1	Safe relay output 3		
	2 – Q3.2			
	3 – Q4.1	Safe relay output 4		
	4 – Q4.2			

Terminal assignment				
Unit	Terminal	Pin SMXGen2 (/2)	Description	Note
REL	X11	1 - A1.1	Voltage supply device +24 VDC	
		2 - A1.2	Voltage supply device +24 VDC Outputs	
		3 - A2.1	Voltage supply device 0 VDC	
		4 - A2.2		
	X12	1 - I13	Safe digital inputs	
		2 - I14		
		3 - T1	Clock outputs	
		4 - T2		
	X21	1 - NC	No function	
		2 - NC		
		3 - NC		
		4 - NC		
	X22	1 - Q5.1	Safe relay output	
		2 - Q5.2		
		3 - Q6.1	Safe relay output	
		4 - Q6.2		

Terminal assignment				
Unit	Terminal	Pin Release /2	Description	Note
CPU	X15	1 - NC	No function	
		2 - NC		
		3 - Y1	Auxiliary outputs	
		4 - Y2		
	X16	1 - I01	Safe digital inputs	
		2 - I02		
		3 - I03		
		4 - I04		
	X25	1 - I05		
		2 - I06		
		3 - I07		
		4 - I08		
	X26	1 - I09		
		2 - I10		
		3 - I11		
		4 - I12		

5.6.21 Terminal assignment SMX132-1/2/D

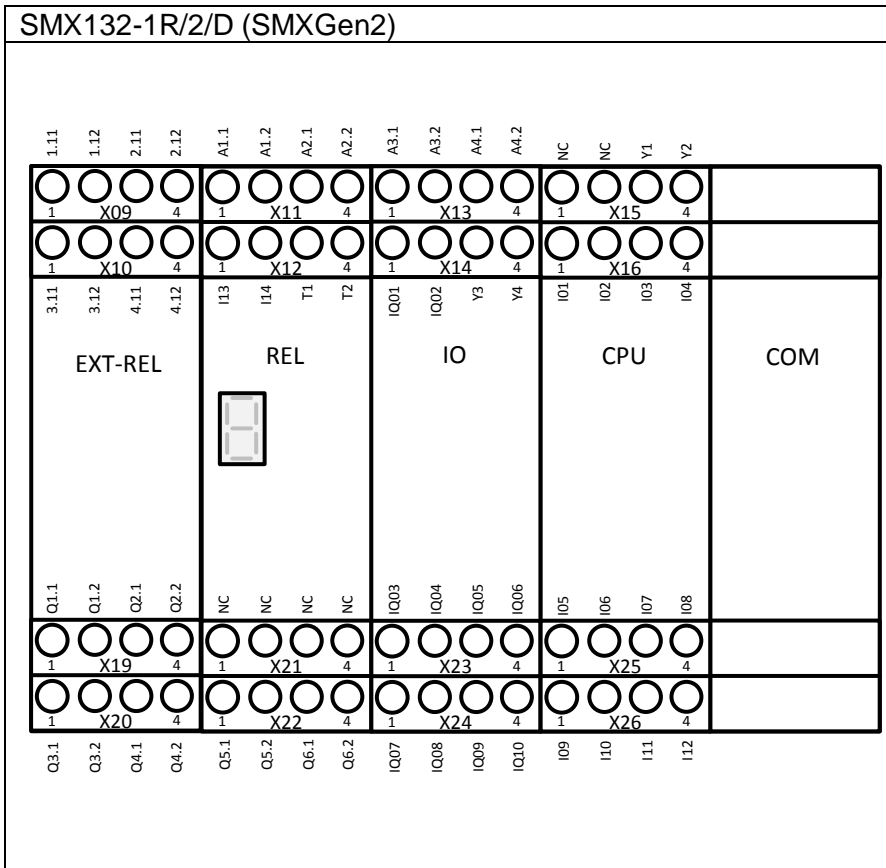


Terminal assignment				
Unit	Terminal	Pin SMXGen2 (/2)	Description	Note
REL	X11	1 - A1.1	Voltage supply device +24 VDC	
		2 - A1.2	Voltage supply device +24 VDC Outputs	
		3 - A2.1	Voltage supply device 0 VDC	
		4 - A2.2		
	X12	1 - I13	Safe digital inputs	
		2 - I14		
		3 - T1	Clock outputs	
		4 - T2		
	X21	1 - Q1	Output of the pp-switching DO 0_P (Q1_PP) / pp-switching Q1	from SMXGen2 /2 alternatively via SafePLC2 parameterizable
		2 - Q2	Output of the pn-switching DO 0_M (Q2_PN) / pp-switching Q2	
		3 - Q3	Output of the pp-switching DO 1_P (Q3_PP) / pp-switching Q3	
		4 - Q4	Output of the pn-switching DO 1_M (Q4_PN) / pp-switching Q4	
	X22	1 - Q5.1	Safe relay output	
		2 - Q5.2		
		3 - Q6.1	Safe relay output	
		4 - Q6.2		

Terminal assignment				
Unit	Terminal	Pin SMXGen2 (/2)	Description	Note
IO	X13	1 - A1.3	Voltage supply device +24 VDC Outputs	
		2 - A1.4		
		3 - A2.3	Voltage supply device 0 VDC	
		4 - A2.4		
	X14	1 - IQ01	Safe digital inputs, outputs pp-switching	
		2 - IQ02		
		3 - Y3	Auxiliary outputs	
		4 - Y4		
	X23	1 - IQ03	Safe digital inputs, outputs pp-switching	
		2 - IQ04		
		3 - IQ05		
		4 - IQ06		
	X24	1 - IQ07		
		2 - IQ08		
3 - IQ09				
4 - IQ10				

Terminal assignment				
Unit	Terminal	Pin SMXGen2 (/2)	Description	Note
CPU	X15	1 - NC	No function	
		2 - NC		
		3 - Y1	Auxiliary outputs	
		4 - Y2		
	X16	1 - I01	Safe digital inputs	
		2 - I02		
		3 - I03		
		4 - I04		
	X25	1 - I05		
		2 - I06		
		3 - I07		
		4 - I08		
	X26	1 - I09		
		2 - I10		
		3 - I11		
		4 - I12		

5.6.22 Terminal assignment SMX132-1R/2/D



Terminal assignment				
Unit	Terminal	Pin SMXGen2 (/2)	Description	Note
EXT-REL	X09	1 – 1.11	Read back contact Relais 1	
		2 – 1.12		
		3 – 2.11		
		4 – 2.12		
	X10	1 – 3.11	Read back contact Relais 3	
		2 – 3.12		
		3 – 4.11		
		4 – 4.12		
	X19	1 – Q1.1	Safe relay output 1	
		2 – Q1.2		
		3 – Q2.1	Safe relay output 2	
		4 – Q2.2		
X20	1 – Q3.1	Safe relay output 3		
	2 – Q3.2			
	3 – Q4.1	Safe relay output 4		
	4 – Q4.2			

Terminal assignment				
Unit	Terminal	Pin SMXGen2 (/2)	Description	Note
REL	X11	1 - A1.1	Voltage supply device +24 VDC Outputs	
		2 - A1.2		
		3 - A2.1	Voltage supply device 0 VDC	
		4 - A2.2		
	X12	1 - I13	Safe digital inputs	
		2 - I14		
		3 - T1	Clock outputs	
		4 - T2		
	X21	1 - NC	No function	
		2 - NC		
		3 - NC		
		4 - NC		
	X22	1 - Q5.1	Safe relay output	
		2 - Q5.2		
		3 - Q6.1	Safe relay output	
		4 - Q6.2		

Terminal assignment				
Unit	Terminal	Pin SMXGen2 (/2)	Description	Note
IO	X13	1 - A1.3	Voltage supply device +24 VDC	
		2 - A1.4	Voltage supply device +24 VDC Outputs	
		3 - A2.3	Voltage supply device 0 VDC	
		4 - A2.4		
	X14	1 - IQ01	Safe digital inputs, outputs pp-switching	
		2 - IQ02		
		3 - Y3	Auxiliary outputs	
		4 - Y4		
	X23	1 - IQ03	Safe digital inputs, outputs pp-switching	
		2 - IQ04		
		3 - IQ05		
		4 - IQ06		
	X24	1 - IQ07		
		2 - IQ08		
		3 - IQ09		
		4 - IQ10		

Terminal assignment				
Unit	Terminal	Pin SMXGen2 (/2)	Description	Note
CPU	X15	1 - NC	No function	
		2 - NC		
		3 - Y1	Auxiliary outputs	
		4 - Y2		
	X16	1 - I01	Safe digital inputs	
		2 - I02		
		3 - I03		
		4 - I04		
	X25	1 - I05		
		2 - I06		
		3 - I07		
		4 - I08		
	X26	1 - I09		
		2 - I10		
		3 - I11		
		4 - I12		

5.7 External 24 VDC – voltage supply

The SMX 100 module requires a 24 VDC power supply with PELV characteristic in accordance to EN50178. Please comply with the following boundary conditions when planning and installing the specified power supply unit:

Strictly comply with the minimum and maximum supply voltage tolerance.

Nominal voltage	DC 24 V
Minimum: 24 VDC – 15%	20,4 VDC
Maximum: 24 VDC + 20%	28,8 VDC

We recommend the use of a 3-phase power supply unit or an electronically controlled device to achieve an as little as possible residual ripple of the supply voltage. The power supply unit must meet the requirements acc. to EN61000-4-11 (voltage dip).

Connecting cables must comply with local regulations.

The interference voltage resistance of the SMX module is 32 VDC (protected by suppressor diodes at the input).

Safety note:

Each circuit board of a module must be supplied separately with the supply voltage (and safety device)! The respective terminals are thereby marked by “U24_ext”; two adjacent terminals “U24_ext” in a plug are internally bridged.

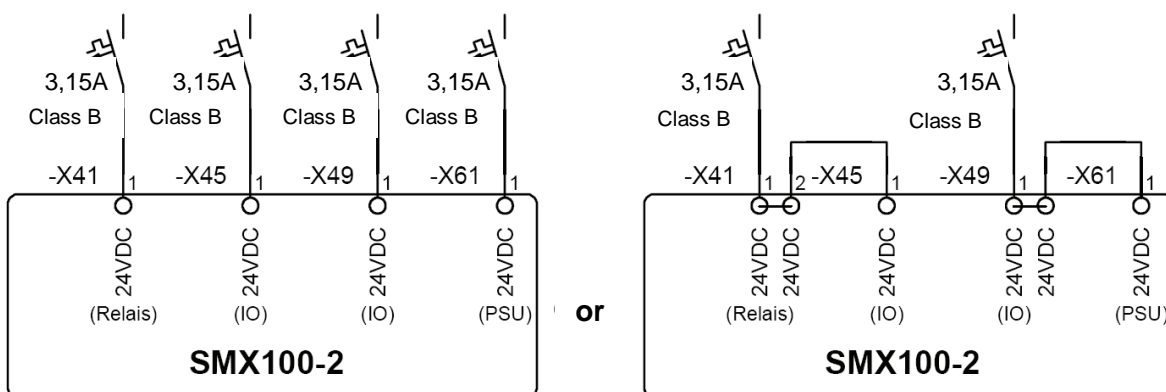
Safety note:

- The 24V DC supply connections of the SMX module must be individually protected with an external fuse 3.15A (min 30 VDC) and must be placed near by the terminals of the modules.

Recommended fuse type:

3.15A circuit breaker (Class B) or safety fuse (inert).

- Depending on the electricity requirements, fuses can be used based on total requirement or for each I/O group.



Connection example with separate IO supply!
(when connecting IO's with high current consumption)

Connection example with bridged IO supply!
(when connecting IO's with high current consumption)

Comments:

Reliable galvanic isolation from the 230 VAC (120 VAC cULus) or 400 VAC network must be guaranteed in any case. This requires the selection of power supply units complying with the regulations DIN VDE 0551, EN 60 742 and DIN VDE 0160. Besides choosing a suitable device you must also ensure equipotent bonding between PE and 0-VDC on the secondary side. A power supply used for voltage supply must deliver at least double the electricity, which is fused completely (z.B. 4 x 3.15A = 12.6A Power supply: at least 25.A).

⚠ Safety note:

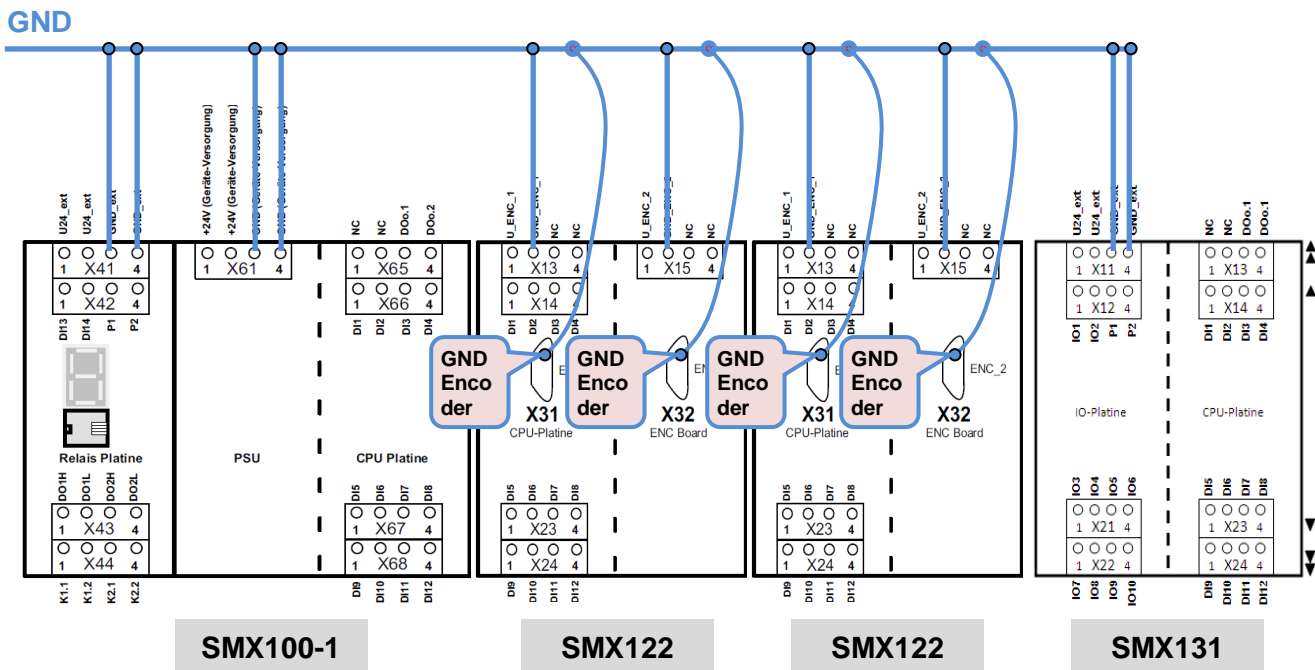
- All GND connections of the devices, which are connected to the inputs of the SMX100 module must be connected to the GND of the SMX100 (voltage supply).

Inputs of the SMX100 are:

- Digital inputs
- Digital I/Os
- Analogue inputs
- Encoder connections

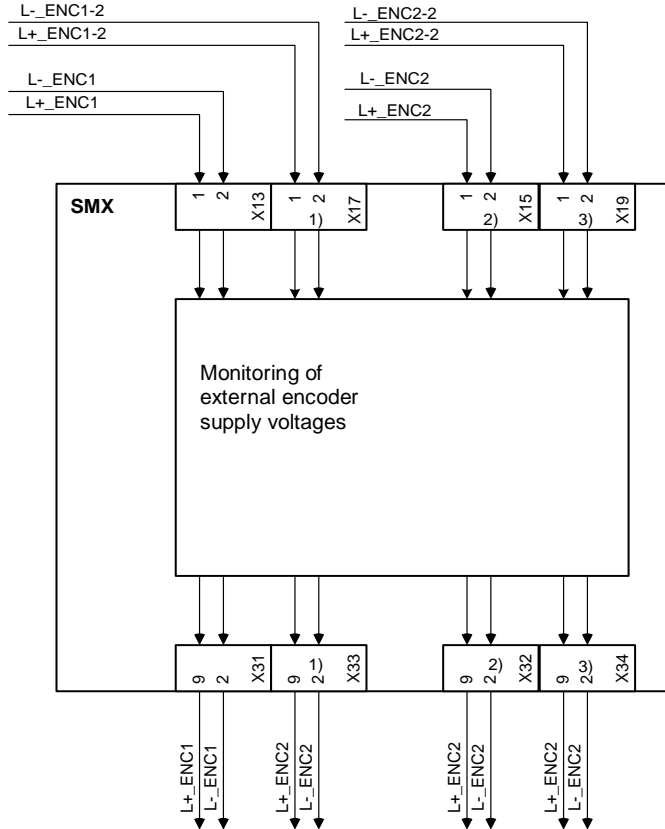
Comments:

The connections GND_ENC and AIN are not internally connected to GND!



5.8 Connection of the external encoder supply

5.8.1 Incremental, HTL, SIN/COS, SSI



- 1) Only SMX111-2, SMX121-2(/2) and SMX112-2, SMX122-2(A)(/2)
- 2) Only SMX112, SMX122(A) (/2) and SMX112-2, SMX122-2(A) (/2)
- 3) Only SMX112-2, SMX122-2(A) (/2)

The SMX100 module supports encoder voltages of 5V, 8V, 10 V, 12V and 24V, which are internally monitored in accordance with the chosen configuration. If an encoder system is not supplied through the SMX module, a supply voltage still needs to be connected to terminal X13 or X15 and configured accordingly. The encoder supply must be protected with a fuse of max. 2A.

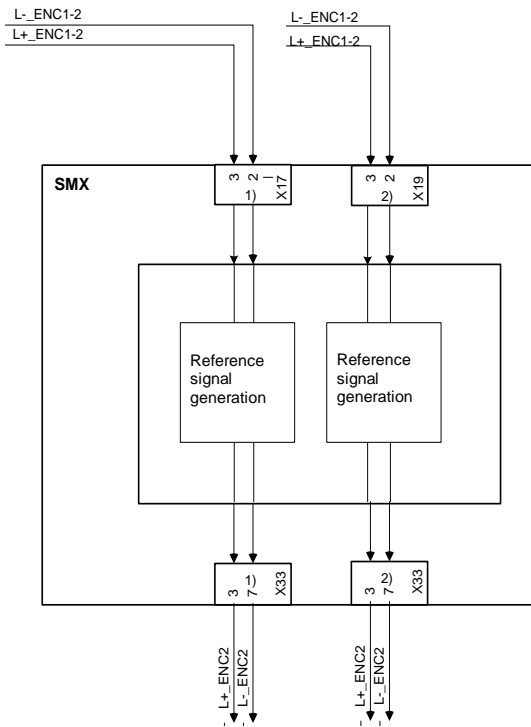
Safety note:

- The GND connection of the encoder must be connected to the GND of the SMX

Monitoring of the supply voltage in accordance with the chosen nominal voltage:

Nominal voltage	Minimum voltage	Maximum voltage
5 VDC	4,4 VDC	5,6 VDC
8 VDC	7 VDC	9 VDC
10 VDC	8 VDC	12 VDC
12 VDC	10 VDC	14 VDC
24 VDC	20 VDC	29 VDC

5.8.2 Resolver



- 1) Only SMX111-2, SMX121-2(/2) and SMX112-2, SMX122-2(A)/2)
- 2) Only SMX112-2, SMX122-2(A)/2)

When using resolvers in Master-Mode an additional 24V DC power supply is required for generating the reference signal.

The encoder supply must be protected with a fuse of max. 2A.

Supply voltage monitoring:

Nominal voltage	Minimum voltage	Maximum voltage
24 VDC	20 VDC	29 VDC

5.9 Connection of digital inputs

The modules of SMX100 systems have over 14 (SMX100-1/100-2/100-4 und SMX111, SMX111-2, SMX112, SMX112-2, SMX132) and 12 (SMX121, SMX121-2, SMX122, SMX122-2, SMX131) safe digital inputs. These are suitable for connecting single or two-channel signals with and without cycling, or without cross-shortening test.

The connected signals must have a "High"-level of DC 24 V (DC +15 V..+ DC 30 V) and a "Low"-level of (DC -3 V... DC +5 V, Type1 acc. to IEC 61131-2). The inputs are provided with internal input filters.

A device internal diagnostic function cyclically tests the correct function of the inputs including the input filters. A detected fault will set the SMX100 into an alarm status. At the same time all outputs of the SMX100 are rendered passive.

Besides the actual signal inputs, the SMX100- module holds two clock inputs T1 and T2 available. The clock outputs are switching-type 24 VDC outputs. The clock outputs are solely intended for monitoring the digital inputs (I01 ... I14) and cannot be used for any other function within the application.

The switching frequency is 125 Hz for each output. In the planning stage one must bear in mind that the outputs may only be loaded with a total current of max. 250 mA.

Furthermore, approved OSSD-outputs can be connected to the inputs I01-I14 without limitation.

In case of single-channel use of the inputs, the achievable safety level must be limited to SIL 2 or PL d, if the safety function is demanded at regular intervals.

A safety related use of the inputs is generally only intended in connection with the pulse outputs.

If pulse outputs are not used, short circuits in the external wiring between different inputs and against the supply voltage for the SMX100 must be ruled out by external measures, appropriate routing of cables in particular.

Each input of the SMX100 module can be configured individually for the following signal sources:

- Input is assigned to the cycle T1
- Input is assigned to the cycle T2
- Input assigned to continuous voltage DC 24 V

5.10 Connection of analog inputs

Max. 2 analogue signals can be safely processed for SMX112A(/2), SMX112-2A(/2), SMX122A(/2), SMX122-2A(/2) with analogue processing:

The analog inputs can be connected as follows:

	<i>min</i>	<i>max</i>
Voltage	-7VDC	+10VDC

Note:

The modules can optionally be equipped with voltage and, or current inputs.

 **Safety note:**

- The GND connection AIN must be connected to the GND of the SMX.

5.11 Connection of position and speed sensors

5.11.1 General notes

Depending on the module type, SMX100 axis expansion module (SMX1xx(/2)) has external encoder interface to connection conventional incremental and absolute encoders. The encoder interfaces can be configured as incremental, SIN/COS, absolute SSI encoder or as Proxy. It is also possible to connect 2 incremental signal generating sensors (e.g. proximity switches) to the counting inputs of the SMX100 module. The signals must each be read in with normal and complementary track.

IMPORTANT

The voltage supply of the encoder system uses the dedicated terminals on the SMX100 module. This voltage is applied to the encoder plug and monitored by an internal diagnostic process.

When the sensor is supplied with an external voltage, this voltage must be supplied through the encoder plug. The corresponding terminal (encoder supply voltage) on the SMX100 module remains unoccupied.

If an external sensor voltage supply is not recirculated through the encoder plug, any failure of this supply must be included in the fault examination of the overall system. This, in particular, requires evidence that this fault is detected or can be excluded when the specified operating voltage of the overall system is fallen short of / exceeded.

EMC - measures such as shielding etc. must be observed.

The two encoders must be non-interacting to each other. This applies for both the electrical as well as the mechanical part.

If both encoders are coupled to the facility to be monitored via common mechanical parts, the connection must be positively designed and should not have any parts that are susceptible to wear (chains, toothed belts, etc.). Should this be the case, additional monitoring features for the mechanical connection of the sensors (e.g. monitoring of a toothed belt) are required).

In case of an active position processing at least one absolute value encoder must be used.

When using two equivalent sensors one must make sure that the sensor with the higher resolution is configured as sensor 1 (process sensor) and the sensor with the lower resolution as sensor 2 (reference sensor).

Safety note:

- The GND connections of the encoders must be connected to the GND of the SMX. This applies in the same way also to resolvers.

Attention:

The sensor connections must neither be plugged on nor pulled off during operation. This could cause damage to electrical components of the encoder. Always de-energize connected encoders and the SMX100 module **before** plugging on or pulling off encoder connections.

For the data and Clock signals, track A and track B or Sin/Cos, lines twisted in pairs are to be used for the signal transmission acc. to RS485 standard. The wire cross-section must in each individual case be chosen in compliance with the current consumption of the encoder and the cable length required for the installation.

The following applies when using absolute encoders:

In Slave-mode the clock signal is generated by an external process and is read in by the SMX 100 module together with the data signal. This type of reading causes a beat which results in a reading fault of the following magnitude:

$$F = (\text{reading time of encoder by external system [ms]} / 8 \text{ [ms]}) * 100 \%$$

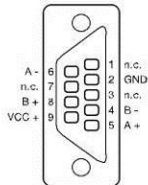
The size of the resulting reading fault F must be taken into account when determining the thresholds in the applied monitoring functions, because this fault cannot be compensated!

5.11.2 Assignment of encoder interface

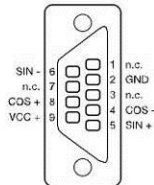
X31/X32¹⁾

Sensor assignment

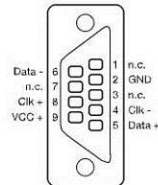
Incremental - Encoder



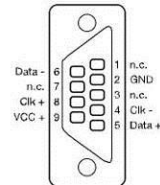
SIN/COS



Absolute encoder



SSI - Listener

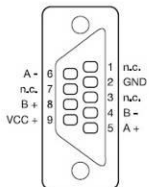


¹⁾ only SMX111(/2), SMX121(/2), SMX112(/2), SMX122(/2)

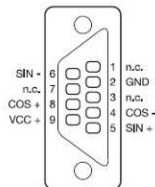
X33/X34²⁾

Sensor assignment

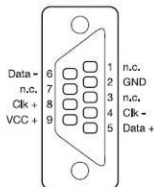
Incremental - Encoder



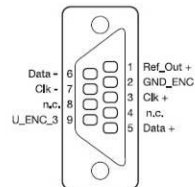
SIN/COS



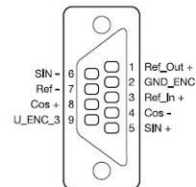
SSI - Absolut X 31/X 32



SSI - Absolute X 31/X 32



Resolver



²⁾only SMX111-2(/2), SMX121-2(/2), SMX112-2(/2), SMX122-2(/2)

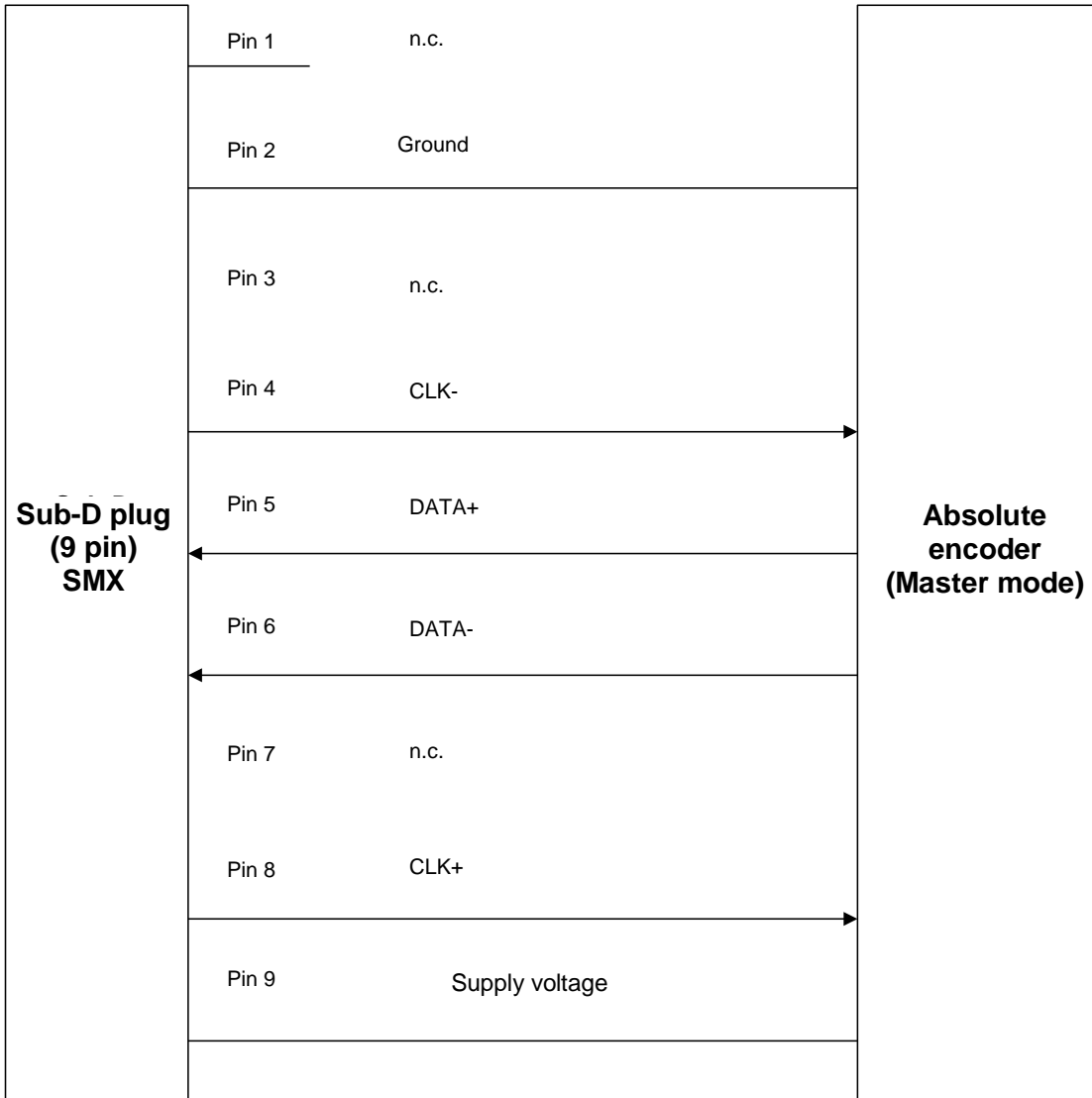
NOTE:

With the terminals X33/X34 of the modules SMX111-2 (/2), SMX121-2 (/2) and SMX112-2 (/2), SMX122-2 (/2), the connection is inverse to the presented and to X31/X32 with application of a incremental counting system.

With encoders not connected inversely to X33/X34, the direction of rotation is thus indicated inversely. The indicated direction of rotation can be corrected in the software. (see. programming manual S. 90 FF - "Direction UP/down")

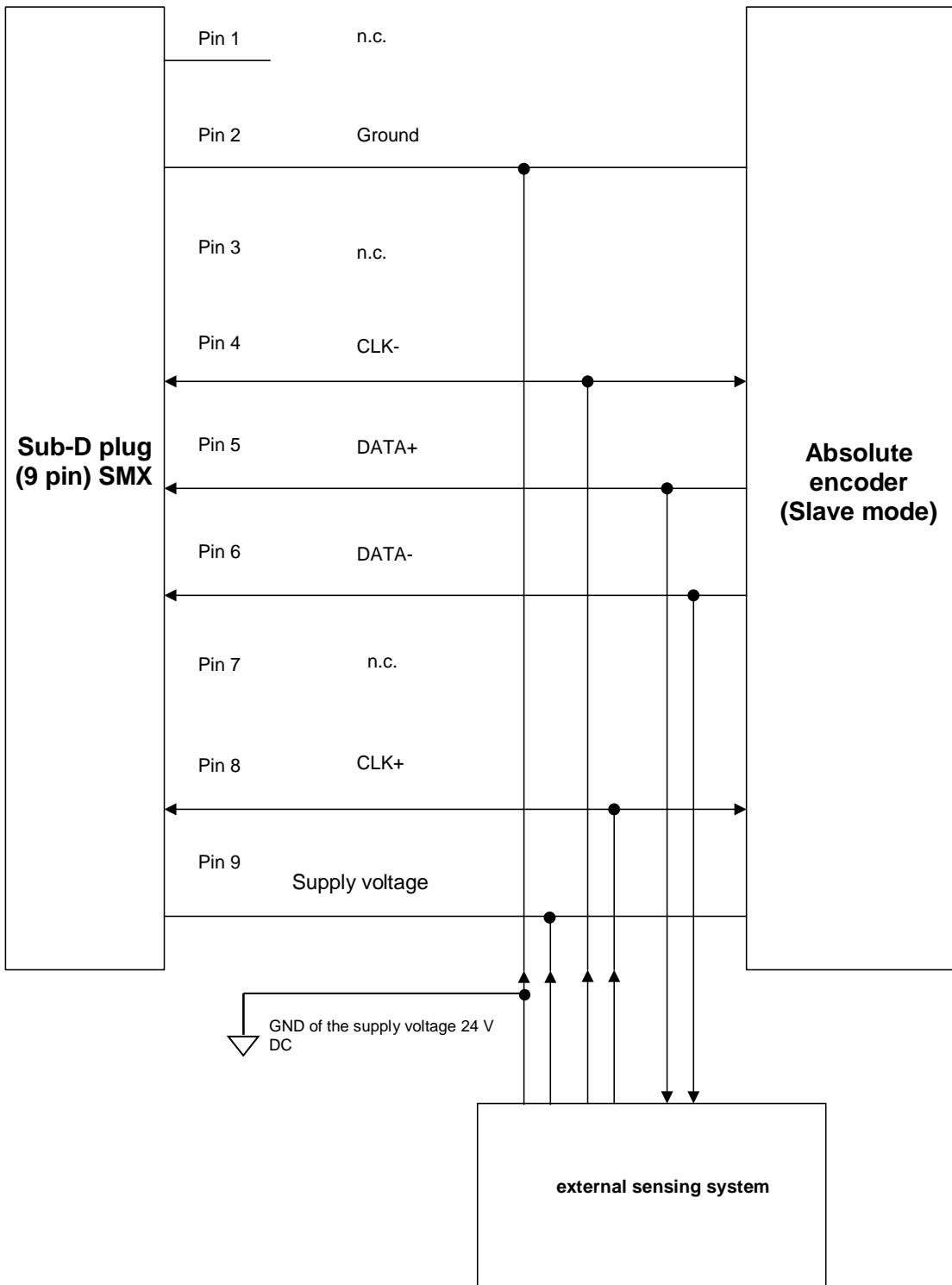
5.11.3 Connection variants

5.11.3.1 Connection of absolute encoders as master



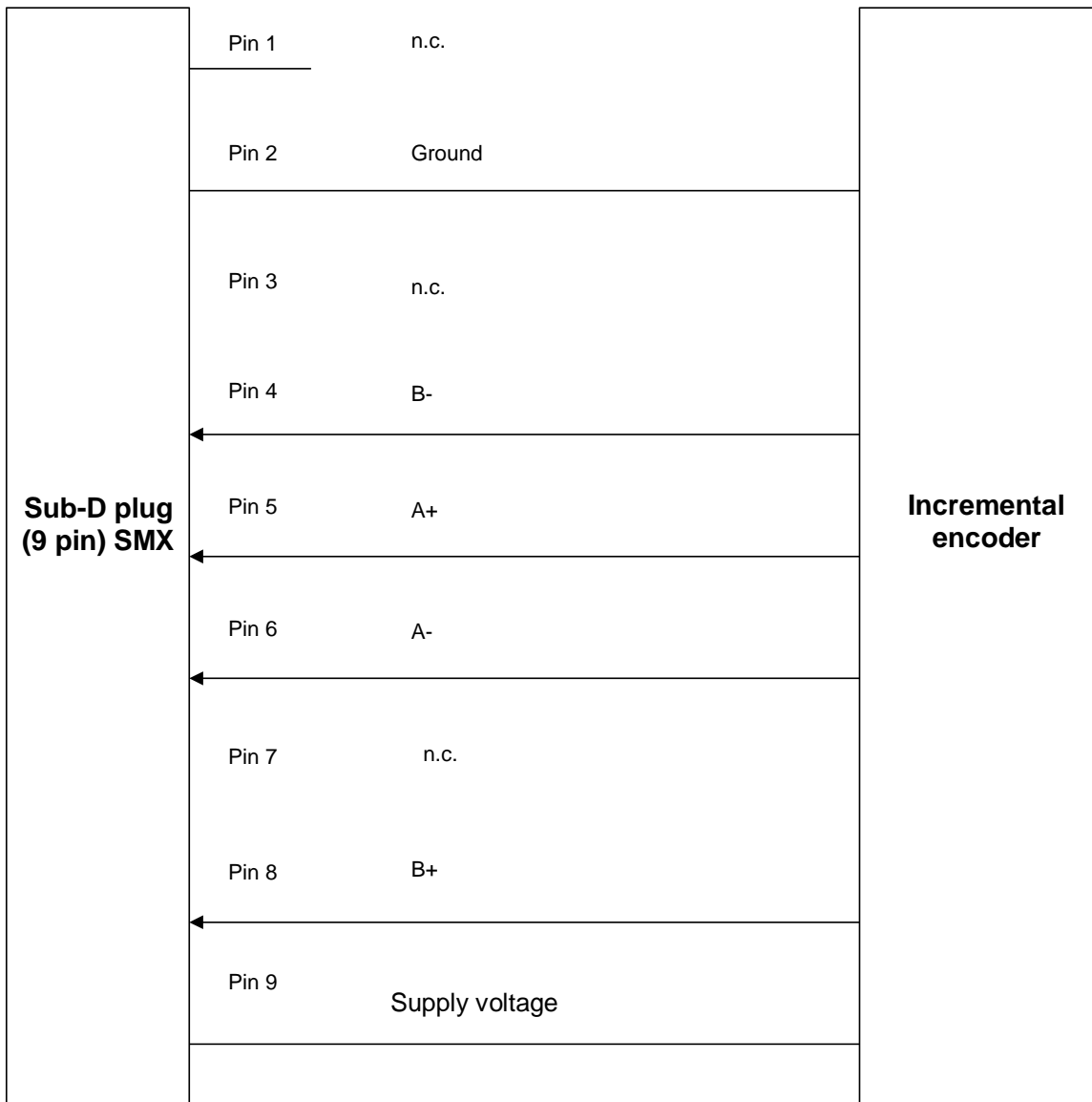
With this type of the connection the clock pulses of the module SMX100 run to the absolute encoder and the data from the encoder to the SMX100.

5.11.3.2 Connection of an absolute encoder as slave



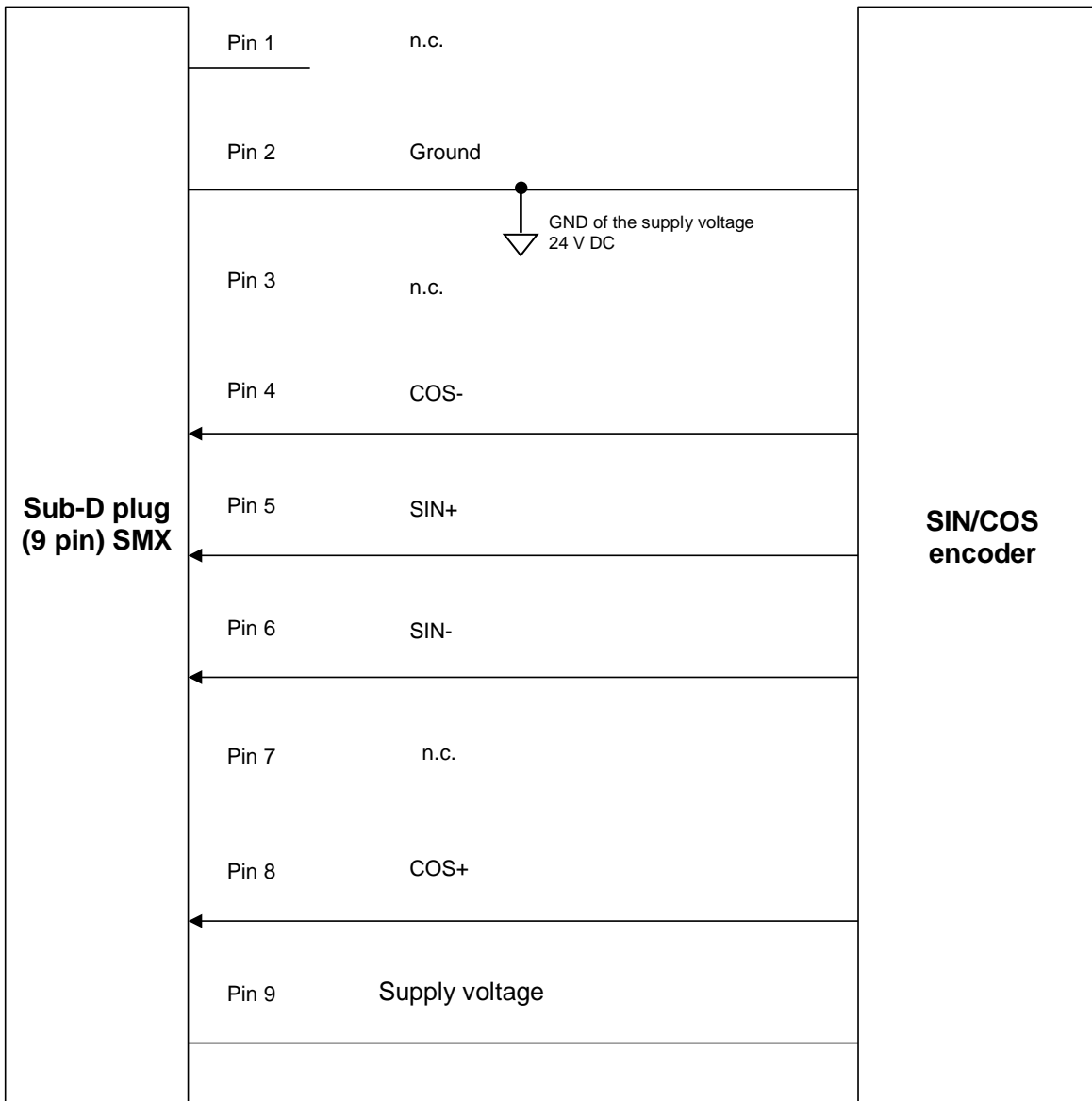
With this type of connection both clock signals and data are read in. In this example the module does not supply the encoder with voltage.

5.11.3.3 Connecting an incremental encoder with TTL-signal level



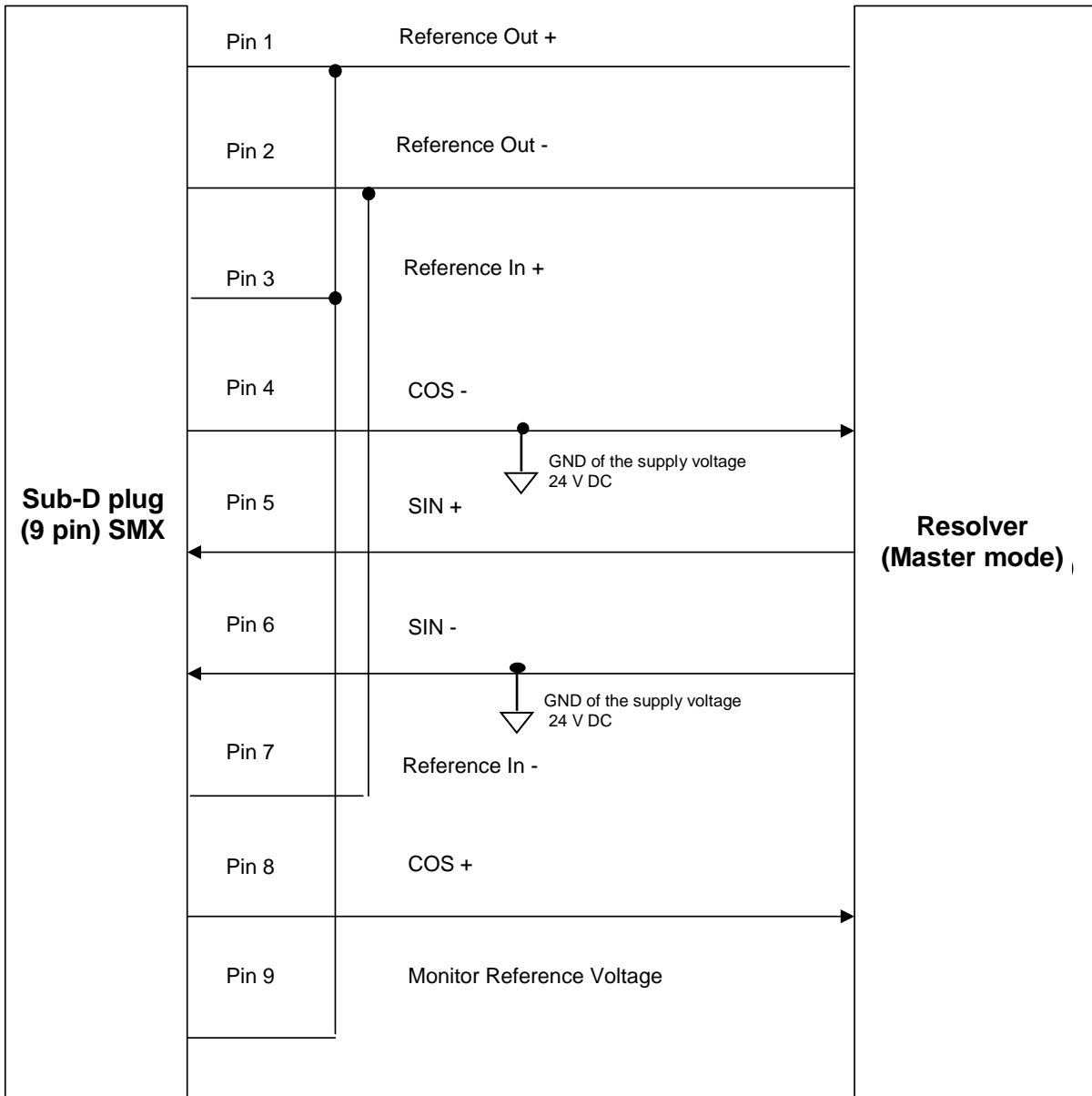
Pins 1, 3 and 7 stay open and are reserved for later expansions.

5.11.3.4 Connection of a SIN/COS encoder



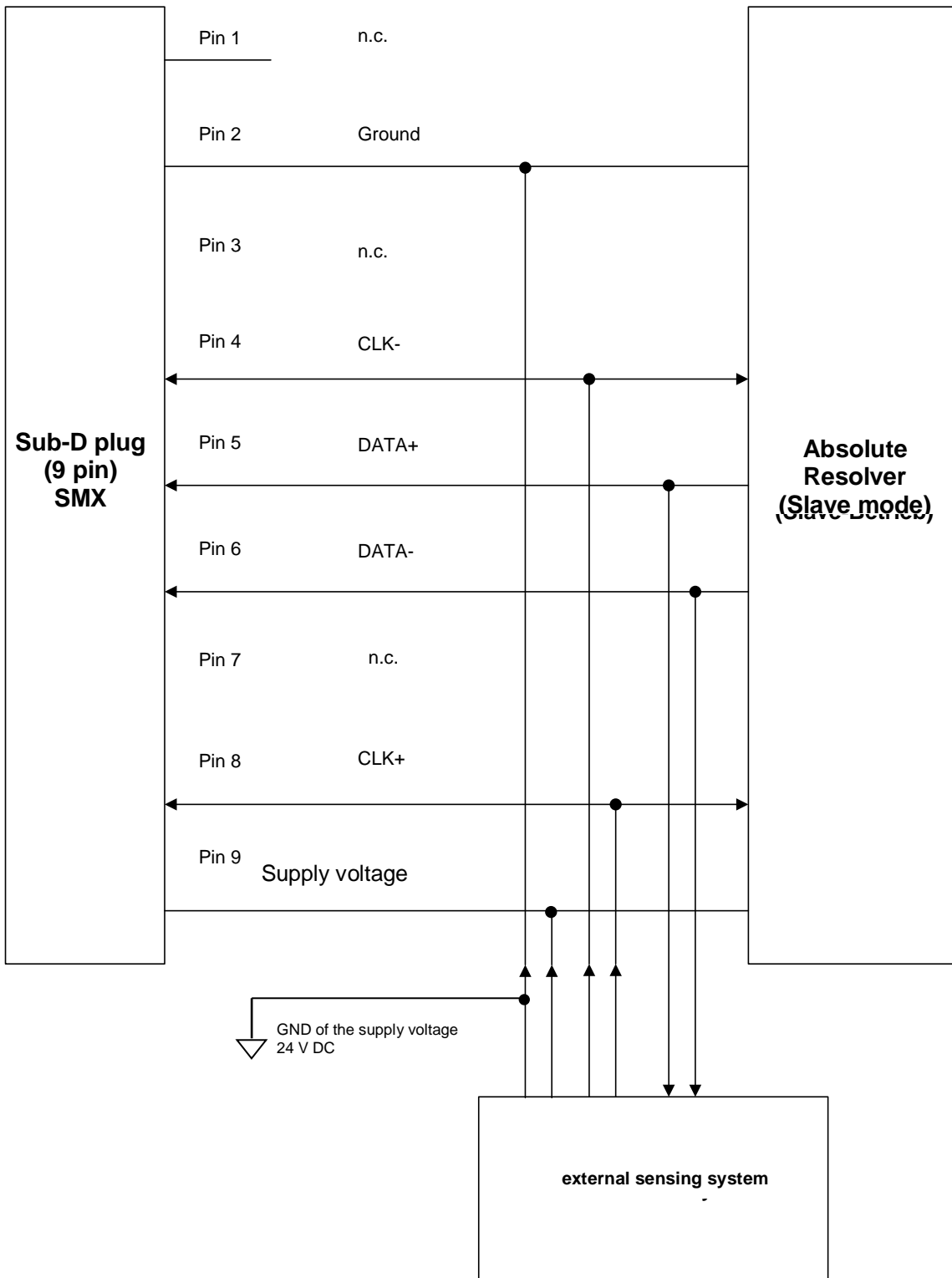
Pins 1, 3 and 7 stay open and are reserved for later expansions.

5.11.3.5 Connection of a resolver as master



With this type of connection the clock signals are submitted from the SMX100 module to the absolute encoder and the data from the encoder to the SMX100.

5.11.3.6 Connection of a resolver as slave



With this type of connection both clock signals and data are read in. In this example the module does not supply the encoder with voltage.

5.11.3.7 Connection of proximity switch SMX111x SMX112x

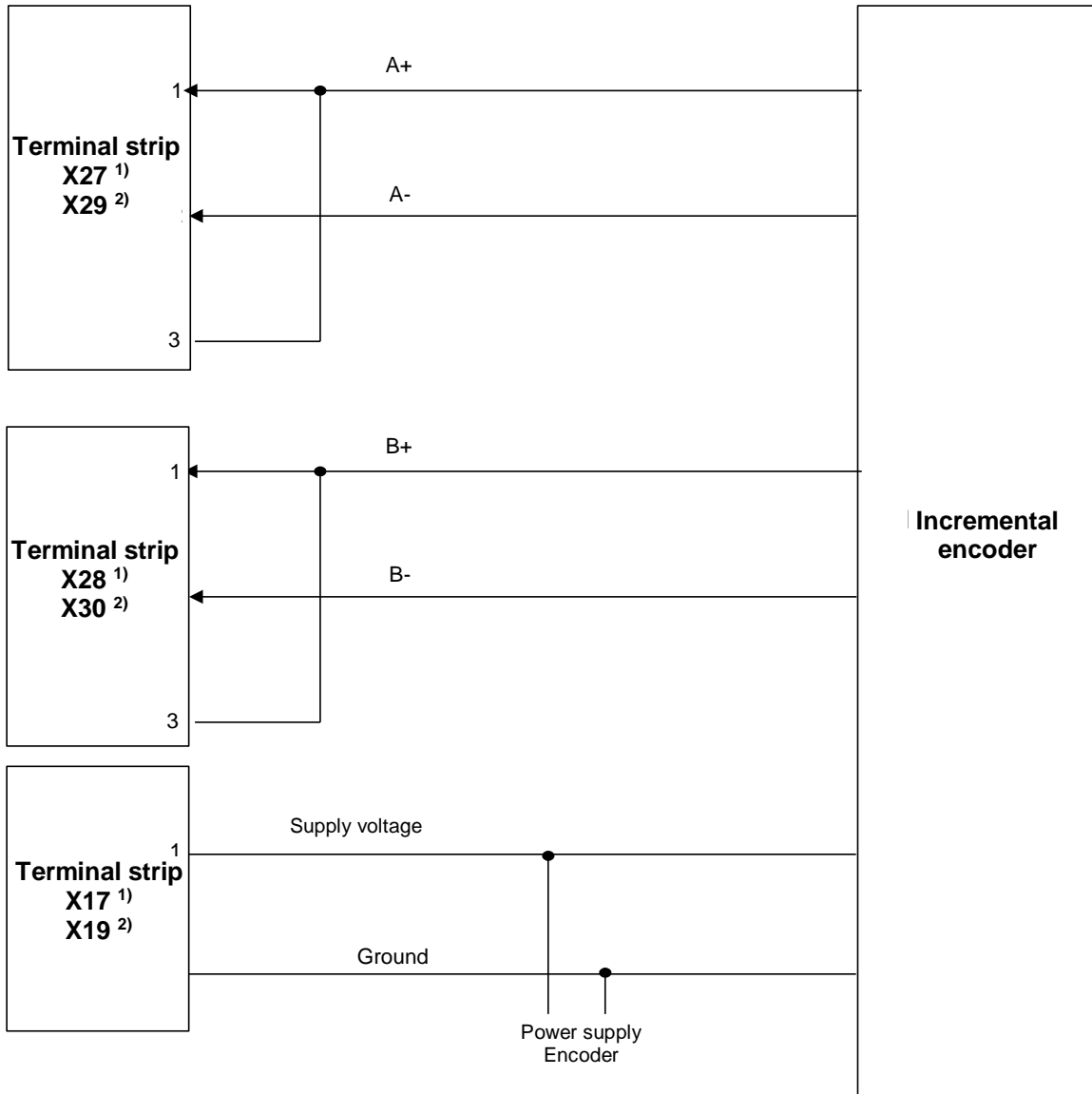
The connection is made via plug connector X23 on the digital inputs I05 ... I08.
The exact pin assignment depends on the encoder type and is shown in the connecting plan of the programming interface.

Note: When using HTL-encoders please bear in mind that the tracks A+ and B+ or A- and B- must be combined accordingly.

5.11.3.8 Connection of HTL/proximity switch SMX11-2/SMX12-2

The connection is made via plug connectors X27 and X28, or X29 and X30

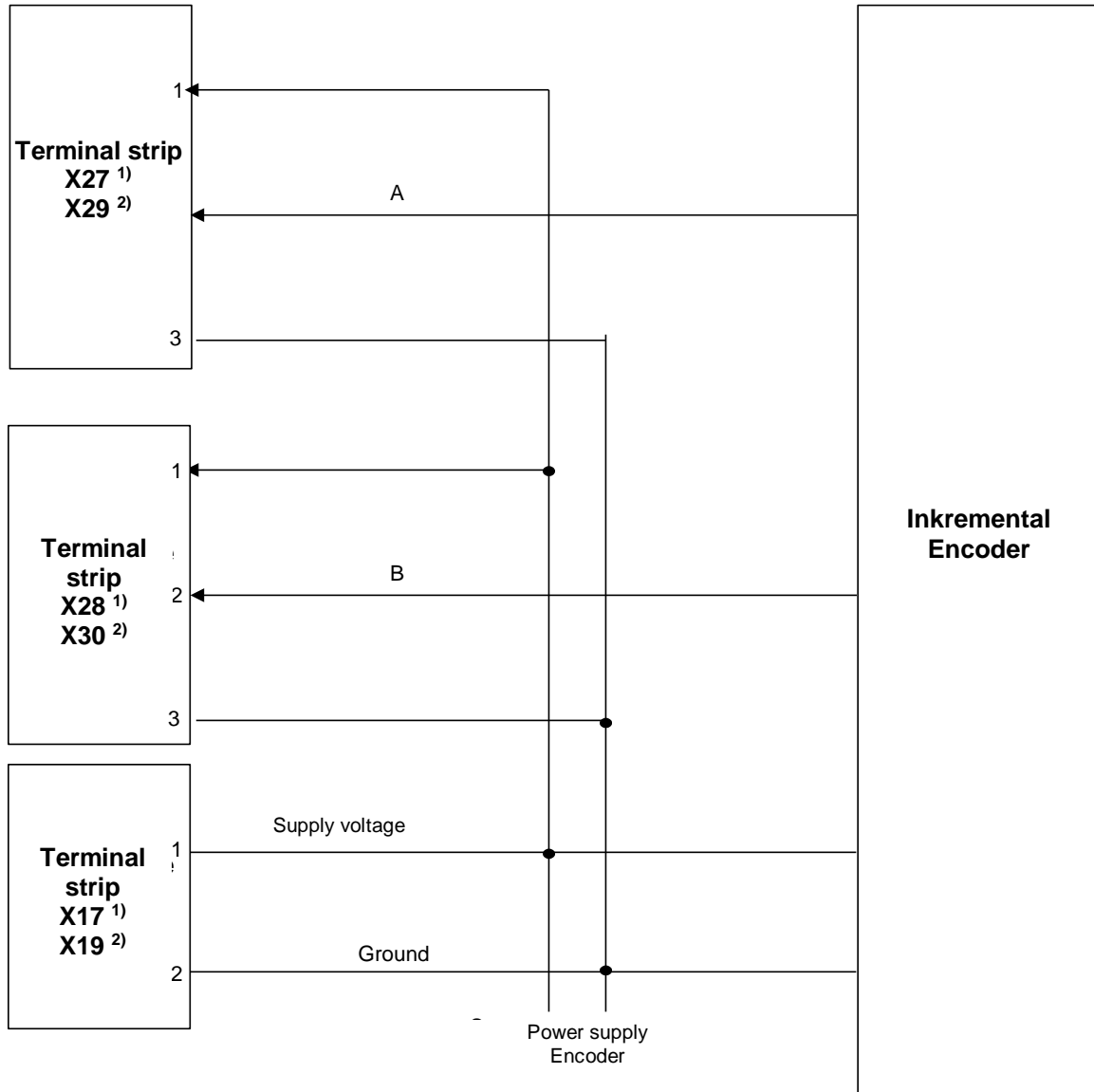
5.11.3.8.1 HTL-encoder with A+/A- or B+/B- signal



¹⁾SMX111-2x, SMX121-2x

²⁾SMX112-2x, SMX122-2x

5.11.3.8.2 HTL-encoder with A+ or B+- signal



¹⁾SMX111-2x, SMX121-2x

²⁾SMX112-2x, SMX122-2x

5.12 Configuration of measuring distances

5.12.1 General description of encoder configuration

The most important input variables for the monitoring functions of the module are safe position, speed and acceleration. These are obtained by dual-channel generation from the connected sensor system. A category 4 compliant architecture, i.e. continuous dual-channel recording with high degree of diagnostic coverage, is required for PI e acc. to EN ISO 13849-1. For possible single-channel components (e.g. mechanical connection of the sensors/encoders with only one shaft/fastening) fault exclusions acc. to EN ISO 13849-2 may be used, if this should be necessary. For PI d acc. to EN ISO 13849-1 one may work with a reduced degree or diagnostic coverage. Simple design sensor systems (speed monitoring only) may under certain circumstances be sufficient under due consideration of the permissible fault exclusions acc. to EN ISO 13849-2.

See also APPENDIX 1

Further configuration is described in the programming manual:
37420-820-01-xxF-SMX100 Programierhandbuch.pdf

5.12.2 Sensor type

Absolute encoder and incremental measuring systems are possible, as well as counting pulse generating proximity switches.

5.12.2.1 Absolute encoder:

Data interface: Serial Synchronous Interface (SSI) with variable data length from 12 to 28 bit.

Data format: Binary or Gray code,

Physical Layer: RS-422 compatible

SSI-Master operation:

Clock rate: 150kHz

SSI-Listener operation (slave mode):

Max. external clock rate 200 KHz ¹⁾ or 350 kHz ²⁾.

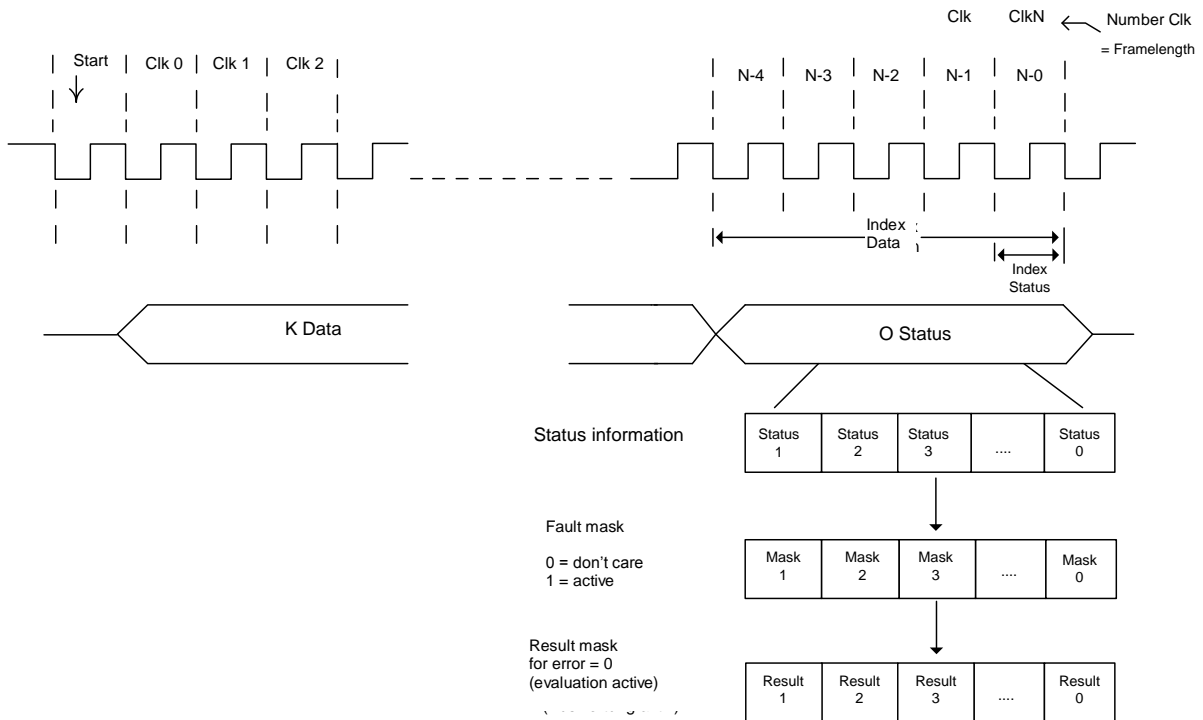
Min. clock pause time 150 µsec

Max. clock pause time 1 msec

Diagnoses:

Diagnose	Parameters	Fault threshold
Supply voltage monitoring	Fixed values 5 V, 8V, 10V, 12V, 20V, 24V	+/- 20 % +/- 2 % (measuring tolerance)
Monitoring of differential level on input	Fixed value RS 485-level	+/- 20 % +/- 2 % (measuring tolerance)
Monitoring of Clk-frequency	Fixed value	100 kHz < f < 350 kHz
Plausibility of speed versus position	Fixed value	$DP < 2 * V * T$ with T = 8 ms

Parameterization of SSI-format:

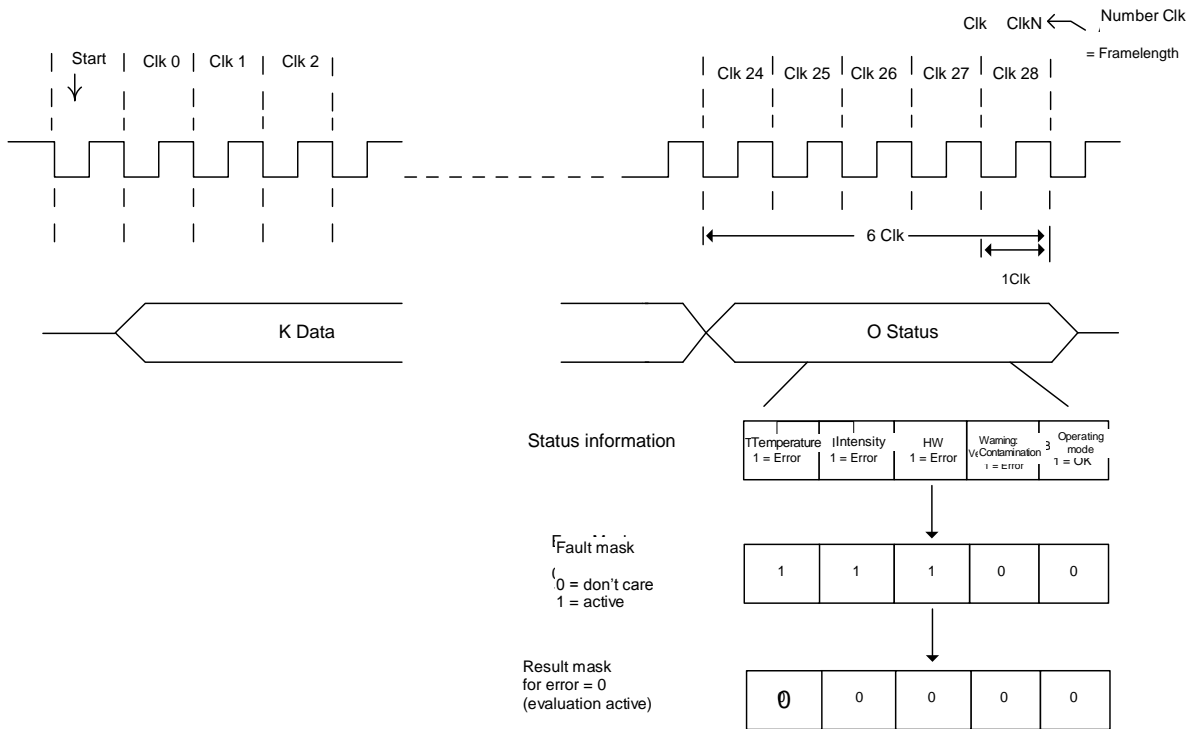


Installation manual



Example:

SSI-Framelength: 28 cycles
 Data-Length: 22 bit
 Status: 5 bit, 3 bit Fault + 2 bit Warning/ready for operation



5.12.2.2 Incremental encoder:

Physical Layer: RS-422 compatible
 Measuring signal A/B. Track with 90 degree phase difference
 maximum frequency of input cycles 200 KHz ¹⁾ or 500 kHz ²⁾

Diagnoses:

Diagnose	Parameters	Fault threshold
Supply voltage monitoring	Fixed values 5 V, 8V, 10V, 12V, 20V, 24V	+/- 20 % +/-2 %(measuring tolerance)
Monitoring of differential level on input	Fixed value RS 485-level	+/- 20 % +/-2 %(measuring tolerance)
Monitoring of the counting signal separated for each track A/B	Fixed value	DP > 4 increments

5.12.2.3 SinusCosinus encoder – standard mode

Physical Layer: +/- 0.5 V_{SS} (without voltage offset)
 Measuring signal A/B. Track with 90 degree phase difference
 Maximum frequency of input clock pulses. 200 KHz ¹⁾ or 500 kHz ²⁾

Diagnoses:

Diagnose	Parameters	Fault threshold
Supply voltage monitoring	Fixed values 5 V, 8V, 10V, 12V, 20V, 24V	+/- 20 % +/-2 %(measuring tolerance)
Monitoring of amplitude SIN ² +COS ²	Fixed value 1V _{SS}	65 % of 1 V _{SS} +/- 2.5 %(measuring tolerance)
Monitoring of phases A/B	Fixed value 90°	+/- 30° +/-5° measuring tolerance)

5.12.2.4 SinusCosinus encoder – high resolution mode:

Physical Layer: +/- 0.5 V_{SS} (without voltage offset)
 Measuring signal A/B. Track with 90 degree phase difference
 Maximum frequency of input clock pulses. 15 kHz ²⁾

Diagnoses:

Diagnose	Parameters	Fault threshold
Supply voltage monitoring	Fixed values 5 V, 8V, 10V, 12V, 20V, 24V	+/- 20 % +/-2 %(measuring tolerance)
Monitoring of amplitude SIN ² +COS ²	Fixed value 1V _{SS}	65 % of 1 V _{SS} +/- 2.5 %(measuring tolerance)
Monitoring of phases A/B	Fixed value 90°	+/- 30° +/-5° measuring tolerance)
Monitoring of counting signal / signal phase quadrant	Fixed value	+/- 45°

5.12.2.5 Proxi switch

Signal level. 24V/0V
Max. counting frequency. 10kHz
Circuit logic de-bounced

Diagnoses:

Diagnose	Parameters	Fault threshold
Supply voltage monitoring	Fixed values 24V	+/- 20 % +/-2 % (measuring tolerance)

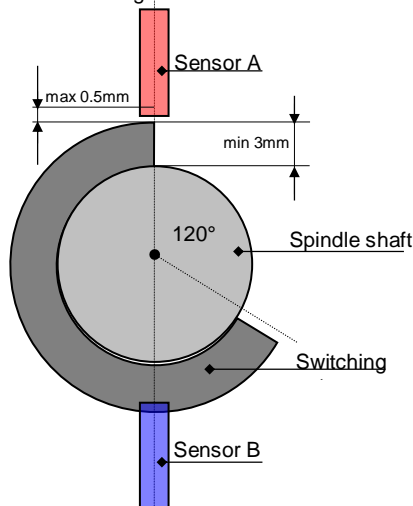
5.12.2.6 Extended monitoring proximity switch / proximity switch

The extended monitoring uncovers the following faults:

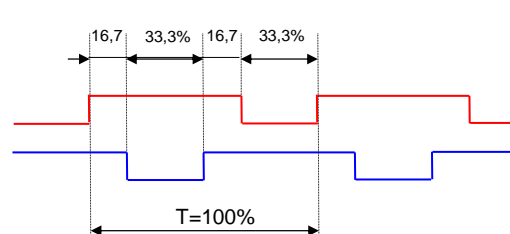
- a) Supply voltage failure
- b) Failure of output signal in driver direction
- c) Malfunction of High signal proximity switch
- d) Interruption of signal path
- e) Mechanical de-adjustment of proximity switch / excessive switching distance of proximity switch

For diagnostic purposes both status conditions of the counting signal are additionally recorded synchronously and compared logically. A damping of at least one of the two signals must be guaranteed for each shifting gate. The logic will evaluate this instruction.

Design of switching gate with radial sensor arrangement



Intended theoretic signal form



The diagnose must be designed for at least the following limiting values:

Max. counting frequency: 4 kHz
 Max. blanking 0-signal: 50 %
 Min. coverage: 10 %

Reading in counting signals:

The two counting signals are both separately assigned to the two channels. In each of the channels the status is read in synchronously. In order to ensure synchronization this must be carried out directly after the channel synchronization. Sampling must take place at least 1x per cycle. The max. deviation in synchronization is 20 μ s.

The status conditions must be exchanged crosswise through the SPI.

Logic processing:

The following evaluation must be made in both channels:

Signal A	Signal B	Result
Low	Low	False
High	Low	True
Low	High	True
High	High	True

5.12.2.7 HTL – Sensor

Signal level: 24V/0V
 Physical Layer: Push/Pull
 Measuring signal A/B: track with 90° phase difference
 Max. counting pulse frequency: 200 kHz on X27/28 or X29/30
 (only SMX11-2/12-2)

Diagnoses:

Diagnose	Parameters	Fault threshold
Supply voltage monitoring	Fixed values 5 V, 8V, 10V, 12V, 20V, 24V	+/- 20 % +/-2 %(measuring tolerance)
Monitoring of differential level on input	Fixed value 24 V	+/- 20 % +/-2 %(measuring tolerance)
Monitoring of the counting signal separated for each track A/B	Fixed value	DP > 4 increments

5.12.2.8 Resolver

Measuring signal: SIN/COS – track with 90° phase difference
 Max. counting pulse frequency: 2 kHz/pole
 Resolution: 9 bit / pole
 Master-Mode:
 Frequency reference signal: 8 kHz
 Slave-Mode
 Frequency reference signal: 6 - 16 kHz
 Reference signal form: Sinusoidal, triangle

¹⁾on X31/32

²⁾on X33/34

Diagnoses:

Diagnose	Parameters	Fault threshold
Monitoring of ratio	Fixed values 2:1, 3:2, 4:1	+/- 20 % +/-2 %(measuring tolerance)
Monitoring of signal amplitude SIN^2+COS^2	Fixed value	<2.8 V +/-5 % (measuring tolerance)
Monitoring of phases A/B	Fixed value 90°	+/- 7° +/-2°(measuring tolerance)
Monitoring of reference frequency	Fixed values 6 .. 12 kHz in steps of 1 kHz, 14 kHz, 16 kHz	+/- 20 % +/-5 %(measuring tolerance)
Form of reference signal	Sinusoidal, triangle, no monitoring	40 % form deviation
Monitoring of counting signal / signal phase quadrant	Fixed value	+/- 45°

6 Response times of the SMX

The response time is a very important safety related characteristic and must be strictly observed for each application / application related safety function. The following chapter lists the response times for individual functions, probably also in dependence on further parameters. If these data are insufficient for a specific application you should validate the actual time behaviour against the nominal behaviour by means of separate measurements. This applies also for the use of filter functions in particular.

Safety note:

- The response times must be determined for each application related safety function in nominal behaviour and must then be compared with the actual value by using the following data.
- Special care must be taken when using filter functions. Depending on the filter length / time the response time may be extended, which must be taken into account in the safety related design.
- In case of particularly critical problem formulations the temporal behaviour must be validated by means of measurements.
- During start-up of the device / alarm or fault reset the outputs may (depending on the application program) become active over the response time period. This must be taken into consideration when planning the safety function.
- When using safe field bus connections (e.g. PROFI-safe, FSoE), the system run-time (watchdog) must also be included in the calculation.

6.1 Response times in standard operation

The cycle time of the SMX system serves as basis for calculating the response times. Diese ist in 3 Stufen wählbar und beträgt im Betrieb **T_Cycle = 16 / 24 / 32 ms**. The specified response times comply with the corresponding maximum running time for the actual application within the SMX100 module. Depending on the application, further, application dependent response times of the sensors and actuators used must be added, in order to obtain the total running time.

Response times with use of digital inputs and outputs at basic modules

Function	Response time [ms]			Explanation
Cycle time	16	24	32	
Activation of a monitoring function by means of ENABLE with subsequent shut-down via digital output	16 *)	24 *)	32 *)	Activation of a monitoring function by means of the ENABLE signal.
Activation of a monitoring function by means of ENABLE with subsequent shut-down via safety relay	39 *)	47 *)	55 *)	Activation of a monitoring function by means of the ENABLE signal.

<i>Function</i>	<i>Response time [ms]</i>			<i>Explanation</i>
	<i>16</i>	<i>24</i>	<i>32</i>	
Cycle time				
Response of an already activated monitoring function including PLC editing in case of position and speed processing via digital output	36 *)	56 *)	70 *)	With a monitoring function that has already been activated via ENABLE, the module requires <u>one</u> cycle to calculate the current speed value. During the next cycle after calculation of the monitoring function the information is further processed and output by the PLC, i.e. according to the implemented logic this will lead to e.g. switching of an output.
Response of an already activated monitoring function including PLC editing in case of position and speed processing via safety relays	59 *)	79 *)	93 *)	With a monitoring function that has already been activated via ENABLE, the module requires <u>one</u> cycle to calculate the current speed value. During the next cycle after calculation of the monitoring function the information is further processed and output by the PLC, i.e. according to the implemented logic this will lead to e.g. switching of an output.
Activation of digital output via digital input	32	48	64	Activation of an input and switching of the output
Activation output relay via digital input	42	58	74	Activation of an input and switching of the output
Deactivation of digital output via digital input	32	48	64	Deactivation of an input and thus deactivation of the output
Deactivation output relay via digital input	55	71	87	Deactivation of an input and thus deactivation of the output
Average filter (setting see encoder dialog SafePLC)	0 - 64	0 - 64	0 - 64	Group running time of the averager. This running time only effects the monitoring function in connection with position / speed / acceleration, but not the logic processing.
Analog filter				The analog filter only affects the safe analog inputs of the SMX-12A module.
<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • 1 (2Hz) • 2 (2Hz) • 3 (2Hz) • 4 (4Hz) • 5 (6Hz) • 6 (8Hz) • 7 (10Hz) • 8 (20Hz) 	760	760	760	Response times of the analog input filters in relation to the input frequency
	760	760	760	
	760	760	760	
	512	512	512	
	268	268	268	
	143	143	143	
	86	86	86	
	56	56	56	

Note:

*) : When using an average filter the response time of this filter must also be added

6.2 Response time for FAST_CHANNEL

FAST_CHANNEL describes a characteristic of SMX to respond quicker to speed requirements than this would be possible with the execution of the safety programs in normal cycle (= 16 / 24 / 32 msec) The sampling time of FAST_CHANNEL is 2 msec + 2 msec for signalling at the bus.

The following response times can be specified:

- 6 msec (Worst Case Condition)

Safety note:

- When using FAST_CHANNEL you should bear in mind that shutting down within the time specified above for a given speed threshold is only possible, if the sensor information has a sufficient resolution. The smallest resolvable switching threshold of the FAST_CHANNEL requires at least 2 edge changes on the corresponding sensor system within a period of 2 msec.
- This function can only be used in connection with semi-conductor outputs.
- The FAST_CHANNEL may not act on SSI Listeners

6.3 Response times for fault distance monitoring

The following calculation schematic applies for calculating the Worst Case condition.

System speed to the sampling instant	$V(t)$
System speed in case of SMX response: (tthreshold value for monitoring SLS or SCA):	V_A (tthreshold value for monitoring)
Parameterized filter value:	$V_S = \text{constant for all } t$
Maximum possible acceleration of the application:	$X_F = \text{constant for all } t$
Deceleration after shut-down:	$a_F = \text{constant for all } t$
Sampling instant for occurrence of the Worst Case event:	$a_V = \text{constant for all } t$
Response time of the SMX systems:	T_{Fault}
	t_{Response}

For the Worst Case assessment it is assumed that the drive will initially move exactly to the parameterized threshold with a speed $v(k)$ and then will accelerate to the maximum possible value a_0 .

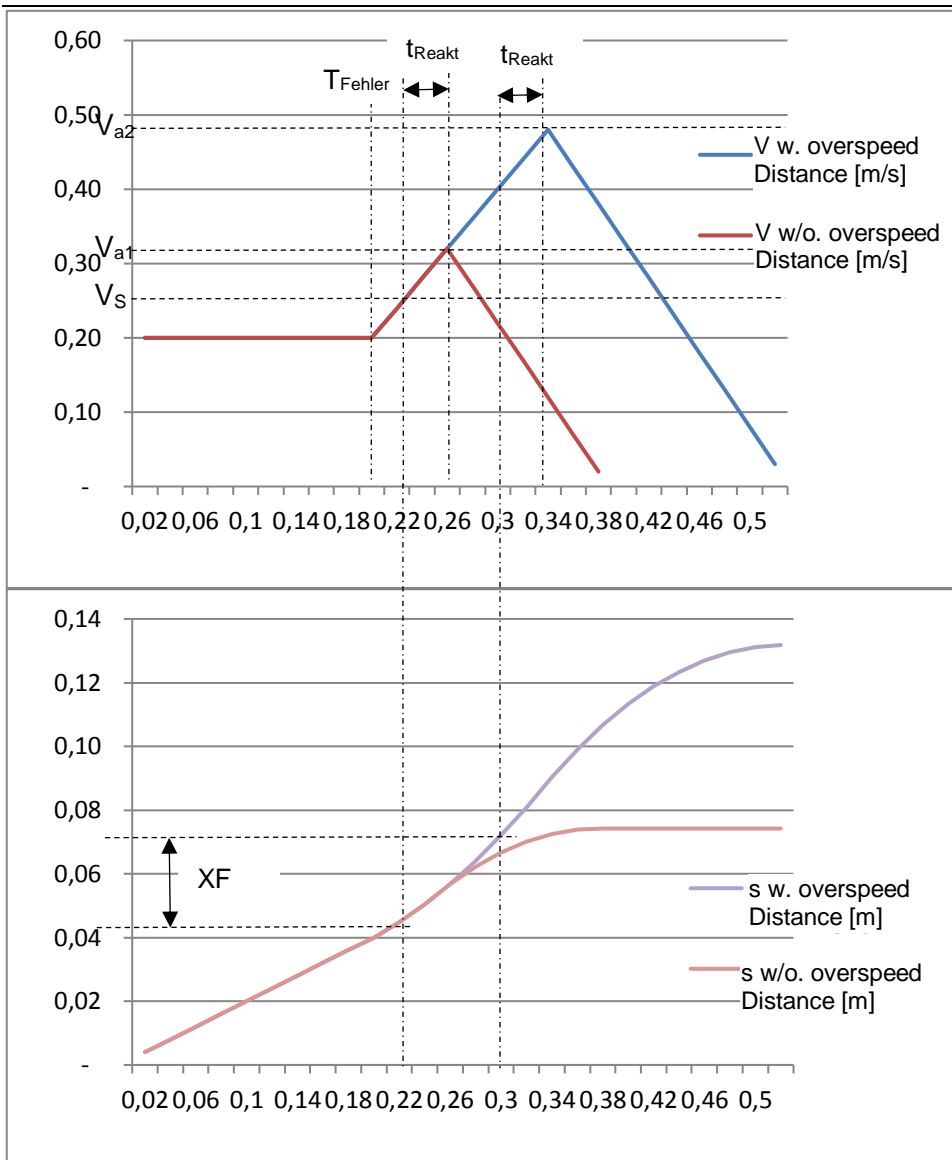


Diagram: Behaviour of the drive with / without overspeed distance

Without overspeed distance the following connections result for the course of V and s.

Parameters	Calculation methods	Comment
t_{Response}	Value from the specified response time SMX + deceleration time in external shut-down chain	Deceleration time in external shut-off chain derived from relay/contactors and brake data, etc. issued by the manufacturer
a_F, a_V	n.a.	Estimation of the application
V_{a1}	$= V_S + a_F \cdot t_{\text{Response}}$	

With overspeed distance the following connections result for the course of V and s .

Parameters	Calculation methods	Comment
t_{Response}	Value for response time data SMX + deceleration time in external shut-down chain	Deceleration time in external shut-off chain derived from relay/contactors and brake data, etc. issued by the manufacturer
a_F, a_V	n.a.	Estimation of the application
V_{a2}	$= a_F * t_{\text{Response}} + (V_S^2 + 2 * a_F * XF)^{1/2}$	

With its effect the filter displaces the set speed threshold V_a upwards by the amount **delta_v_filter**. For the application one must consider the new response time values ($T_{\text{react}} = T_{\text{smx}} + T_{\text{filter}}$), as well as the speed at shut-down by SMX100 resulting from this.

6.4 Reaction times for using inputs and outputs at the expansion modules

The cycle time of the SMX system serves as basis for calculating the response times. In operation this is **$T_{\text{Cycle}} = 16 / 24 / 32 \text{ ms}$** . The specified response times comply with the corresponding maximum running time for the actual application within the SMX100 module. Depending on the application, further, application dependent response times of the sensors and actuators used must be added, in order to obtain the total running time.

Function	Designation	Response time [ms]	Explanation
Worst Case deceleration time inlet in basic module to PAE	$T_{\text{IN_BASE}}$	T_{Cycle}	e.g. activation of a monitoring function by an input signal in the basic module
Worst Case deceleration time input expansion module to PAE in base module	$T_{\text{IN_Erw}}$	$T_{\text{Cycle}} + 6\text{ms}$	e.g. activation of a monitoring function by an input signal in the extension module SMX31
Processing time PAE to PAA in basic module	T_{PLC}	T_{Cycle}	Shut-down by a monitoring function or an input in PAE
Activation / deactivation digital output in basic module from PAA	$T_{\text{OUT_BASE}}$	-	Activation or deactivation of an output in the basic module after changes to the PAA.
Activation / deactivation digital output in extension module via PAA in basic module	$T_{\text{OUT_Erw}}$	$T_{\text{Zyklus}} + 8\text{ms}$	Activation or deactivation of an output in the extension module SMX31 after changes to the PAA in the basic module.

Determination of the total response time

$$T_{TOTAL} = T_{IN} + T_{PLC} + T_{OUT}$$

Example 1:

Input to extension module, activation of SLS and processing in PLC, output to basic module.

$$T_{TOTAL} = T_{IN_Erw} + T_{PLC} + T_{OUT_Base} = T_{Cycle} + 6 \text{ ms} + T_{Zyklus} + 0 \text{ ms} = 2 * T_{Cycle} + 6 \text{ ms};$$

Example 2:

Input to basic module, activation of SLS and processing in PLC, output to extension module.

$$T_{TOTAL} = T_{IN_Base} + T_{PLC} + T_{OUT_Erw} = T_{Cycle} + T_{Cycle} + T_{Cycle} + 6 \text{ ms} = 3 * T_{Cycle} + 8 \text{ ms};$$

Example 3:

Input to extension module, activation of SLS and processing in PLC, output to extension module.

$$T_{TOTAL} = T_{IN_Erw} + T_{PLC} + T_{OUT_Erw} = T_{Cycle} + 6 \text{ ms} + T_{Cycle} + T_{Cycle} + 8 \text{ ms} = 3 * T_{Cycle} + 14 \text{ ms};$$

7 Start-up

7.1 Procedure

Start-up must only be performed by qualified personnel!
Strictly follow the safety regulations when commissioning!

7.2 Making sequences

The following phases are passed through and displayed by the front side seven segment display after each new start and fault-free running of the module:

7 segment display	Mode	Description	
„1“	STARTUP	Synchronization between both processor systems and checking of configuration/firmware data	
„2“	SENDCONFIG	Distribution of configuration/firmware data and renewed checking of these data. Subsequent area checking of configuration data.	
„3“	STARTUP BUS	If available, initialization of a bus system	
„4“	RUN	Normal system operation. All outputs are switched according to the current logic status.	
„5“	STOP	In stop mode parameter and program data can be loaded externally.	
„A“	ALARM	The alarm can be reset via the digital input or the front side reset button.	
„E“	ECS-Alarm	The ECS alarm can be reset via the digital inputs or the front side reset button.	
„F“	Fault	Fault can only be reset via ON/OFF of the module.	
„“	FBus Status	Slave F-Bus (PROFIsafe/FSoE):	
		Off:	F-Bus does not use
		Slow Flashing:	F-Bus configured, no connection to the master
		Fast flashing:	Connection to the master, F-Bus activation pending
		On:	F-Bus connected

*) if bus system (slave module) is configured, the following display is applicable for the operating mode

There may be bus errors when using SMX100 with slave modules. Descriptions of the individual bus status messages are as follows:

Display	Description	Impact on the system	Reset condition
b0003	Initialization/synchronization with slave module.	All outputs are switched off!	Can be reset by switching on/off the master module (POR).
b0008	Transfer of configuration data to the slave module.	All outputs are switched off!	Not required
b0010	Bus in "RUN"	All outputs are active!	Not required
b0012	Bus error	All outputs are switched off!	Can be reset through parametrisable input or by switching on/off the master module (POR).
b0012 - Fxyyy	Slave device x has a Fatal Error yyy and cannot be registered in the SDDC bus system	All outputs are switched off!	Can be reset by switching on/off the slave module (POR).

In case of error, the bus status can be permanently stuck in status "b0003" or "b0012". The error cases are as follows:

Bus status	b0003
Message	Communication structure with slave module
Cause	Slave units is not registering
Troubleshooting	Check address slave unit. Check status LED slave module (must be blinking green) Check mechanical structure SMX100

Bus status	b0012
Message	Bus error
Cause	Bus error due to defective slave units
Troubleshooting	Configured slave module (e.g. SMX122) does not match the existing slave module (e.g. SMX122A) Check status LED slave module (must be blinking green)

7.3 LED display

Colour	Mode	Description
green	"flashing"	System OK, configuration validated
yellow	"flashing"	System OK, configuration not yet validated
red	"flashing"	Alarm
red	"permanent"	Fatal Fault
yellow - red	"flashing"	System OK, configuration not yet validated, SMMC configured however participant is missing
green - red	"flashing"	System OK, configuration validated, SMMC configured however participant is missing

Note:

For all operating states except RUN the outputs are rendered passive by the firmware, i.e. safely switched off. In status RUN the state of the outputs depend on the implemented PLC-program.

7.4 Parameterization

Parameterization takes place via the program SafePLC SMX100. The transmission of these data to the module requires a programming adapter, the drivers of which must first be installed by the user. Parameterization is described in the ***programming manual SMX100***

7.5 Function test

In order to guarantee safety of the module, the user must carry out a functional test of the safety functions at least once in a year. For this purpose the modules used in the parameterization (inputs, outputs, monitoring functions and logic modules) must be checked with respect to function or shut-down.

See *programming manual*.

7.6 Validation

In order to assure the reliability of the implemented safety functions the user must check and document the parameters and links after the start-up and parameterization has taken place. This is supported by a validation assistant in the programming desktop (see chapter "Safety related examination").

8 Safety related examination

In order to assure the reliability of the implemented safety functions the user must check and document the parameters and links after the start-up and parameterization has taken place. This is supported by the parameterization software SafePLC SMX100 (see programming manual).

On the first page one can enter general system data. The last page of the validation report contains individual evidence concerning the safety related examination.

Here the following entries are mandatory:

- Serial number (identical with the serial number on the type plate)
- Identity of the module

Here the responsible tester confirms that the CRC displayed in the programming desktop are identical with the CRC stored in the SMX100 module.

Once all header data have been entered, the validation report can be generated by pressing the control button "Save". The parameterization tool then creates a report (.PDF) with the file name of the program data set. The report contains the following information:

- The 3 pages of header data edited above
- The configuration of the encoder
- The parameters of the existing monitoring function
- The PLC program as instruction list

After the transmission of the configuration and program data to the SMX100 module the status LED flashes yellow. This indicates that the configuration data have not yet been validated. Pressing the button "LOCK CONFIGURATION" at the end of the validation dialog highlights the data as "Validated" and the LED flashes in green.

9 Maintenance

9.1 Modification / handling changes to the device

Maintenance work must solely be carried out by qualified personnel.
Regular maintenance work is not required.

Repair

The devices must always be replaced as whole units
Repair work on the device can only be performed in the factory.

Warranty

By opening the module without permission the warranty will become null and void.

Note:

By modifying the module the safety approval will become null and void!

9.2 Exchanging a module

The following should be noted when exchanging a module:

- Disconnect the electric power converter from the main supply.
- Switch off the electric power supply for the device and disconnect.
- Pull off the encoder plug.
- Disconnect any other pluggable connections.
- Take the module off the top hat rail and pack up EMC-compliant.
- Mount the new module on the top hat rail.
- Reconnect all connections.
- Switch on the electric power converter.
- Switch on the supply voltage.
- Configure the device

Note:

Pluggable connections of the SMX100 module must generally not be disconnected or connected in live condition. There is a danger of sensor damage, particularly with connected position or speed sensors.

9.3 Maintenance intervals

Module replacement	See technical data
Function test	See chapter "Start-up"

10 Technical data

10.1 Environmental conditions

Class of protection	IP 20
Ambient temperature	0°C* ... 50°C
Climatic category	3k3 acc. to DIN 60 721
Min-, Maximum relative humidity (no condensation)	5% - 85%
Overvoltage category	III
Degree of contamination	2
Operating materials	2000m
Lifetime	90000h at 50°C ambient

10.2 Safety related characteristic data

Max. obtainable safety class	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • SIL 3 acc. to IEC 61508 • Category 4 acc. to EN ISO 13849-1 • Performance-Level e acc. EN ISO 13849-1 	
System structure	2-channel with diagnose (1002)	
Rating of operating mode	"high demand" acc. to IEC 61508 (high demand rate)	
Probability of an endangering failure per hour (PFH-value)	SMX100-1x	PFH = 8,0 FIT
	SMX100-2x	PFH =12,2 FIT
	SMX100-4x	PFH =16,6 FIT
	SMX13x	PFH = 9,2 FIT
	SMX11x	PFH = 12,6 FIT
	SMX121 SMX121-2 SMX122x (1 Axis)	PFH = 3,0 FIT
	SMX122x (2 Axis) SMX122-2x	PFH = 6,5 FIT
Proof-Test-Interval (EN61508)	20 years, after this time the module must be replaced	

11 Switch types

Type	Graphic symbols	Truth table	Logic function	Function block	Function																
1	 eSwitch_1o	<table border="1"> <tr> <td>Ö</td> <td>A</td> </tr> <tr> <td>0</td> <td>0</td> </tr> <tr> <td>1</td> <td>1</td> </tr> </table>	Ö	A	0	0	1	1	LD E.1 ST IE.X		Closing contact (S), only in display opening contact (O)	 Normally closed contact Output									
Ö	A																				
0	0																				
1	1																				
2	 sSwitch_1s	<table border="1"> <tr> <td>S</td> <td>A</td> </tr> <tr> <td>0</td> <td>0</td> </tr> <tr> <td>1</td> <td>1</td> </tr> </table>	S	A	0	0	1	1	LD E.1 ST IE.X		Normally open, as type 1	 Normally closed contact Output									
S	A																				
0	0																				
1	1																				
3	 eSwitch_2o	<table border="1"> <tr> <td>Ö1</td> <td>Ö2</td> <td>A</td> </tr> <tr> <td>0</td> <td>0</td> <td>0</td> </tr> <tr> <td>1</td> <td>0</td> <td>0</td> </tr> <tr> <td>0</td> <td>1</td> <td>0</td> </tr> <tr> <td>1</td> <td>1</td> <td>1</td> </tr> </table>	Ö1	Ö2	A	0	0	0	1	0	0	0	1	0	1	1	1	LD E.1 AND E.2 ST IE.X		AND operation of both inputs	 Normally closed 2 Open contact 2 Output
Ö1	Ö2	A																			
0	0	0																			
1	0	0																			
0	1	0																			
1	1	1																			
4	 eSwitch_2oT	<table border="1"> <tr> <td>Ö1</td> <td>Ö2</td> <td>A</td> </tr> <tr> <td>0</td> <td>0</td> <td>0</td> </tr> <tr> <td>1</td> <td>0</td> <td>0</td> </tr> <tr> <td>0</td> <td>1</td> <td>0</td> </tr> <tr> <td>1</td> <td>1</td> <td>1</td> </tr> </table>	Ö1	Ö2	A	0	0	0	1	0	0	0	1	0	1	1	1	LD E.1 OR E.2 ST META_EN.1 LD E.1 AND E.2 ST METB_EN.1 LD MET.1 ST IE.X	Time monitoring MET1..MET4	Like 3, but with time monitoring of state changes. In case of signal changes at S or Ö a complementary signal must follow within a period of t=3 s. If not, detect fault and A=0	 Normally closed 1 Normally closed 2 Output max. 3 s max. 3 s
Ö1	Ö2	A																			
0	0	0																			
1	0	0																			
0	1	0																			
1	1	1																			

Installation manual



Type	Graphic symbols	Truth table			Function																															
5	<p>eSwitch_1s1o</p>	<table border="1"> <thead> <tr> <th>S</th> <th>Ö</th> <th>A</th> </tr> </thead> <tbody> <tr> <td>0</td> <td>0</td> <td>0</td> </tr> <tr> <td>1</td> <td>0</td> <td>0</td> </tr> <tr> <td>0</td> <td>1</td> <td>1</td> </tr> <tr> <td>1</td> <td>1</td> <td>0</td> </tr> </tbody> </table>	S	Ö	A	0	0	0	1	0	0	0	1	1	1	1	0	<p>LD E.1 AND NOT E.2 ST IE.X</p>		<p>Monitoring for S=inactive and Ö=active</p>	<p>Normally closed contact Normally open contact Output</p>															
S	Ö	A																																		
0	0	0																																		
1	0	0																																		
0	1	1																																		
1	1	0																																		
6	<p>eSwitch_1s1oT</p>	<table border="1"> <thead> <tr> <th>S</th> <th>Ö</th> <th>A</th> </tr> </thead> <tbody> <tr> <td>0</td> <td>0</td> <td>0</td> </tr> <tr> <td>1</td> <td>0</td> <td>0</td> </tr> <tr> <td>0</td> <td>1</td> <td>1</td> </tr> <tr> <td>1</td> <td>1</td> <td>0</td> </tr> </tbody> </table>	S	Ö	A	0	0	0	1	0	0	0	1	1	1	1	0	<p>LD E.1 OR NOT E.2 ST META_EN.1</p> <p>LD E1 AND NOT E2 ST METB_EN.1</p> <p>LD MET.1 ST IE.X</p>	<p>Time monitoring MET1..MET4</p>	<p>Like 5, but with time monitoring of state changes. In case of signal changes at S or Ö a complementary signal must follow within a period of t=3 s. If not, detect fault and A=0</p>	<p>max. 3 s max. 3 s</p> <p>Normally closed contact Normally open contact Output</p>															
S	Ö	A																																		
0	0	0																																		
1	0	0																																		
0	1	1																																		
1	1	0																																		
7	<p>eSwitch_2s2o</p>	<table border="1"> <thead> <tr> <th>S1</th> <th>Ö1</th> <th>S2</th> <th>Ö2</th> <th>A</th> </tr> </thead> <tbody> <tr> <td>1</td> <td>1</td> <td>1</td> <td>0</td> <td>0</td> </tr> <tr> <td>1</td> <td>0</td> <td>1</td> <td>0</td> <td>0</td> </tr> <tr> <td>0</td> <td>1</td> <td>1</td> <td>0</td> <td>0</td> </tr> <tr> <td>0</td> <td>1</td> <td>0</td> <td>1</td> <td>1</td> </tr> <tr> <td>1</td> <td>0</td> <td>0</td> <td>1</td> <td>0</td> </tr> </tbody> </table>	S1	Ö1	S2	Ö2	A	1	1	1	0	0	1	0	1	0	0	0	1	1	0	0	0	1	0	1	1	1	0	0	1	0	<p>LD E.1 AND E.2 AND NOT E.3 ST IE.X</p>		<p>Monitoring for S1*S2=inactive and Ö1*Ö2=active</p>	<p>Normally closed 1 Normally closed 2 Normally open contact Output</p>
S1	Ö1	S2	Ö2	A																																
1	1	1	0	0																																
1	0	1	0	0																																
0	1	1	0	0																																
0	1	0	1	1																																
1	0	0	1	0																																

Installation manual



Type	Graphic symbols	Truth table			Function																															
8	<p>eSwitch_2s2oT</p>	<table border="1"> <thead> <tr> <th>S1</th> <th>Ö</th> <th>S2</th> <th>Ö2</th> <th>A</th> </tr> </thead> <tbody> <tr> <td></td> <td>1</td> <td></td> <td></td> <td></td> </tr> <tr> <td>1</td> <td>0</td> <td>1</td> <td>0</td> <td>0</td> </tr> <tr> <td>0</td> <td>1</td> <td>1</td> <td>0</td> <td>0</td> </tr> <tr> <td>0</td> <td>1</td> <td>0</td> <td>1</td> <td>1</td> </tr> <tr> <td>1</td> <td>0</td> <td>0</td> <td>1</td> <td>0</td> </tr> </tbody> </table>	S1	Ö	S2	Ö2	A		1				1	0	1	0	0	0	1	1	0	0	0	1	0	1	1	1	0	0	1	0	<p>LD E.1 OR E.2 OR NOT E.3 ST META_EN.1</p> <p>LD E.1 AND E.2 AND NOT E.3 ST METB_EN.1</p> <p>LD MET.1 ST IE.X</p>	Time monitoring MET1..MET4	<p>Like 6, but with time monitoring of state changes. In case of signal changes at S (Attention: Bus line) or Ö a complementary signal must follow within a period of $t=3$ s. If not, detect fault and $A=0$</p>	
S1	Ö	S2	Ö2	A																																
	1																																			
1	0	1	0	0																																
0	1	1	0	0																																
0	1	0	1	1																																
1	0	0	1	0																																
9	<p>eSwitch_3o</p>	<table border="1"> <thead> <tr> <th>Ö1</th> <th>Ö2</th> <th>Ö3</th> <th>A</th> </tr> </thead> <tbody> <tr> <td>0</td> <td>0</td> <td>0</td> <td>0</td> </tr> <tr> <td>1</td> <td>0</td> <td>0</td> <td>0</td> </tr> <tr> <td>0</td> <td>1</td> <td>0</td> <td>0</td> </tr> <tr> <td>1</td> <td>1</td> <td>0</td> <td>0</td> </tr> <tr> <td>1</td> <td>1</td> <td>1</td> <td>1</td> </tr> </tbody> </table>	Ö1	Ö2	Ö3	A	0	0	0	0	1	0	0	0	0	1	0	0	1	1	0	0	1	1	1	1	<p>LD E.1 AND E.2 AND E.3 ST IE.X</p>		AND operation of both inputs							
Ö1	Ö2	Ö3	A																																	
0	0	0	0																																	
1	0	0	0																																	
0	1	0	0																																	
1	1	0	0																																	
1	1	1	1																																	
10	<p>eSwitch_3oT</p>	<table border="1"> <thead> <tr> <th>Ö1</th> <th>Ö2</th> <th>Ö3</th> <th>A</th> </tr> </thead> <tbody> <tr> <td>0</td> <td>0</td> <td>0</td> <td>0</td> </tr> <tr> <td>1</td> <td>0</td> <td>0</td> <td>0</td> </tr> <tr> <td>0</td> <td>1</td> <td>0</td> <td>0</td> </tr> <tr> <td>1</td> <td>1</td> <td>0</td> <td>0</td> </tr> <tr> <td>1</td> <td>1</td> <td>1</td> <td>1</td> </tr> </tbody> </table>	Ö1	Ö2	Ö3	A	0	0	0	0	1	0	0	0	0	1	0	0	1	1	0	0	1	1	1	1	<p>LD E.1 OR E.2 OR E.3 ST META_EN.1</p> <p>LD E.1 AND E.2 AND E.3 ST METB_EN.1 LD MET.1</p> <p>ST IE.X</p>	Time monitoring MET1..MET4	<p>Like 8, but with time monitoring of state changes. In case of signal change on one of the Ö-inputs the other inputs must follow within a period of $t=3$ s. If not, detect fault and $A=0$</p>							
Ö1	Ö2	Ö3	A																																	
0	0	0	0																																	
1	0	0	0																																	
0	1	0	0																																	
1	1	0	0																																	
1	1	1	1																																	

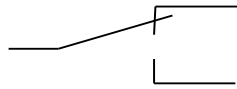
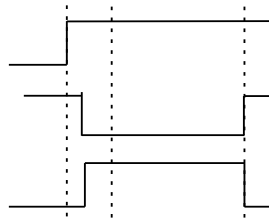
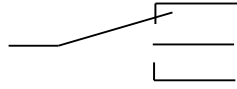
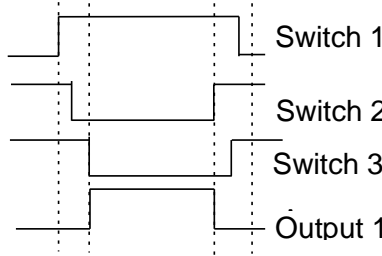
Installation manual



Type	Graphic symbols	Truth table			Function																															
11	<p>eTwoHand_2o</p>	<table border="1"> <thead> <tr> <th>Ö</th> <th>S</th> <th>Ö</th> <th>S</th> <th>A</th> </tr> </thead> <tbody> <tr> <td>1</td> <td>1</td> <td>2</td> <td>2</td> <td></td> </tr> <tr> <td>0</td> <td>1</td> <td>0</td> <td>1</td> <td>0</td> </tr> <tr> <td>1</td> <td>0</td> <td>0</td> <td>1</td> <td>0</td> </tr> <tr> <td>1</td> <td>0</td> <td>1</td> <td>0</td> <td>0</td> </tr> <tr> <td>0</td> <td>1</td> <td>0</td> <td>1</td> <td>1</td> </tr> </tbody> </table>	Ö	S	Ö	S	A	1	1	2	2		0	1	0	1	0	1	0	0	1	0	1	0	1	0	0	0	1	0	1	1	<p>LD NOT E.1 OR E.2 OR NOT E.3 OR E.4 ST MEZ_EN.1</p> <p>LD E.1 AND NOT E2 AND E3 AND NOT E4 ST MEZ_EN.2</p> <p>LD NOT E1 AND E.2 AND NOT E3 AND E.4 ST MEZ_EN.3</p> <p>LD MEZ.1 ST IE.X</p>	Two-hand operation MEZ	<p>Monitoring for $S1*S2=inactive$ and $Ö1*Ö2=active$ + temporal monitoring of this status. This means that in case of a signal change of an S from 1->0 or Ö from 0->1, the other signals (i.e. further S=0 or Ö=1) must follow within a period of 0.5 s. If not, the output = 0.</p> <p>No interference evaluation! No temporal monitoring when changing to inactive state.</p>	<p>Normally closed 1</p> <p>Normally closed 2</p> <p>Output</p> <p>max. 0,5 s</p>
Ö	S	Ö	S	A																																
1	1	2	2																																	
0	1	0	1	0																																
1	0	0	1	0																																
1	0	1	0	0																																
0	1	0	1	1																																
12	<p>eTwoHand_2s</p>	<table border="1"> <thead> <tr> <th>S1</th> <th>S2</th> <th>A</th> </tr> </thead> <tbody> <tr> <td>1</td> <td>0</td> <td>0</td> </tr> <tr> <td>0</td> <td>1</td> <td>0</td> </tr> <tr> <td>0</td> <td>0</td> <td>0</td> </tr> <tr> <td>1</td> <td>1</td> <td>1</td> </tr> </tbody> </table>	S1	S2	A	1	0	0	0	1	0	0	0	0	1	1	1	<p>LD E.1 OR E.2 ST MEZ_EN.1</p> <p>LD NOT E.1 AND NOT E.2 ST MEZ_EN.2</p> <p>LD E.1 AND E.2 ST MEZ_EN.3</p> <p>LD MEZ.1 ST IE.X</p>	Two-hand operation MEZ	<p>Monitoring for $S1*S2=inactive$ + temporal monitoring of this status. This means that in case of a signal change of one S from 1->0 the other signal (i.e. another S=0) must follow within a period of 0.5 s. If not, the output = 0.</p> <p>No interference evaluation! No temporal monitoring when changing to inactive state.</p>	<p>Normally open 1</p> <p>Normally open 2</p> <p>Output</p> <p>max. 0,5 s</p>															
S1	S2	A																																		
1	0	0																																		
0	1	0																																		
0	0	0																																		
1	1	1																																		

Installation manual



Type	Graphic symbols	Truth table			Function																																																							
13	 <p>eMode_1s1o</p>	<table border="1"> <thead> <tr> <th>S1</th> <th>S2</th> <th>A 1</th> <th>A 2</th> </tr> </thead> <tbody> <tr> <td>1</td> <td>0</td> <td>1</td> <td>0</td> </tr> <tr> <td>0</td> <td>1</td> <td>0</td> <td>1</td> </tr> <tr> <td>0</td> <td>0</td> <td>0</td> <td>0</td> </tr> <tr> <td>1</td> <td>1</td> <td>0</td> <td>0</td> </tr> </tbody> </table>	S1	S2	A 1	A 2	1	0	1	0	0	1	0	1	0	0	0	0	1	1	0	0	<p>LD E.1 AND NOT E.2 ST IE.X1</p> <p>LD NOT E.1 AND E.2 ST IE.X2</p>	Selector switch	Clear linkage of permissible switch positions	 <p>Normally closed contact Normally open contact Output</p>																																		
S1	S2	A 1	A 2																																																									
1	0	1	0																																																									
0	1	0	1																																																									
0	0	0	0																																																									
1	1	0	0																																																									
14	 <p>eMode_3switch</p>	<table border="1"> <thead> <tr> <th>S1</th> <th>S2</th> <th>S3</th> <th>A 1</th> <th>A 2</th> <th>A 3</th> </tr> </thead> <tbody> <tr> <td>1</td> <td>0</td> <td>0</td> <td>1</td> <td>0</td> <td>0</td> </tr> <tr> <td>0</td> <td>1</td> <td>0</td> <td>0</td> <td>1</td> <td>0</td> </tr> <tr> <td>0</td> <td>0</td> <td>1</td> <td>0</td> <td>0</td> <td>1</td> </tr> <tr> <td>1</td> <td>1</td> <td>0</td> <td>0</td> <td>0</td> <td>0</td> </tr> <tr> <td>1</td> <td>0</td> <td>1</td> <td>0</td> <td>0</td> <td>0</td> </tr> <tr> <td>0</td> <td>1</td> <td>1</td> <td>0</td> <td>0</td> <td>0</td> </tr> <tr> <td>1</td> <td>1</td> <td>1</td> <td>0</td> <td>0</td> <td>0</td> </tr> <tr> <td>0</td> <td>0</td> <td>0</td> <td>0</td> <td>0</td> <td>0</td> </tr> </tbody> </table>	S1	S2	S3	A 1	A 2	A 3	1	0	0	1	0	0	0	1	0	0	1	0	0	0	1	0	0	1	1	1	0	0	0	0	1	0	1	0	0	0	0	1	1	0	0	0	1	1	1	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	<p>LD E.1 AND NOT E.2 AND NOT E.3 ST IE.X1</p> <p>LDN E.1 AND E2 AND NOT E.3 ST IE.X2</p> <p>LDN E.1 AND NOT E.2 AND E.3 ST IE.X3</p>	Selector switch	Clear linkage of permissible switch positions	 <p>Switch 1 Switch 2 Switch 3 Output 1</p>
S1	S2	S3	A 1	A 2	A 3																																																							
1	0	0	1	0	0																																																							
0	1	0	0	1	0																																																							
0	0	1	0	0	1																																																							
1	1	0	0	0	0																																																							
1	0	1	0	0	0																																																							
0	1	1	0	0	0																																																							
1	1	1	0	0	0																																																							
0	0	0	0	0	0																																																							

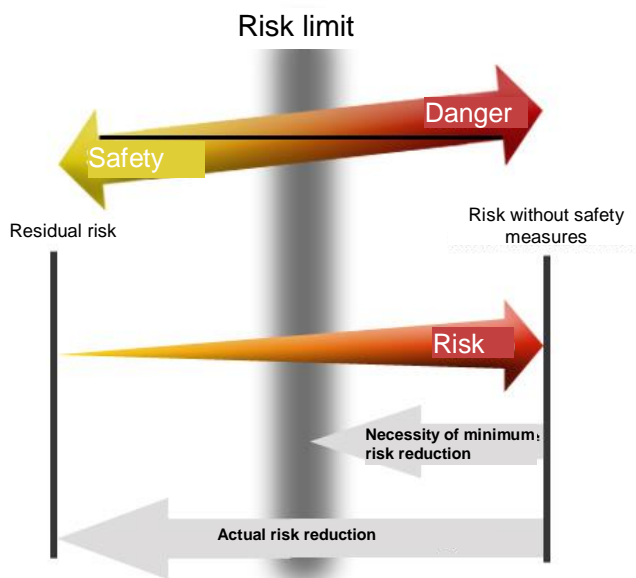
12 Notes on designing, programming, validating and testing safety related applications

The following notes describe the procedure for designing, programming, validating and testing safety related applications.

The information should help the user to classify, to easily understand and to use all steps from risk assessment all the way to the system test. For better understanding the respective subjects, the individual steps are explained by means of examples.

12.1 Risk assessment

The manufacturer of a machine must generally guarantee the safety of any machine designed or delivered by him. The assessment of safety must be based on the applicable and appropriate regulations and standards. Objective of the safety assessment and the measures derived from this must be the reduction of risks for persons down to an acceptable minimum.



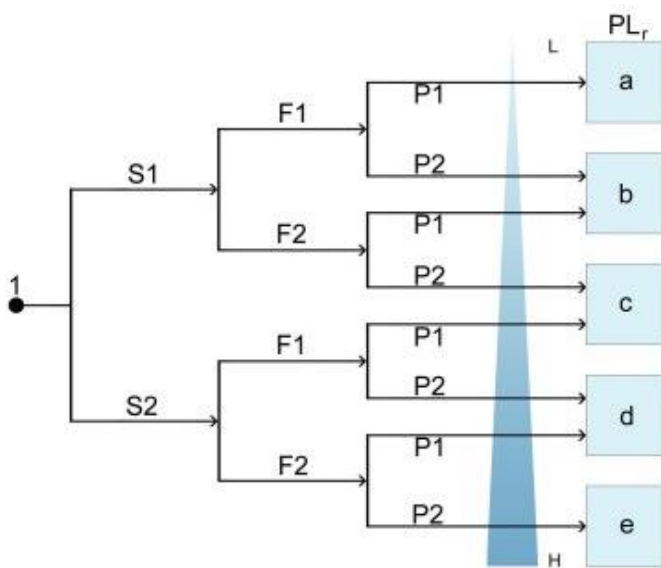
The risk analysis must account for all operating conditions of the machine, such as operation, setup work and maintenance or installation and decommissioning as well as predictable erroneous operation.

The procedure required for the risk analysis and the measures for reducing such risks can be found in the applicable standards

EN ISO 13849-1 Safety of machines

IEC 61508 Functional safety of safety related e/e/p e systems.

Risk assessment as per EN ISO 13849-1

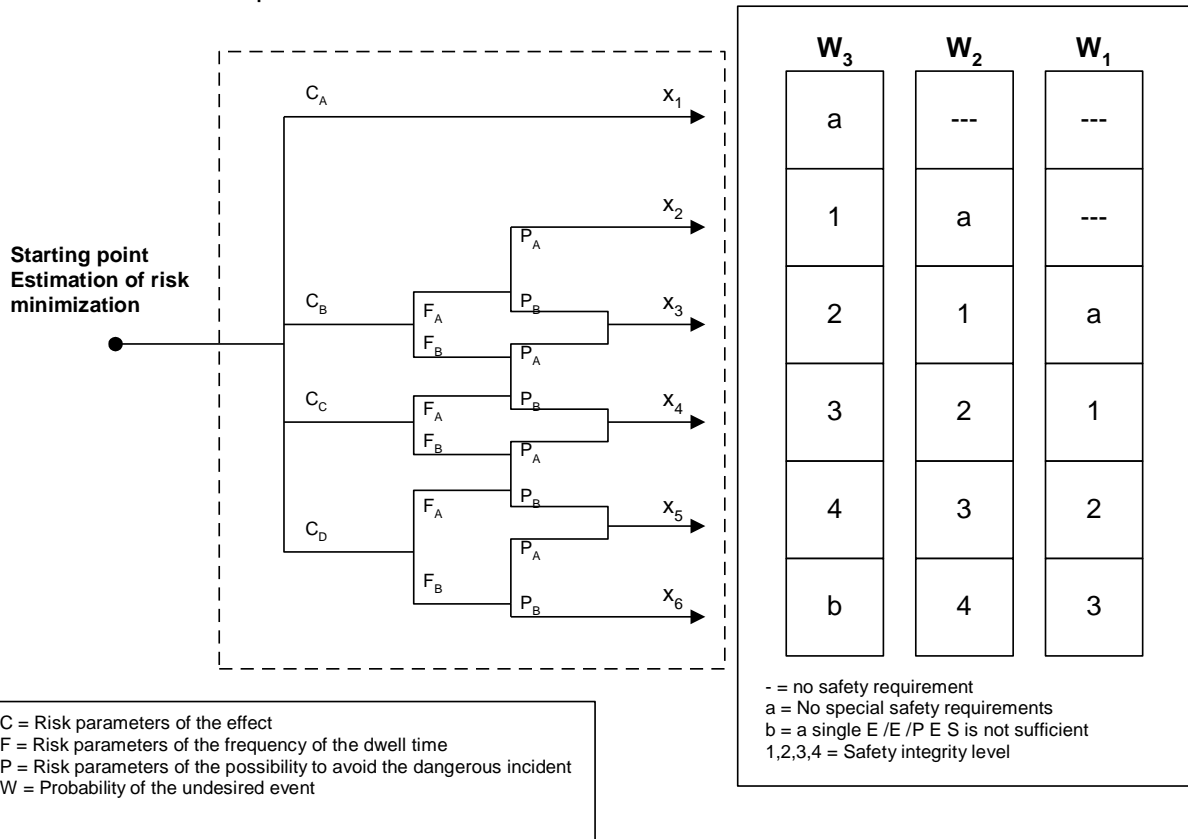


S – Severe physical injury
 S1 = minor, reversible injury
 S2 = severe, irreversible injury

F – Frequency and/or duration of exposure to danger
 F1 = rarely, not cyclic
 F2 = frequently up to permanent and/or long duration, cyclic operation

P – Possibility to avoid the danger
 P1 = possible, slow movement / acceleration
 P2 = hardly possible, high acceleration in case of a fault

Risk assessment as per IEC 61508



The risks to be examined can also be found in applicable regulations and standards, or must be considered separately by the manufacturer based on his specific knowledge of the machine.

For machines sold within the EU the minimum risks to be examined are specified in the EU machine directive 2006/42/EU or in the latest version of this directive.

Further information concerning the risk assessment and the safe design of machines can be found in the standards

EN 14121 Safety of machines - risk assessment

EN 12100 Safety of machines - basic terms, general design guidelines

Measures to be applied in order to reduce identified risks must at least be of the same level as the danger itself. The regulations and standards specified above contain examples of such measures and the associated requirements.

12.2 Required technical documents

The manufacturer is obliged to supply various technical documents. The minimum extent is also contained in the applicable regulations and standards.

The EU machine directive, for example, requires the delivery of the following documents:

1. The technical file shall comprise the following:
 - a) a construction file including:
 - a general description of the machinery,
 - the overall drawing of the machinery and drawings of the control circuits, as well as the pertinent descriptions and explanations necessary for understanding the operation of the machinery,
 - full detailed drawings, accompanied by any calculation notes, test results, certificates, etc., required to check the conformity of the machinery with the essential health and safety requirements,
 - the documentation on risk assessment demonstrating the procedure followed, including:
 - i) a list of the essential health and safety requirements which apply to the machinery,
 - ii) the description of the protective measures implemented to eliminate identified hazards or to reduce risks and, when appropriate, the indication of the residual risks associated with the machinery,
 - the standards and other technical specifications used, indicating the essential health and safety requirements covered by these standards,
 - any technical report giving the results of the tests carried out either by the manufacturer or by a body chosen by the manufacturer or his authorised representative,
 - a copy of the instructions for the machinery,
 - where appropriate, the declaration of incorporation for included partly completed machinery and the relevant assembly instructions for such machinery,
 - where appropriate, copies of the EC declaration of conformity of machinery or other products incorporated into the machinery,
 - a copy of the EC declaration of conformity;
 - b) for series manufacture, the internal measures that will be implemented to ensure that the machinery remains in conformity with the provisions of this Directive.

Source BGIA Report 2/2008

The documents must be easy to understand and should be written in the language of the corresponding country.

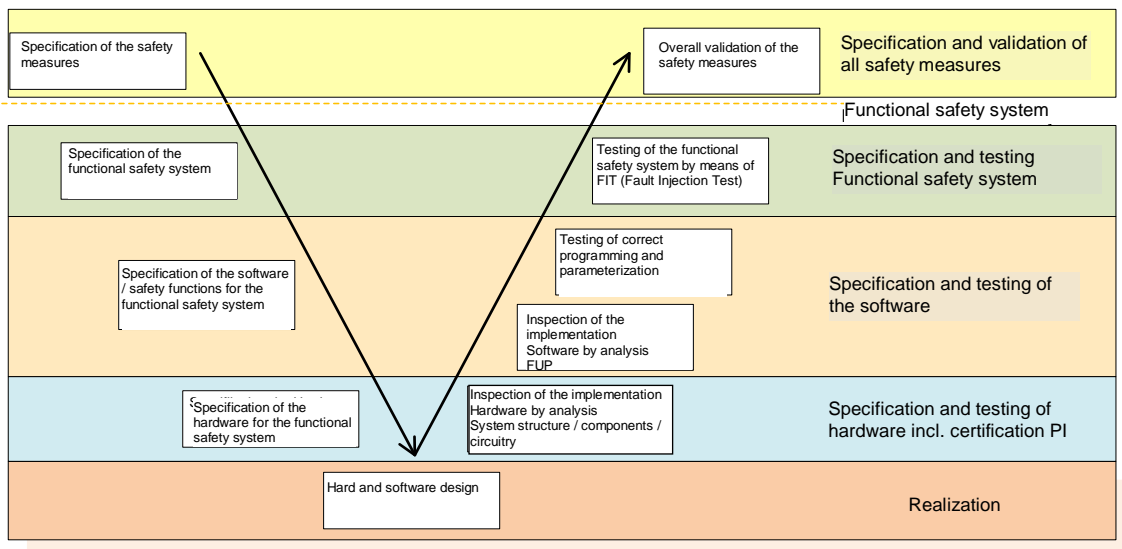
12.3 Necessary steps for draft, realization and testing

The realization of plant sections with safety related function requires special attention in planning, realization and testing. Also for this the standards (see ISO 13849-2 or EN ISO 61508) contain specific guidelines. The effort thereby is orientated on the complexity of the task for system components with safety related function.

For the realization of such functions the SMX-series offers safety relevant control and monitoring functions to support the system architecture (architecture Cat. 4 acc. to EN ISO 13849-1) and, above all, also the programming language and tested safety functions. Programming uses the form FUP (function plan oriented programming) recommended by the safety standards. It fully meets the requirements on the programming language with limited scope of languages (LVM) for the essential simplifications in documentation and testing. The individual steps in any case require careful planning and analysis of the methods and systems used. Furthermore, the individual steps must be documented in an understandable way.

V-model (simplified)

The implementation of safety related functions requires a structured approach, like the V-model that is exemplary described in applicable standards. The following shows an exemplary approach for applications with modules of the SMX100-series.



Phases of the V-model

Designation	Description	Validation phase
Specification and validation of all safety measures.	Design phase Specification of all passive and active safety measures to be applied, such as covers, barriers, max. machine parameters, safety related functions, etc.	Testing of all passive and active safety measures for correct implementation and effectiveness.
Specification of the functional safety systems	Specification of the active safety systems and their assignment to the risks to be reduced, such as e.g. reduced speed in setup operation, stop-mode, monitoring of access areas, etc. Specification of the PIR or the demanded SIL for each individual safety function	Testing of all active safety systems regarding effectiveness and compliance with specific parameters, such as e.g. erroneous increased speed, faulty stop, responding of monitoring facilities, etc. by means of practical tests
Specification of software / safety functions	Specification of the functionality of individual safety functions incl. the definition of the shut-down circuit, etc. Definition of parameters for individual safety functions, such as e.g. max. speed, stop ramps and - categories, etc.	Testing of correct implementation of specified functions by analysis FUP programming Validation of application programs and parameters by comparing the validation report with FUP or specifications for parameters
Specification of the hardware	Specification of the system structure and the functions of the individual sensors, command units, control components and actuators regarding their safety functions	Testing of the correct implementation of specifications. Determination of the failure probability or PI by means of analysis of the overall architecture and the characteristic data of all components involved, each related to the individual safety functions
Hard and software design	Actual planning and implementation of system structure / wiring. Actual implementation of safety functions by programming in FUP	nil

12.3.1 Specification of safety requirements (structural schematic)

The safety requirements must be individually analysed on the basis of applicable standards, e.g. product standard.

- 1 General product and project information**
 - 1.1 Product identification
 - 1.2 Author, version, date, document name, file name
 - 1.3 Contents
 - 1.4 Terminology, definitions, glossary
 - 1.5 Version history and changes
 - 1.6 Directives, standards and technical rules relevant to development
- 2 Functional information on the machine, where relevant to safety**
 - 2.1 Intended use and reasonably foreseeable misuse
 - 2.2 Process description (operating functions)
 - 2.3 Operating modes (e.g. setup mode, automatic mode, operation of localized relevance or of parts of the machine)
 - 2.4 Characteristic data, e.g. cycle times, response times, overrun distances
 - 2.5 Other characteristics of the machine
 - 2.6 Safe state of the machine
 - 2.7 Interaction between processes (see also 2.2) and manual actions (repair, setup, cleaning, troubleshooting, etc.)
 - 2.8 Emergency operations
- 3 Required Performance Level(s) (PL_r)**
 - 3.1 Reference to existing documentation concerning the hazard analysis and risk assessment for the machine
 - 3.2 Results of the risk assessment for each identified hazard or hazardous situation and specification of the safety function(s) required in each case for risk reduction

4 Safety functions (information applies to each safety function)

- Description of the function (“input – logic – output”) including all functional characteristics (refer also to Tables 5.1 and 5.2)
- Activation/deactivation conditions or events (e.g. operating modes of the machine)
- Behaviour of the machine when the safety function is triggered
- Conditions to be observed for re-starting
- Performance criteria/performance data
- Process (timing behaviour) of the safety function, including response time
- Frequency of actuation (i.e. demand rate), recovery time following demand
- Other data
- Adjustable parameters (where provided)
- Classification and assignment of priorities in the event of simultaneous demand for and processing of multiple safety functions
- Functional concept for separation or independence/freedom of reciprocal action from non-safety functions and further safety functions

5 Required information for the SRP/CS design

- 5.1 Allocation of the SRP/CS and the form of technology by which the safety function is to be implemented; intended equipment
- 5.2 Selection of the Category, designated architecture (structure) in the form of a safety-related block diagram and description
- 5.3 Description of the interfaces (process interfaces, internal interfaces, user interfaces, control and display elements, etc.)
- 5.4 Behaviour at switch-on, implementation of the required starting and restarting behaviour
- 5.5 Performance data: cycle times, response times, etc.
- 5.6 Behaviour of the SRP/CS in the event of component failures and faults (achieve and maintain the safe state), including timing behaviour
- 5.7 Failure modes of components, modules or blocks which are to be considered; where applicable, reasoning for fault exclusions
- 5.8 Concept for implementation of the detection and control of random and systematic failures (self-tests, test circuits, monitoring arrangements, comparisons, plausibility tests, fault detection by the process, etc.)
- 5.9 Quantitative aspects
 - 5.9.1 Target values for $MTTF_d$ and DC_{avg}

- 5.9.2 Switching frequency of components subject to wear
- 5.9.3 Frequency of measures for fault detection
- 5.9.4 Mission time, where different from the assumption upon which the intended architecture is based (20 years)
- 5.10 Operating and limit data (operating and storage temperature range, humidity class, IP degree of protection, resistance values for shock/vibration/EMC, supply data with tolerances, etc.)
- 5.11 Generic standards to be applied for design (for the equipment, for protection against electric shock/hazardous shock currents, for resistance to environmental conditions, etc.)
- 5.12 Technical and organizational measures for protected access to safety-related parameters and to SRP/CS characteristics (protection against tampering, access protection, program/data protection) and for protection against unauthorized operation (key switch, code, etc.), for example in non-standard operating modes
- 5.13 General technical requirements and organizational framework for commissioning, testing and acceptance, and for maintenance and repair

Source: General specification, excerpt from BGIA Report 2/2008 concerning EN ISO 13849-1

Example for an automatic handling machine:

Description of function:

The automatic handling machine serves the purpose of automatically picking up truck cabins of different heights. After being picked up, the height of the cabin is correctly detected, so that within the working area the cabin cannot be lowered below a certain height. Within the working area the automatic machine must not exceed a maximum speed. Once the cabin has been completely finished, it is put down at the end of the processing line and the automatic handling machine moves along a return track back to the beginning of the track to pick up the next cabin.....

Limits of the machine:

Spatial limits: The working area must provide sufficient space for the workers, so that they are able to carry out all necessary work on the cabin..... In the return pass there must be sufficient space for the empty suspension gear of the automatic handler...

Temporal limits: Description of lifetime, description of ageing processes, which could cause changes of machine parameters, (e.g. brakes). Monitoring mechanisms must be implemented for such cases.

Limits of use: The automatic machine automatically fetches new cabins and moves these through a processing area. Workers work in the processing area etc.

The following operating modes are intended: Setup operation, automatic operation and service operation ... etc.

Identification of dangers:

The following dangers are of relevance with the automatic handling machine:

Danger 1: Crushing by cabin / lifting beam falling down

Danger 2: Impact by moving cabin / lifting beam

Danger 3: Crushing by too fast lowering of the cabin in case of a fault

Danger 4:.....

Risk analysis:

G1: The weight of cabin and lifting beam is so high, that it will cause irreversible crushing or even fatalities.

G2: The moving cabin/lifting beam may cause impacts that can lead to irreversible injuries.

G3:

Risk assessment

A risk reduction is required under due consideration of all operating conditions.

Inherently (risk from the project) safe design

Movement of the cabin in direction x and y within the working area cannot be avoided. In the processing area the cabin must be moved up/down ...

The following measures can be applied:

Avoid dangers caused by too fast movements

Avoid dangers caused by too small distances

.....

Example for a risk assessment:

Risk assessment acc. to EN 12100:2010				Date:	03.08.2011
Project number		20			
Customer		BBH		Transformation transfer press	
01 Mechanical endangerment					
Description	Norm	Solution	Risk		
01.07 Gravity					
Life phase	II	Category	All modes of		
	III				
Crushers; presses	EN 60204-1			S4/A1/E1/M2	
With the loss of the power supply (power failure), drop of the power generator is impending. If the operator is in the press at this moment, lowering of the power generator on the worker is impending.		With an energy loss, the safety valves enter the safe state and a press movement is no longer possible.		<input checked="" type="checkbox"/> Electrically	
01.13 moving parts					
Life phase	II	Category	Loading mode		
	III				
Crushers; presses	EN 692			S4/A3/E4/M2	
When inserting the workpiece, the press cushion must be moved. The hand is thereby in the press. The press itself is active thereby and can move. A closure of the press is impending while the hand and the arm are in the tool.	EN 61800-5-2 EN ISO 13849-1 EN ISO 13849-2 EN 574 EN ISO 11161	The press can only be moved with safely reduced speed (SLS). A safety-oriented joystick is used for this. When the joystick button is released, the standstill is monitored (SOS). The tool can only be closed when the hand is removed from the tool and the two-hand control is triggered. If the condition of safely reduced speed of > 10m/s or standstill is infringed, the safety valves are released via the safety chain and the press goes into the safe state. The safety control SMX of BBH guarantees in SIL3 that standstill and safely reduced speed are enabled in a safety-oriented manner.		<input checked="" type="checkbox"/> Electrically	
03 Thermal endangerment					
Description	Norm	Solution	Risk		
www.Csafe.biz Life phase I=Transport II=Assembly III=Operation IV=Disposal 1 / 2					

Risk assessment acc. to EN 12100:2010				Date:	03.08.2011
Project number		20			
Customer		BBH		Transformation transfer press	
03.03 Objects or materials of high or low Tem					
Description	Norm	Solution	Risk		
03.03 Objects or materials of high or low Tem					
Life phase	III	Category	Insertion operation Conversion Cleaning and keeping clean Error search and error correction		
Combustion;	EN 60204-1 EN ISO 13849-1 EN ISO 13849-2			S3/A2/E2/M1	
The preheating tool for the foaming system is brought to a temperature of 120°. Contact or a temperature rise is impending in the event of an error.		The temperature of the preheating unit is monitored so that a dangerous temperature cannot be reached. Additionally, a warning signs warns about contact. In normal operation, the temperature does not increase so much that a significant endangerment occurs. The temperature is monitored via secure analog input and a heat sensor, so that. In the event of an error, the preheating unit is switched off and is protected from restarting.		<input checked="" type="checkbox"/> Electrically	
www.Csafe.biz Life phase I=Transport II=Assembly III=Operation IV=Disposal 2 / 2					

12.3.2 Specification of the functional safety system

Derived from the general danger and risk analysis for the machine, the active safety functions must be identified and specified.

Active safety functions are, e.g. safely reduced speed under certain system conditions, monitored stop and standstill functions, area monitoring facilities, processing of monitoring facilities like light grid, switching mats, etc.

The safety functions must each be delimited and the specific requirements in function and safety level must be defined.

12.3.2.1 Definition of safety functions

definition of the safety function must:

- specify the risk to be covered,
- describe the exact function,
- list all sensors, command equipment involved,
- specify the control units and
- designate the shut-down circuit mentioned.

The definition should serve as basis for the specification of the hardware and software design. For each of the safety functions defined this way one may need to determine parameters to be used, like e.g. max. system speed in setup operation, etc.

Examples for safety functions:

SF1: STO (safely switched off torque) to protect against safe starting

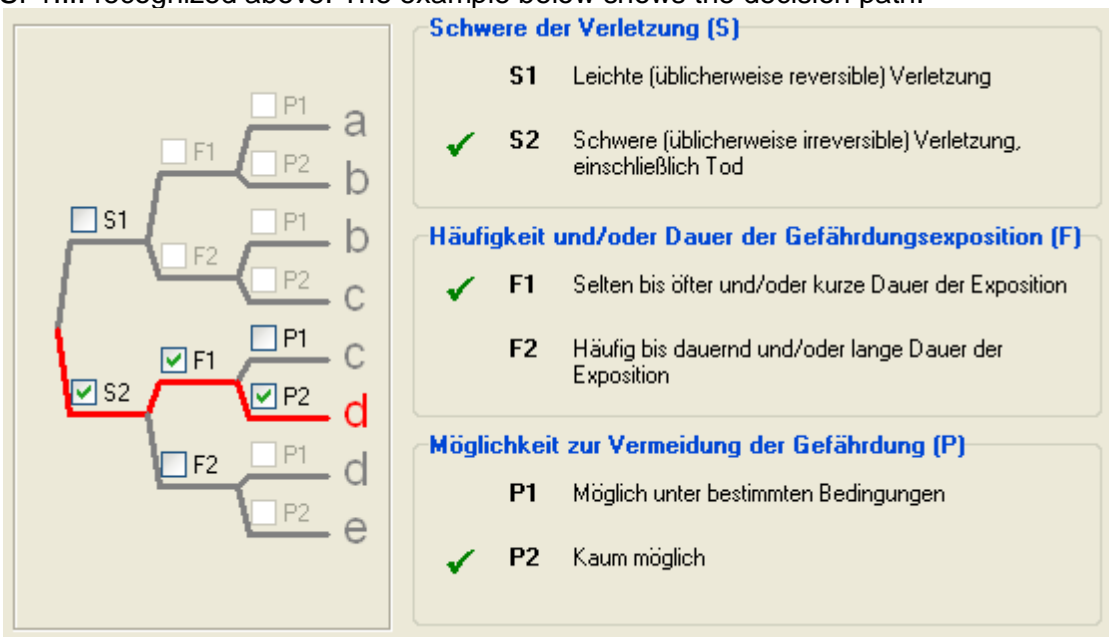
SF2: Safe speeds

SF3: Safe positions

SF4:.....

12.3.2.2 Required performance level (PLr) (additional emergency stop)

The required performance level must now be determined on basis of the safety functions SF1.... recognized above. The example below shows the decision path.



Example for SF1: Result PF = d (source Sistema)

12.3.2.3 Example – Specification of safety functions in form of a table

Con s.- No.	Safety function	Ref from GFA	Pl _r	Measuring value /sensor	Implementation of software	Nominal parameters	Input/activation	Response/output
1.1	Limitation of max. travel speed to limitation of the maximum speed	2.3	e	1 x WCS absolute encoder 1 x Incremental encoder on motor / drive wheel	Monitoring by means of tested safety function SLS for fixed limits	550mm/s Fault distance monitoring 200mm	Input/activation	Operation stop SF 1.7.1
1.2	Limitation of max. travel speed in working area of workers Monitoring of the maximum speed to < 0.33 m/s	2.4	e	1 x WCS absolute encoder 1 x Incremental encoder on motor / drive wheel	Monitoring by means of tested safety function SLS for fixed limits	60 mm/s Fault distance monitoring 200mm	Permanently Reset: Acknowledgement button	SF 1.7.1
1.3	Limitation of max. travel speed in setup operation Monitoring of the maximum speed to < 0.07 m/s	3.1	d	1 x WCS absolute encoder 1 x Incremental encoder on motor / drive wheel	Monitoring by means of tested safety function SLS for fixed limits	70mm/s Fault distance monitoring 200mm	Identification of worker's work area via position of carriage AND NOT Setup Reset: Acknowledgement button	SF 1.7.1
1.4	Collision protection of carriage Monitoring of the distances between carriages for minimum distance by means of redundant laser distance measurement	2.5	d	2 x Laser distance measuring facilities	Monitoring of distances by means of tested SAC function. The analog distance measurements are reciprocally compared for max. tolerance (diagnose of analog sensor) M' monitored for minimum value (SAC function) Min distance value 25% of the max. value of the measuring device.		Operating mode Setup AND button "Bridge safety" Reset: Acknowledgement button	SF 1.7.1
1.6.1	Monitoring of carriage sensor system Muting management of the two carriage sensors	5.1	e	1 x WCS absolute encoder 1 x Incremental encoder on motor / drive wheel	Muting of diagnoses for both carriage sensors by means of tested SCA function Muting is started before each gap, a faulty encoder value will be temporarily suppressed. Within the gap an encoder value outside 2 to 16000mm will cause muting.		Pos 1 (7626 - 7850) Pos 2 (11030-1263) Pos 3 (75134-5338) Pos 4 (145562-145622) Pos 5 (143935-143995) Pos 6 (80000-80060)	SF 1.6.2

12.3.3 Software specification

The software specification refers to the previous specification of the safety functions. It can also be replaced by a correspondingly worked out specification of the safety functions, as far as this contains all specifications (see example under 12.3.2.3).

However, it is recommended to prepare an extracted list. This list should contain the following data:

- Designation of safety function
- Description of function
- Parameters, as far as available
- Triggering event / operating status
- Response / output

The specification in detail should be suitable for later validation of the programming.

Installation manual



Example of software specification

Con s.- No.	Safety function	Plr	Measuring value /sensor	Solution new	Input/ activation	Response/ output
1.4	Monitoring V_Rope to V_Nominal Monitoring of differences between speed of main drive and rope drive for maximum value	d	Digital incremental encoder, tachometer generator rope sheave	Monitoring by means of tested function SLS + SAC with comparison of speed ranges /analog value ranges = comparison for diagnose of the speed detection Shut-down dual-channel new (see below)	Permanently Reset: Acknowledgement button	Operation stop SF 1.3.1
1.6	Backstop Monitoring for reversing	d	Mechanical limit switch 22S2 Digital incremental encoder	Monitoring by means of tested function direction monitoring SDI	EMERGENCY (auxiliary contact 28K4 – reversing) Reset: Acknowledgement button	Operation stop SF 1.3.1
1.15	Step-by-step shut-down Activation of the safety brake	e	-	Processing of SF in Safe PLC	SF 1.2 SF 1.3.2 SF 1.7 SF 1.8	Setting the safety brake
1.8	Standstill functional	d	Digital incremental encoder	Standstill monitoring by means of tested function SOS	Regulator lock OR Set service brake	SF 1.15/ Set safety brake
1.9	direction monitoring	e	Digital incremental encoder,	Monitoring by means of tested function direction monitoring SDI	28K1 = FORW. 28K2 = BACK = safe <signals from control "Frey"'''	Operation stop SF 1.3.1

12.3.4 Hardware specification

The hardware specification should describe the entire system design and, in particular, the components used with their specific characteristic data. The hardware specification serves as basis for the determination of the achieved safety level based on the architecture and the characteristic data of all devices involved in a safety function.

Furthermore, the hardware specification should also specify the design measures applied for protecting against systematic and common cause faults.

12.3.4.1 Selection of SRP/CS and operating means

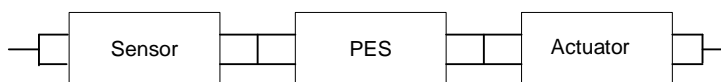
The selection of SRP/CS (Safety related parts of control system) is most suitable to achieve the intended safety level and should be made for any safety function. The components with safety relevant function must be designated in a total overview of the system structure and are to be assigned to the individual safety functions. The safety related code numbers must be determined for these components.

The code numbers cover the following values:

MTTFd = mean time to failure, the mean time until a danger imposing failure)
DC avg = Mean diagnostic coverage
CCF = common cause failure, a failure caused on a common cause

For an SRP/CS both the software and systematic faults must be taken into consideration.

An analysis of of the SRP/CS participating in the safety function must generally be performed in accordance with the schematic Sensor / PES / Actuator.



Installation manual



12.3.4.2 Example for hardware specification

Safety function		Safely reduced speed	SF 2.2	Safely monitored limited speed with door open							
Type	Designation	Function	Design	Characteristic data							Note
				Architecture	MTTF D [Years]	PFH [1/h]	B10d	Source	DC [%]	Source	
Sensor	Sensor 1	Door lock – Monitoring of the access door	A 3.1	4			100000	Data sheet	99	Inst. manual op. SMX	
	Sensor 2.1	Incremental encoder – Motor feedback SIN/COS	G 1.1	4	30			Gen. specification	99	Inst. manual op. SMX	Cat. 4 in connection with selection SMX
PES	Safety PLC	Central safety PLC for control and evaluation of safety relevant functions	A 4.1			1,4 E-8		Data sheet SMX			
Actuator	STO	Safe Torque Off on inverter	A 5.1	4	150			Data sheet inverter	99	Inst. manual op. SMX	Cat. 4 in connection with dual-channel
	Mains contactor	Contactors in mains line of inverter	K 5.1	4			20 E6	Data sheet contactor	99	Inst. manual op. SMX	Cat. 4 in connection with dual-channel

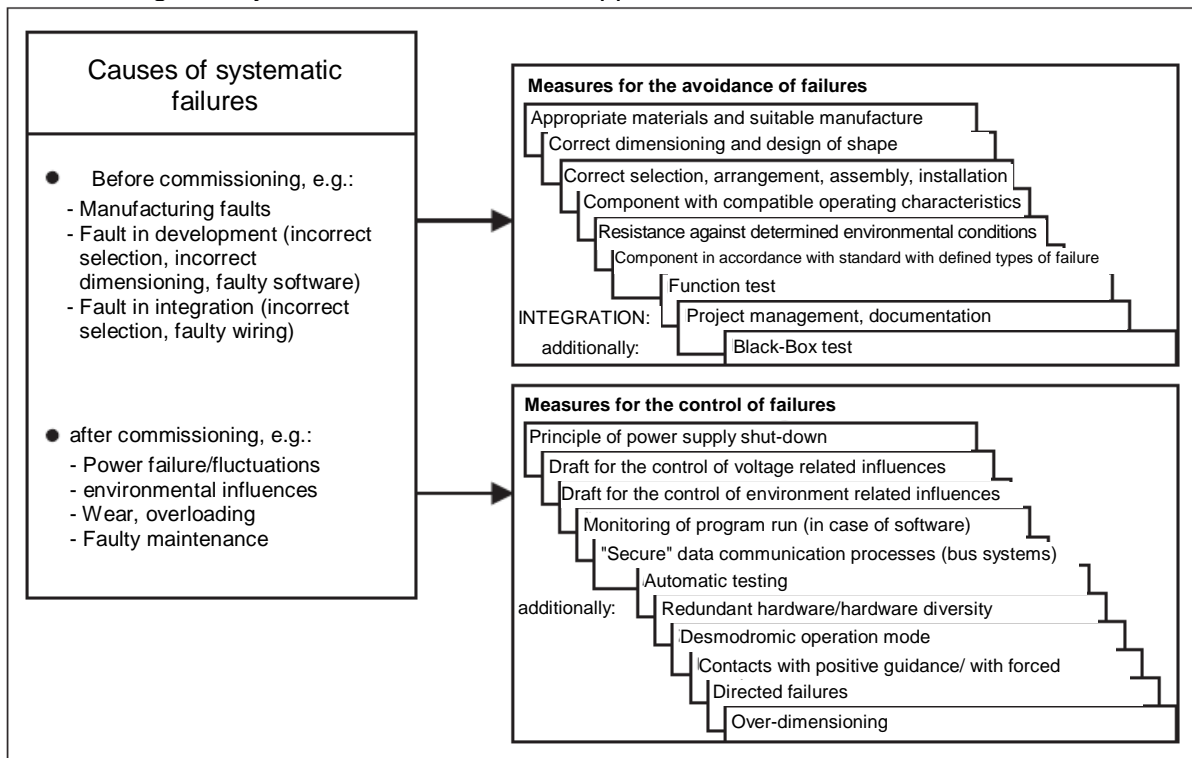
12.3.4.3 Consideration of systematic failures

Within the hardware specification one must also consider systematic failures.

Examples for measures against systematic failures:

Power drop during operation. If this causes a danger, a power drop must be considered a operating status. The SRP/CD must be able to cope with this condition, so that a safe state is maintained.

Measures against systematic failures acc. to appendix G DIN EN ISO 13849-9



Source BGIA Report 2/2008

Fault exclusions:

If fault exclusions are made for certain devices or system components, these must be individually nominated and specified.

Fault exclusions may be e.g. mech. shaft breakage, sticking of switching contacts, short-circuits in cables and lines, etc.

The permissibility of fault exclusions must be justified, e.g. by referencing to permissible fault exclusions acc. to applicable standards, e.g. EN ISO 13849-1)

If these fault exclusions require special measures, these must be mentioned.

Examples for fault exclusions and associated measures:

Positive connection for mechanical shaft connections

Dimensioning based on sufficient theoretical bases in case of breakage of components in the safety chain.

Positively guided connection with forced separation in case of sticking of switching contacts.

Protected routing within switchgear in case of short-circuit in cables and lines.

12.3.5 Hard and Software design

The performance targets from the hardware and software specification are implemented in the actual system design.

The performance targets for the components to be used and their wiring from the hardware specification must also be met, the same applies for the performance targets for fault exclusions. Both must be achieved and documented with appropriate means.

In the software one must also account for and completely implement the targets from the software specification.

Furthermore one must consider the superimposed targets placed on the software by safety related programming. These are among others:

Modular and clear program structure

Assignment of functions to the safety functions

Understandable representation functions by:

Unambiguous designations

Understandable comments

Use of tested functions / function modules, as far as this is possible

Defensive programming

12.3.6 Testing of the hardware design

After completing the planning the hardware design must be examined for compliance with the targets from the hardware specification.

Furthermore, one must check the compliance with the specified safety level for each safety function by using suitable analyses. The analysis methods have been described in applicable standards (e.g. EN ISO 13849-1).

Analysis of wiring diagram

Compliance with the targets set under safety related aspects can be checked by means of the wiring diagram and the bill of materials. The following must be checked in particular:

the correct wiring of components as specified,

the dual-channel structure, as far as specified

the non-reactivity of parallel, redundant channels.

The use of components as specified

The checks should be made by understandable analysis.

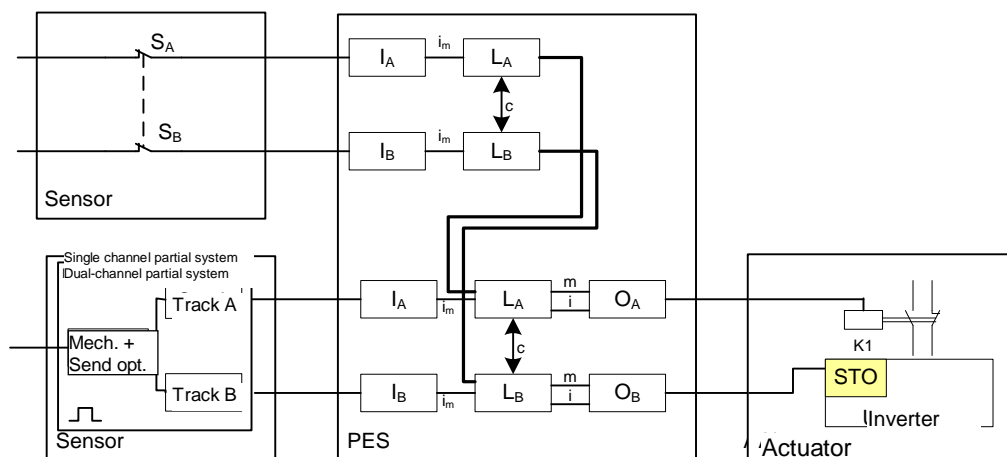
12.3.6.1 Iterative testing of the achieved safety level

The achieved safety level must be determined by means of the circuit structure (= architecture single-channel (dual-channel / with or without diagnose), the characteristic device data (manufacturer's data or appropriate sources) and the diagnostic coverage (manufacturer's data PES or general sources). Appropriate measures can be taken from the underlying safety standard.

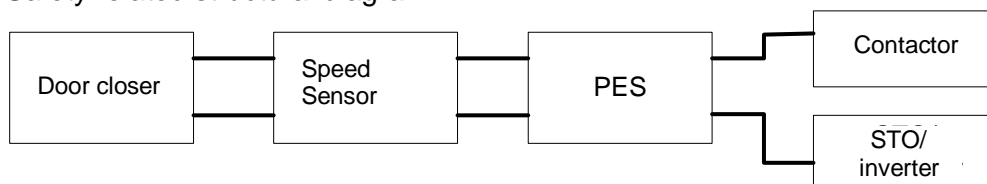
A calculation acc. to EN ISO 13849-1 shall serve as an example:

Safety function:
Safely reduced speed with access door open

Structural diagram:



Safety related structural diagram:



Calculation acc. to EN ISO 13849-1:

Channel A – shut-down via mains contactor:

Component	MTTFD [years]	DC
Door closer	B10d = 100000 Nop = 30/AT = 9270/ year (309 AT/ year)	DCSwitch = 99%

$$\text{MTTFD} = \frac{\text{B10d}}{0,1 * \text{Nop}} = \mathbf{9270 \text{ years}}$$

SIN/COS-encoder	MTTFD_SinCos = 30 years	DCEncoder = 99%
-----------------	-------------------------	-----------------

PES	PFH = 1,4 * 10 ⁻⁸	DCPES = 99%
-----	------------------------------	-------------

$$\text{MTTFD} = \frac{1}{8760 * \text{MTTFD}} = 107,87 \text{ years} \\ \approx \mathbf{108 \text{ years}}$$

Mains contactor	B10d = 20 * 10 ⁶ Nop = 20/AT = 3990/year (309 AT/year)	DCPES = 60%
-----------------	--	-------------

$$\text{MTTFD} = \frac{\text{B10d}}{0,1 * \text{Nop}} \\ = 32.362,46 \text{ years} \quad \approx \mathbf{32.362 \text{ years}}$$

$$\text{MTTFD}_A = \frac{1}{\frac{1}{\text{MTTFD}_{\text{Türz}}} + \frac{1}{\text{MTTFD}_{\text{SinCos}}} + \frac{1}{\text{MTTFD}_{\text{PES}}} + \frac{1}{\text{MTTFD}_{\text{Netzsch}}}} \\ = 23,29 \text{ years} \approx \mathbf{23 \text{ years}}$$

Channel B – shut-down via STO/inverter:

Component	MTTFD [years]	DC
Door closer	B10d = 100000 Nop = 30/AT = 9270/year (309 AT/year)	DCSwitch = 99%

$$MTTFD = \frac{B10d}{0,1 * Nop} = \mathbf{9270 \text{ years}}$$

SIN/COS-encoder	MTTFD_SinCos = 30 years	DCEncoder = 99%
-----------------	-------------------------	-----------------

PES	PFH = 1,4 * 10 ⁻⁸	DCPES = 99%
-----	------------------------------	-------------

$$MTTFD = \frac{1}{8760 * MTTFD} = 107,87 \text{ years} \approx \mathbf{108 \text{ years}}$$

STO/ inverter	MTTFD_STO = 150 years	DCPES = 90%
---------------	-----------------------	-------------

$$MTTFD_A = \frac{1}{\frac{1}{MTTFD_Türz} + \frac{1}{MTTFD_SinCos} + \frac{1}{MTTFD_PES} + \frac{1}{MTTFD_Netzsch}} = 20,25 \text{ years} \approx \mathbf{20 \text{ years}}$$

Resulting PI for both channels:

Symmetry of both channels:

$$MTTFD = \frac{2}{3} \left[MTTFD_A + MTTFD_B - \frac{1}{\frac{1}{MTTFD_A} + \frac{1}{MTTFD_B}} \right] = 21,53 \text{ years} \approx \mathbf{21,5 \text{ years}}$$

DC mean value

$$MTTFD = \frac{DCSwitch}{MTTFD_Türz} + \frac{DCSinCos}{MTTFD_SinCos} + \frac{DCPES}{MTTFD_PES} + \frac{DCSchütz}{MTTFD_Schütz} + \frac{DCSTO}{MTTFD_STO} = \frac{1}{\frac{1}{MTTFD_Türz} + \frac{1}{MTTFD_SinCos} + \frac{1}{MTTFD_PES} + \frac{1}{MTTFD_Netzsch} + \frac{1}{MTTFD_STO}} = 0,9776 \approx \mathbf{98\%}$$

PL

MTTFD = 21,5 years = average
DC avg = 98 % = average

PL = "d" (from EN ISO 13849-1, tables 5,6, and 7)

In this case the B10d value of the door monitoring feature is determining for PI. If an even higher safety level is to be reached a correspondingly higher qualitative switch is to be used.

Note:

The PI can also be determined with the program tool "Sistema" from BGIA.

12.3.7 Verification software(program) and parameters

Verification takes place in two steps:

1. Checking the FUP with respect to the specified functionality.
2. Checking the FUP against the AWL-listing of the validation report, or the default parameters against the one listed in the validation report.

12.3.7.1 Checking FUP

The programmed FUP must be compared with the defaults in the specification.

Note:

The comparison is all the more efficient the more clearly the programming has been structured with respect to the safety functions.

Example:

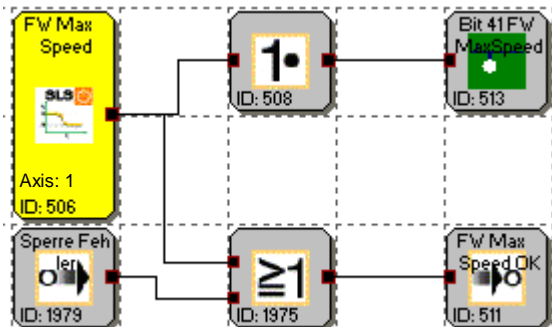
Safety function:

1.1 Limitation of the max. travel speed of the carriage to 1.1 VMax

Monitoring of the maximum speed to < 1.1 VMax

FW Max Speed OK (ID 548) (is bridged by available gap):

FW Max Speed is permanently activated and responds when a speed of 550 mm/s is exceeded.



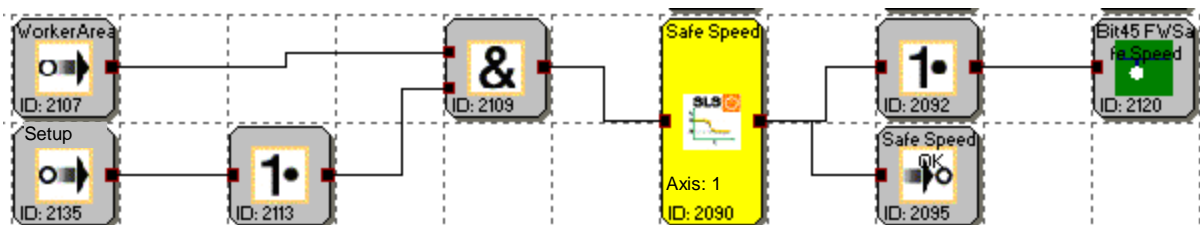
Safety function:

Limitation of max. travel speed in carriage in the worker's area:

Monitoring of the maximum speed to < 0.33 m/s

Safe Speed OK (ID 2124) (is bridged by available gap):

Safe Speed OK responds when the the safe speed SLS (ID 2090) is exceeded in the worker's area and during setup work.



Parameter SLS Safe Speed:

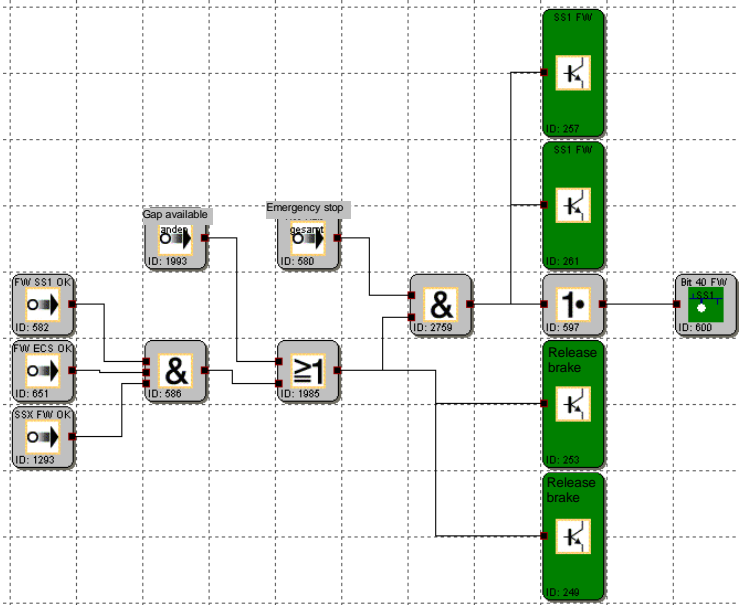
60 mm/s, no further parameters

Safety function:

1.7.3 Carriage shut down

Shut down of travel system and deactivation of brakes

Shut down on carriage



The carriage is switched off via two outputs (IQQ.5 ID 257 and 1.6 ID 261).

The brakes are released via two outputs (IQQ1.3 ID 253 and 1.4 ID 249).

The PLC receives a message concerning bit 40 (ID 600).

In case of an emergency stop the shut-down takes place immediately.

Lift

Safety function

Emergency stop switch inputs and shut-down outputs.

1.1 Emergency stop head control

Dual-channel emergency stop with pulse monitoring

If an emergency stop is triggered at the imposed control, this emergency stop can be bridged if the approval 'Bridge safety' has been issued.

Emergency stop button head control



Emergency stop contacts from emergency stop relay with pulsing from the **SMX100**

12.3.7.2 Validation of FUP against AWL and parameters by means of validation report.

The programming that took place in the FUP must be compared with the AWL-listing of the validation report.

Example AWL-listing in validation report

Validation report

OLC-program

Name: <leer>

Index	Command	Operand	validated
1	S1	SLI_EN.1	
2	S1	SLI_EN.2	
3	S1	SLI_EN.3	
4	S1	SCA_EN.1	
5	S1	SCA_EN.2	
6	S1	SCA_EN.3	
7	S1	SLS_EN.2	
8	S1	SCA_EN.4	
9	S1	SLS_EN.3	
10	S1	SLS_EN.4	
11	S1	SLI_EN.5	
12	SQH		
13	LD	E0.1	
14	ST	MX.2	
15	SQC		
16	SQH		
17	LD	E0.3	
18	AND	E0.4	
19	ST	MX.3	
20	SQC		

Step-by-step testing is recommended. The test all the batter, the more structured the programming in FUP has been made.

After checking the program one must also check the parameters against the targets set in the specifications by means of comparison.

Example SLS:

Validation report

Safe Limited Speed (SLS)

Index	Parameters	Value	validated
SLS - 0	Chosen axis:	1	
	Speed threshold:	2	0
SLS - 1	Chosen axis:	1	
	Speed threshold:	500	0
SLS - 2	Chosen axis:	1	
	Speed threshold:	2	0
	Acceleration threshold	2	0
SLS - 3	Chosen axis:	1	
	Speed threshold:	2	0
	Assigned SSX-ramp	0	

Example encoder configuration:

Validation report

Axis configuration / sensor interface

Axis 1

General parameters

Measuring distance: 500 0

Type: Rotational

No

Position processing: Activ

Maximum speed: 2000 0

Incremental shut-down: 10000 0

Shut-down

speed: 100 0

Sensors

0

0

Type: SSI-standard

SSI-standard

Format: Binary

Binary

Direction of rotation: Ascending

Ascending

Supply voltage: 0

0

Resolution: 1024 Steps//1000mm

64 Steps//1000mm

Offset: 0 Steps/

0 Steps/

General parameters correctly configured

Parameter sensor 1 correct

Parameter sensor 2 correct

12.3.8 Performance of the system test / FIT (fault injection test)

For the FIT the manufacturer must prepare a complete list of the functions to be tested. This list includes the defined safety functions as well as the fault test for checking the right response of the SRP/CS to this fault

Example test list:

No	Setup	Test	Result
1	Test SLS for max. speed in setup operation Activate setup operation Travel with maximally allowed speed	- Diagnose of the actual speed versus the SLS limit - Manipulation of the setup speed beyond the permitted reduced speed	
2	Test SSX for Stop-category 2 Travel with max. speed Actuate the emergency stop	- Diagnose of the SSX-ramp against the actual deceleration ramp - Setting an impermissible weak deceleration - Moving the axis after standstill is reached by manipulating the drive	
3	Test of the dual-channel door monitoring Select operating mode for setup operation	Diagnose of inactive monitoring with door closed (using diagnostics function FUP) Diagnose of active monitoring with door open (using diagnostics function FUP) Disconnecting one channel and opening the door Generate cross-shortening between both inputs	

Appendix

Appendix A – Classification of switch types

General note:

The individual switches of the following input elements can be assigned to the digital inputs I01 to I08 as desired.

Enable switch

Switch type	Comment	Classification PI acc. to EN ISO 13849-1	Classification SIL acc. to IEC 61508
1 normally closed	Enable switch standard	PL d	SIL 2
1 normally open	Enable switch standard	PL d	SIL 2
2 normally closed	Enable switch higher requirements	PL e	SIL 3
2 normally closed time monitored	Enable switch monitored	PL e	SIL 3

Emergency Stop

Switch type	Comment	Classification category	Classification SIL
1 normally closed	Emergency Stop standard	PL d ¹⁾	SIL 2
2 normally closed	Emergency stop higher requirements	PL e	SIL 3
2 normally closed time monitored	Emergency Stop monitored	PL e	SIL 3

¹⁾ Fault exclusions and boundary conditions acc. EN 13849-2 must be observed!

Door monitoring

Switch type	Comment	Classification category	Classification SIL
2 normally closed	Door monitoring higher requirements	PL e	SIL 3
2 normally closed time monitored	Door monitoring monitored	PL e	SIL 3
1 normally open + 1 normally closed	Door monitoring higher requirements	PL e	SIL 3
1 normally open + 1 normally closed time monitored	Door monitoring monitored		SIL 3
2 normally open + 2 normally closed	Door monitoring higher requirements	PL e	SIL 3
2 normally open + 2 normally closed time monitored	Door monitoring monitored	PL e	SIL 3
3 normally closed	Door monitoring higher requirements	PL e	SIL 3
3 normally closed time monitored	Door monitoring monitored	PL e	SIL 3

Two-hand button

Switch type	Comment	Classification category	Classification SIL
2 two-way switch	Two-hand button higher requirements	Type III C PL e	SIL3
2 normally open	Two-hand button monitored	Type III A PL e	SIL1

Note: With these in Port elements a fixed pulse assignment takes place, which cannot be influenced by the user!

Light curtain

Switch type	Comment	Classification category	Classification SIL
2 normally closed	Light curtain higher requirements	PL e	SIL 3
2 normally closed time monitored	Light curtain monitored	PL e	SIL 3
1 normally open + 1 normally closed	Light curtain higher requirements	PL e	SIL 3
1 normally open + 1 normally closed time monitored	Light curtain monitored	PL e	SIL 3

Mode selector switch

Switch type	Comment	Classification category	Classification SIL
2 positions	Mode selector switch monitored	PL e	SIL 3
3 positions	Mode selector switch monitored	PL e	SIL 3

Safety note: When changing the status of the switch the SafePLC program to be created must ensure that the outPorts of the module are deactivated (Note: Standard 60204-Part1-Paragraph 9.2.3).

Sensor

Switch type	Comment	Classification category	Classification SIL
1 normally closed	Sensor input standard	PL d	SIL 2
1 normally open	Sensor input standard	PL d	SIL 2
2 normally closed	Sensor input higher requirements	PL e	SIL 3
2 normally closed time monitored	Sensor input monitored	PL e	SIL 3
1 normally open + 1 normally closed	Sensor input higher requirements	PL e	SIL 3
1 normally open + 1 normally closed time monitored	Sensor input monitored	PL e	SIL 3

Start / reset element

Switch type	Comment	Classification category	Classification SIL
1 normally open	Alarm reset standard (evaluation of edge)	--	--
1 normally open	Logic reset standard	PL d	SIL 2
1 normally open	Start monitoring standard (optional function)	--	--

Note:

The alarm reset input can be operated with 24V continuous voltage and is edge triggered.

Appendix B – CE-Declaration



EU Declaration of Conformity for Safety Components as defined by the EC-directive

- Maschines 2006/42/EG
Appendix IV

The safety component

Manufacture: BBH Products GmbH, Weiden

Type: SMX modular series and expansion modules

has been developed, designed and manufactured in compliance with the above mentioned directive as well as the EC-directive

- EC-EMC directive 2014/30/EU dated 26. February 2014

in the sole responsibility of

BBH Products GmbH Böttgerstrasse 40 D-92637 Weiden
--

Description of function:

Modular, freely programmable safety control for monitoring drive systems suitable up to SIL 3 acc. to IEC 61508 or PL e acc. to EN EN ISO 13849-1
--

For the safety component an

EC Pattern Evaluation Test

by the

TÜV Rheinland Industrie Service GmbH,
Am Grauen Stein,
D-51105 Köln,
Identification number Notified Body NB 0035

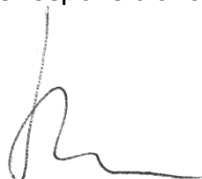
was carried out.

The following harmonized standards were applied:

- EN 61800-5-2:2007
Electrical power drive systems with adjustable number of revolutions -
Part 5-2: Requirement of security - functional security
- EN ISO 13849-1:2008 + AC:2009
Safety of machines, safety related parts of controls
Part 1: General design principles
- EN 62061:2005 + AC:2010 + A1:2013
Safety of machines –
Functional safety of safety related electric, electronic and programmable electronic
control systems
- EN 50178:1997
Equipment of high voltage systems with electronic operational means
- EN 60204-1/A1:2009 + AC:2010 (in part)
Safety of machines – Electrical equipment of machines -
Part 1: General requirements
- EN ISO 13850:2008
Safety of machines; EMERGENCY Stop, design principles
- EN 574:1996 + A1:2008
Safety of machines; two-hand controls, functional aspects, design principles
- EN 55 011:2009 + A1:2010
Industrial, scientific and medical equipment - radio interferences - limit values and
measuring methods
- IEC 61508 Part 1-7: 2010
Functional safety of electrical/electronic/programmable electronic safety-related
systems.

The safety, installation and operating instructions described in the product manual must be followed.

Dipl.-Ing. (FH) Gerhard Bauer is responsible for the product manual.



Weiden, 26.07.2010

.....
Gerhard Bauer
General Manager BBH Products GmbH



EU Declaration of Conformity for Safety Components as defined by the EC-directive

- Maschinen 2006/42/EG
Appendix IV

The safety component

Manufacture: BBH Products GmbH, Weiden

Type: SMXGen2 series and expansion modules

has been developed, designed and manufactured in compliance with the above mentioned directive as well as the EC-directive

- EC-EMC directive 2014/30/EU dated 26. February 2014

in the sole responsibility of

BBH Products GmbH Böttgerstrasse 40 D-92637 Weiden
--

Description of function:

Modular, freely programmable safety control for monitoring drive systems suitable up to SIL 3 IEC 61508, or PL e acc. to EN ISO 13849-1

For the safety component an

EC Pattern Evaluation Test, Reg.-No. 01/205/5128.01/15,

by the

TÜV Rheinland Industrie Service GmbH,
Am Grauen Stein,
D-51105 Köln,
Identification number Notified Body NB 0035

was carried out.

The following harmonized standards were applied:

- EN 61800-5-2:2007
Electrical power drive systems with adjustable number of revolutions –
Part 5-2: Requirement of security - functional security
- EN ISO 13849-1:2015
Safety of machines, safety related parts of controls
Part 1: General design principles
- EN 62061:2005 + AC:2010 + A1:2013
Safety of machines –
Functional safety of safety related electric, electronic and programmable electronic
control systems
- EN 50178:1997
Equipment of high voltage systems with electronic operational means
- EN 60204-1/A1:2009 + AC:2010 (in part)
Safety of machines – Electrical equipment of machines –
Part 1: General requirements
- EN ISO 13850:2008
Safety of machines; EMERGENCY Stop, design principles
- EN 574:1996 + A1:2008
Safety of machines; two-hand controls, functional aspects, design principles
- EN 55 011:2009 + A1:2010
Industrial, scientific and medical equipment - radio interferences - limit values and
measuring methods
- IEC 61508 Part 1-7: 2010
Functional safety of electrical/electronic/programmable electronic safety-related
systems.

The safety, installation and operating instructions described in the product manual must be followed.

Dipl.-Ing. (FH) Gerhard Bauer is responsible for the product manual.



Weiden, 24.3.2017

.....
Gerhard Bauer
General Manager BBH Products GmbH